



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

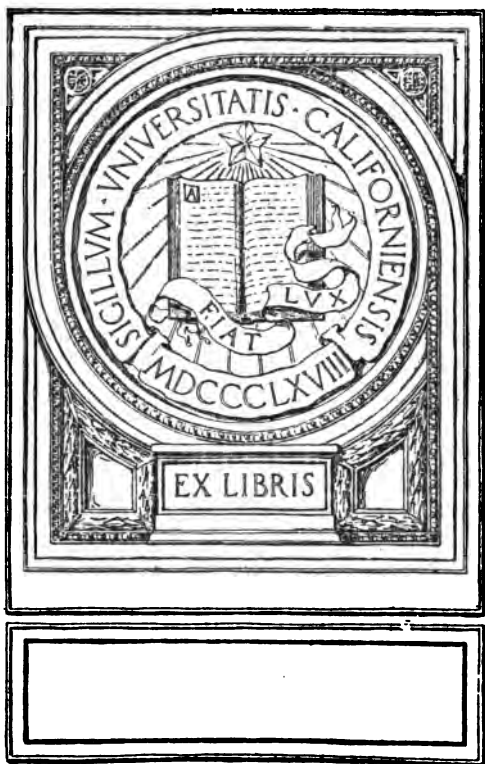
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>















Dr Lieber  
with the friendly regards  
of the author.

German Current-hand.

Manne ist mit Manne ist und mit Kugelzungen  
wacht, und fächte der Liebe nicht; so wachen ist ein  
sonnend Luz und ein klingender Tofall.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R  
S T U V W X Y Z

u b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z  
" g z . " v " u . " d k p z B .

A LIBRARY OF  
CALIFORNIA  
**PRACTICAL GRAMMAR**

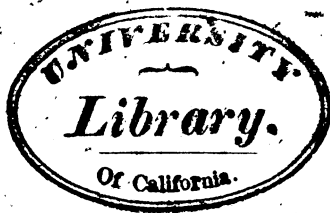
OF THE

**GERMAN LANGUAGE,**

BY

**Dr. CHARLES FOLLEN,**

INSTRUCTOR IN THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AT HARVARD COLLEGE.



**BOSTON:**

**HILLIARD, GRAY, LITTLE, AND WILKINS.**

.....

**1828.**

TO THE  
LIBRARY OF  
HARVARD

CAMBRIDGE:  
HILLIARD, METCALF, AND COMPANY,  
*Printers to the University.*

849  
F667  
p

DISTRICT OF MASSACHUSETTS, to wit:

*District Clerk's Office.*

Be it remembered, that on the twenty-fourth day of May, A. D. 1838, and in the fifty-second year of the Independence of the United States of America, Hilliard, Gray, Little, & Wilkins, of the said district, have deposited in this office the title of a book, the right whereof they claim as proprietors, in the words following, to wit:—"A Practical Grammar of the German Language. By Dr. Charles Follen, Instructor in the German Language at Harvard College."—In conformity to the act of the Congress of the United States, entitled "An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned;" and also to an act, entitled "An act supplementary to an act, entitled 'An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned;' and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints."

JNO. W. DAVIS,

*Clerk of the District of Massachusetts.*

## PREFACE.

---

THE language, of which this grammar contains the practical rules, is frequently designated by the name of the High German. This epithet was originally applied to the language in order to distinguish it from the Low German, which comprehends all those dialects, which are spoken in the level countries of the north of Germany. But as the language, which is called the High German, differs from the dialects of the south of Germany, as well as from those of the north, this name is now applied exclusively to that general language, which is spoken and written by all wellbred Germans. Accordingly it is more properly called the *German language*, without any other epithet.

Among the various dialects which have existed and still exist in different parts of Germany, there is a characteristic difference between those of upper and of lower Germany. The dialects of the north of Germany are in general softer than those of the south, and the vowels are more protracted; while the southern dialects are characterized by greater variety and energy. In all these various dialects we discover the distinct traces of one common and original language, of which each dialect may be considered a more or less perfect copy. But of the time when this original language may have been used as the common instrument of speech by the whole German race, we have as little knowledge, as of the primeval history of the nation itself. If we examine the history of Germany, and particularly the remaining documents of its language from the fourth century to the fifteenth, we find that at different periods one of the various dialects was more than the others employed for literary productions. Such



a temporary ascendancy was owing partly to the fact, that sometimes one of the German tribes happened to possess a greater number of superior minds, and partly to political circumstances. As Germany was an elective kingdom, its government sometimes devolved on men of different German tribes, who had it in their power to increase the influence of their native dialect, particularly if they promoted literature and science. Thus in the reign of the emperors from the house of Hohenstaufen, the *Suabian* dialect gained the ascendancy, and became the classical language of the polite, or, as it is commonly called, the romantic, literature of Germany, in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, when the spirit of poetry died away, and writings in prose increased, the language also assumed a more prosaic character. This change was effected by various causes, as, by the language of the laws or customs, which were at that time committed to writing; moreover by translations, and novels, and particularly by the writings of those religious philosophers, who are known by the name of *mystics*. Tauler, who lived in the fourteenth century, and whose works still belong to the most interesting documents of ancient German prose, is particularly celebrated among the German mystics. These thinkers in theology, although they were frequently led into error by their imperfect knowledge of natural objects and an aversion to the examination of facts, on the other hand distinguished themselves by their independence of established prejudices, and by intense thought, by which they strove to sound the essence of religion. Their merits in developing the German language cannot be doubted. They arose in different parts of Germany, and seem to have intentionally avoided such provincial expressions, as might have prevented their writings from being generally diffused; and these writings could not but impress the minds of others with the difference between the general substance and the local ingredients of

the language. Thus one writing corrected another, and the language gained in generality, as well as in philosophical and grammatical exactness; while it lost by degrees its ancient poetical flow and richness.

This prosaic language, thus formed, is essentially the same which prevailed at the time of the Reformation in the sixteenth century, and which at present, with few alterations, is spoken and written by all wellbred Germans. It is a false notion, which was first spread by Adelung,\* that Luther, in his writings, and particularly in his translation of the Bible, availed himself of his native dialect of the Electorate of Saxony, which by the signal success of his books became the general language of Germany. Luther cannot be considered as the father of the general language of his country; no more than he can be regarded as the father of the Reformation. He found them both already existing, and promoted and modified them according to his own views. With respect to the language, he says himself, "I have not a distinct, particular, and peculiar kind of German, but I use the *common German language*, in order that the inhabitants of both the *upper* and *lower* countries may understand me." But even without these express words of Luther, the above statement would be sufficiently evident from a considerable number of books which were published before, and at the same time with those of Luther, in all of which we find essentially the same language used for various subjects (as for example, by the painter Albrecht Dürer for laying down the principles of geometry, drawing, and fortification). But the merit of Luther consists in his having written the common language with particular propriety and grammatical precision, and in having extended it more than any other author among the people at large.

---

\* This error has lately been repeated by Noehden in the preface to his Grammar.

The poetic powers of this common language, which had been formed principally by prose writers, were developed by some eminent minds in the seventeenth century, among whom we mention particularly Frederic a Spee, and Martin Opitz, the founder of the Silesian school of poets. But in the course of the seventeenth and the beginning of the eighteenth century, the language was adulterated by French expressions and modes of speaking. From this debasement the language, as well as the literature of Germany, was redeemed by the great authors who have distinguished themselves during the last eighty years. They have shown its sufficiency for every branch of literature and science, and have restored to it that most precious of all its properties, the power of being developed and increased out of its own substance.

The works of these authors, the history and the genius of the language, and the manner in which it is used by wellbred people in different parts of Germany, are the true standards for speaking and writing it correctly. There is no part of Germany where the whole population speak the language correctly. Neither the public of Dresden or Meissen, nor that of Hanover or Göttingen, can be looked to as filling the place of an academy of the classical German language. Slight shades of provincial dialects enter into the manner of speaking even of the best educated persons. Some faults in pronunciation, which are peculiar to different parts of Germany, may be mentioned here. The *b* is sometimes confounded with *p*, and *d* with *t*; *ä* and *ö* are pronounced like *e*, and *ü* like *i*; *g* in the beginning of words is pronounced by some Germans like *k*, and by others like *j*. The *s* before *t* and *p* is sometimes pronounced like *sh* in English; and *sch* when it stands before a liquid consonant is sounded like *s*; final syllables in *e* (with or without other letters) are pronounced too short, and sometimes with a nasal sound. A gross grammatical fault consists in using the accusative

instead of the dative, and the dative instead of the accusative case.

After these observations on the history and actual state of the German language, I will add a few on German grammar. It is reported of Charlemagne, that among other plans for the advancement of knowledge he conceived also that of inducing the learned men of that age to compose a grammar of the German language. But this project remained unexecuted. Some German grammars were published in the sixteenth century; but none of great eminence until the eighteenth. During the first half of the eighteenth century, *Gotsched* wrote his grammar, which held the highest rank till, in the last half of the same century, that of *Adelung* appeared. Although the bad taste of Gotsched did great injury to the literature of his country, yet his merit as a German grammarian cannot be denied. He was however far surpassed by Adelung, the author of the most complete dictionary of the German language in German. After that of Adelung a great number of German grammars were published in Germany, of which I shall notice three, viz. the historical grammar by *Grimm*, the grammar by *Harnisch*, and that by *Heinsius*. The grammar of Grimm exhibits a profound grammatical inquiry into the gradual formation of the German language. The grammar of Harnisch is characterized by its metaphysical investigation of the German language; it abounds in deep and ingenious remarks, but sometimes runs into a sort of philological mysticism. The grammar of Heinsius, although it contains many general observations on the philosophical importance of each part of speech, is chiefly of a practical nature, and has on this account been introduced as a guide into most German schools.

With respect to German grammars written in foreign languages, I shall mention only two, which are commonly used in England, and which have been employed in composing this grammar. I mean the grammar of *Noehden* (the fifth

edition of which was published in 1827), and that of *Rowbotham* (printed in 1824). These grammars contain many valuable rules and useful directions, most of which are derived from German grammars, particularly that of Adelung. Noehden indeed not unfrequently pretends to originality; but those passages of his grammar in which he speaks as the philosopher of the German language, and even those practical parts, which he most boasts of, as being of his own invention, are certainly the weakest in his book. While the rules are better expressed in the grammar of Noehden than in that of Rowbotham, the latter is more useful on account of the exercises which are joined to each rule. The principal defect of Rowbotham consists in particularizing too much; of which method the natural consequence is, that many cases which belong together under the same rule remain undecided.

In the grammar which I now offer to the public, I have endeavoured to preserve all that is valuable in the two last mentioned grammars. I have altered wherever I thought it necessary, and will mention here some of the most important changes that have been made.

1. In the third chapter of Part First, Book First, I have tried to arrange the sounds of the German language in their natural order. In this arrangement I was guided by the excellent treatise of Mr. Duponceau on *Phonology*,\* in which he has laid down general directions for analyzing the sounds of every language, and then applied them to the English. In a few instances I have ventured to differ from the opinion of my learned friend, particularly with respect to the distinction between palatals and linguals, and in regard to the consonants *d* and *t*, which I have not ranked with the lingua-dentals, or dentals (as the grammarians commonly do), but with the palatals. I have thought it best to found the distinction between palatals

---

\* Transactions of the American Philosophical Society, at Philadelphia. Vol. I. New Series, No. xvii.

and linguals on the simple fact, that some consonants are formed by a particular part of the palate being *touched* by the tongue, while others are produced by the position of the tongue, when brought *near* the palate without touching it. Accordingly *l* and *n* have been ranked with the palatals, and *r* with the linguals. In regard to *d* and *t*, it may be observed, that they are pronounced as well by persons who have lost their teeth, as by those who retain them. The tongue may indeed touch the teeth in sounding these consonants, but if this circumstance had any influence upon their pronunciation, it would add a hissing sound to that of *d* and *t*, and consequently spoil the utterance of these letters. Accordingly I have ranked *d* and *t* among the palatal consonants.

The limits of this grammar have not allowed me to give more than a general analysis of the sounds of the German language; while a more minute investigation would have led to more satisfactory results.\* I will add here an observation concerning those sounds which are *nearly* the same in German and in English. Those German sounds which correspond to the English *t, d, n, l, r, s, sh*, are formed in the fore part of the mouth, i. e. nearer the teeth than in English; also *g hard*, and *k* are not formed so deep in the throat as in English. The *liquid* consonants, which are passed lightly over in English, are dwelt upon in German.

2. In representing the German declensions (which have cost so much trouble to all German grammarians), I have been principally guided by Heinsius, whose arrangement I have endeavoured to render more complete and systematic; so that

---

\* English students of the German language, as well as German students of the English, may be surprised to find, that the only sound which Walker, in his Critical Pronouncing Dictionary, characterizes as a German sound (I mean the *broad German a*, as he calls it), does not exist in the German language; that this sound is confined to some dialects, and is never heard from the mouth of a wellbred German.

there should remain no exception to the principles laid down.\* I have added a mode of signifying by two letters the manner in which each noun is declined ; which method I should think would be of still greater use to the student, if in the dictionary also every noun were marked in this manner.

3. With respect to the German verb, I have thought it best to treat first of its original parts, i. e. of those which are formed by the addition of letters to the radical syllables ; and afterward of those supplementary parts of the verb which are formed by means of auxiliary verbs. This distribution is evidently most congenial with the real nature of the German verb and its inflections ; but it presents the additional advantage, that the distinction between regular and irregular verbs can, according to this method, be placed at the head of this doctrine ; instead of having the regular forms of the verb preceded by the irregular auxiliary verbs. Moreover this difference between regular and irregular verbs affects only the original parts of the verb, and has no influence upon those, which are formed by means of auxiliary verbs. But according to the common mode of mixing together the original and supplementary tenses (in order to make the German verb appear as complete as the Latin or Greek verb), the distinction between regular and irregular verbs is carried also through those parts of the verb which are not at all affected by this difference.

4. As the German language in this country as well as in England is studied by many persons particularly on account of the polite literature of Germany, I have wished to contribute

---

\* There is no part of Noehden's grammar, of which the author boasts more than his arrangement of the German declensions. To satisfy the reader in regard to the foundation of these pretensions, it is sufficient to observe, that Noehden mentions only one characteristic of the fourth declension, viz. that it "comprehends all those masculines and neuters which are not included in the two foregoing declensions."

to the enjoyment of lovers of poetry by giving (in the Third Book) as full an account of German versification as the limits of this elementary work would admit. I have availed myself of the opinions of Voss and Schlegel on German prosody, as far as they coincided with those to which I was led in pursuing this study with particular and continued interest.

To facilitate the *pronunciation*, I have marked the principal accent on every word in this grammar; and experience has already convinced me of the eminent usefulness of this method. This idea was suggested to me by my friend, Mr. Folsom, to whose excellent judgment I am gratefully indebted for a great number of valuable suggestions in the definition of principles and choice of expressions.

In regard to *orthography*, which in some points is a matter of dispute among German writers, I have in general followed the principle of writing the words as they are pronounced—a principle, which is generally acknowledged as correct, though with more or fewer exceptions. I have not adopted any mode of spelling in which I am not supported by some distinguished modern authors. The only unusual and hazardous step I have taken, consists in my having rejected altogether the compound letter *ß* (*sz*), because it is *never* pronounced as such. For this attempt I have no authority to rely on, except those German writings which are printed in Roman type. I have substituted, according to the pronunciation of the words, either *f*, or *ff* which at the end of words is written *fs*. This last sign of double *s*, however, which I took from the grammar of Harnisch, has rather an unusual typographical appearance; and on this account those writers are perhaps right who retain the *ß* at the end of words, regarding it merely as the sign of double *s* (in the same manner as *ſ* is used instead of *f*, at the end of words).—In the Appendix, in which I have added a portion of the New Testament in German, and some dialogues, I have kept the *ß* at the end of words.



I will conclude this preface by adding a few observations on the manner in which I think this (or any other) grammar may be used to the greatest advantage by beginners. The pronunciation ought, of course, to be first attended to.\* Then the beginner should acquaint himself thoroughly with all the ordinary inflections of articles, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs. I do not think it advisable to attend in this first study of the grammar to all the principles and minute observations which are contained in those chapters in which the grammatical forms are stated. It is sufficient, that the learner should be able to translate correctly and easily all the exercises which are added to illustrate those forms.—After having acquired this elementary knowledge, he ought to begin to translate some easy German book. For this purpose I published about two years ago a collection of extracts from the best modern German authors, under the title, “*Deutsches Lesebuch für Anfänger*,” *German Reader for Beginners*, Cambridge, University-press, 1826. This collection was made with the advice of my respected friend, Mr. Ticknor, who, being at the head of the department of modern languages in Harvard College, has introduced and most effectually promoted the study of the German language and literature at this university.

As the student is making progress in translating, he will himself feel the necessity of a more minute study of grammar. This study ought to consist partly in the teacher’s referring the learner to that particular passage in the grammar which will explain any difficulty he has met with in translating—and partly in a gradual, thorough study of the grammar from the beginning to the end. During this study, the translating should

---

\* A correct pronunciation cannot be acquired by self-instruction; since all the means which are used to explain the sounds of one language by those of another, cannot effect more than an approximation to the true pronunciation.

be continued, and be accompanied with exercises in writing, in addition to those contained in the grammar.

After having in this preface offered some views of the history and actual state of the German language and German grammar in general, and of the characteristics of *this* grammar in particular, I present it to the public, with the assurance, that its severest critic cannot be more fully convinced of its imperfections, than

THE AUTHOR.

*Harvard College, 10 May, 1828.*

# CONTENTS.

---

## BOOK I. ELEMENTS.

### PART I. PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
CHAPTER I. GENERAL RULES . . . . .	1
CHAPTER II. THE ALPHABET . . . . .	2
CHAPTER III. THE SOUNDS OF THE LANGUAGE . . . . .	3
§ 1. VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS . . . . .	3
§ 2. CONSONANTS . . . . .	6

### PART II. PARTS OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER I. ARTICLE . . . . .	9
CHAPTER II. SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN . . . . .	10
§ 1. GENDER . . . . .	10
§ 2. DECLENSION . . . . .	11
A. <i>Declension of Common Nouns</i> . . . . .	12
B. <i>Declension of Proper Nouns</i> . . . . .	21
CHAPTER III. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	30
§ 1. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	30
§ 2. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	39
CHAPTER IV. NUMERALS . . . . .	44
I. <i>Cardinal Numbers</i> . . . . .	44
II. <i>Ordinal Numbers</i> . . . . .	46
III. <i>Numerals of Proportion and Distribution</i> . . . . .	48
IV. <i>Collective Numbers</i> . . . . .	49

CHAPTER V. PRONOUNS . . . . .	51
§ 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	51
§ 2. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	53
§ 3. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	57
§ 4. RELATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	60
§ 5. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	61
§ 6. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS . . . . .	62
CHAPTER VI. VERBS . . . . .	69
<i>General Remarks</i> . . . . .	69
§ 1. REGULAR VERBS . . . . .	70
§ 2. IRREGULAR VERBS . . . . .	74
§ 3. REFLECTIVE VERBS . . . . .	99
§ 4. IMPERSONAL VERBS . . . . .	102
§ 5. COMPOUND VERBS . . . . .	105
§ 6. AUXILIARY VERBS . . . . .	115
A. <i>Supplementary Tenses of Active and</i> <i>Neuter Verbs</i> . . . . .	129
B. <i>Supplementary Tenses of Reflective</i> <i>Verbs</i> . . . . .	137
C. <i>Supplementary Tenses of Impersonal</i> <i>Verbs</i> . . . . .	138
D. <i>Supplementary Tenses of Compound</i> <i>Verbs</i> . . . . .	139
§ 7. PASSIVE VERBS . . . . .	140
CHAPTER VII. ADVERBS . . . . .	150
§ 1. DIFFERENT KINDS OF ADVERBS . . . . .	150
§ 2. FORMATION OF ADVERBS . . . . .	152
§ 3. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . . . .	153
CHAPTER VIII. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	154
§ 1. GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	154
§ 2. COMPOSITION OF PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	158
§ 3. ABBREVIATION OF PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	160

CHAPTER IX. CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	160
CHAPTER X. INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	166
CHAPTER XI. ON THE MODE OF FORMING NEW WORDS . . . . .	166

## BOOK II. SYNTAX.

### PART I. AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT OF WORDS.

CHAPTER I. THE ARTICLE . . . . .	178
CHAPTER II. NOUNS . . . . .	183
CHAPTER III. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	189
CHAPTER IV. PRONOUNS . . . . .	192
CHAPTER V. VERBS . . . . .	199
§ 1. PERSONS AND NUMBERS . . . . .	199
§ 2. TENSES . . . . .	201
§ 3. MOODS . . . . .	203
§ 4. THE AUXILIARIES . . . . .	211
§ 5. THE VERB GOVERNING CASES . . . . .	212
§ 6. THE PARTICIPLE . . . . .	220
CHAPTER VI. ADVERBS . . . . .	221
CHAPTER VII. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	225
CHAPTER VIII. CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	225
CHAPTER IX. INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	227

### PART II. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

CHAPTER I. POSITION OF THE ARTICLE . . . . .	227
CHAPTER II. POSITION OF THE NOUN . . . . .	228
CHAPTER III. POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE . . . . .	237
CHAPTER IV. POSITION OF THE PRONOUN . . . . .	239
CHAPTER V. POSITION OF THE VERB . . . . .	240
CHAPTER VI. POSITION OF THE PARTICIPLE . . . . .	247
CHAPTER VII. POSITION OF THE ADVERB . . . . .	249
CHAPTER VIII. POSITION OF THE PREPOSITION . . . . .	251

CHAPTER IX. POSITION OF THE CONJUNCTION .	253
CHAPTER X. POSITION OF THE INTERJECTION .	256

### BOOK III. PROSODY.

CHAPTER I. DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES	257
CHAPTER II. QUANTITY . . . . .	259
CHAPTER III. ACCENT . . . . .	261
CHAPTER IV. GERMAN VERSE . . . . .	263
§ 1. RHYTHM . . . . .	263
1. <i>The Ancient Metres</i> . . . . .	264
2. <i>The German Rhythm</i> . . . . .	266
§ 2. CONSONANCE . . . . .	272
1. <i>Rhyme</i> . . . . .	272
2. <i>Assonance</i> . . . . .	273
3. <i>Alliteration</i> . . . . .	273

### APPENDIX.

I. ACTS IX. 1-28, (in the German version of Van Esz) . . . . .	274
II. FAMILIAR DIALOGUES . . . . .	276
III. GERMAN ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	281

## CORRIGENDA.

Page 2, line 30, *after words, read, either separate or in composition.*

- “ 5, “ 9, *dele it.*  
 “ 12, “ 30, *for other letters, read, another letter.*  
 “ 16, “ 7, *dele Nacht, night.*  
 “ 17, “ 9, *after nouns, read, of one syllable.*  
 “ 22, “ 6, *for plural number, read, nominative plural.*  
 “ 24, “ 5, *after letters, read, The asterisk (\*) prefixed to a noun in the singular, signifies that a, o, u, are in the plural changed into ä, ö, ü. If more than one of these letters, or any one of them more than once, should occur in the same noun, that one alone is changed which occurs last; as, Ustar, plural, Ustäre.*

- “ 26, “ 34, *for Of the ranks, read, Of the rank.*  
 “ 29, “ 21, *col. 2nd, subjoin the man, der Mensch, m. 2. b.*  
 “ “ “ 27, *for Schrift, f. 1. d. read, Schrift, f. 1. d.*  
 “ “ “ 28, *after with, mit, read, (Dat.)*  
 “ 33, “ 6, *after the declension of the Singular, read,*

*Plural, for the three Genders.*

*N. mei'ne gü'ten, my good.*

*G. mei'ner gü'ten, of my good.*

*D. mei'nen gü'ten, to my good.*

*A. mei'ne gü'ten, my good.*

- “ 50, “ 12, *for Krei'ger, read, Krie'ger.*  
 “ “ “ 25, *col. 2nd, subjoin, week, Wo'che, f. 1. c.*  
 “ “ “ 40, *col. 2nd, “ degree, Grad, m. 3. b. b.*  
 “ 60, “ 34, *after the declension of the Singular, read, The Plural is like that of der, on page 59.*  
 “ 66, “ 5, *col. 1st, subjoin, daß, that.*  
 “ 67, “ 18, *col. 2nd, “ of, von. (Dat.)*  
 “ “ “ 25, *col. 1st, “ to love, lie'ben.*  
 “ 68, “ 5, *for never forsake thee, read, never<sup>2</sup> forsake<sup>3</sup> thee.<sup>1</sup>*  
 “ “ “ 10, *for (do), read, (do).*  
 “ “ “ 40, *col. 2nd, subjoin, or, o'der.*

Page	76,	line	4,	for	ür'ge,	read,	bür'ge.
"	82,	"	20,	"	er hältst,	read,	du hältst.
"	84,	"	12,	dele	du lie'sest,	er ließt.	
"	"	"	13,	after	le'sen,	to read,	read, du lie'sest, er ließt.
"	87,	"	10,	for	schilst,	read,	schilstst.
"	88,	"	22,	dele	geschro'ben.		
"	92,	"	3,	for	Greiten,	read,	Strei'ten.
"	93,	"	24,	in the last column,	read,	verschlun'gen.	
"	94,	"	3,	"	"	verschwun'den.	
"	96,	"	9,	for	auf'löschen,	read,	auf'löschen.
"	97,	"	4,	"	Schwem'men,	read,	Schwem'men.
"	"	"	5,	"	Sen'ken,	read,	Sen'ken.
"	100,	"	2,	under	self,	insert,	

## Infinitive.

## Present.

Sich lie'ben, to love one's self.

"	101,	"	5,	<i>dele the whole line,</i>	Thou art, &c.
"	"	"	9,	"	They assume, &c.
"	"	"	14,	"	We got, &c.
"	"	"	15,	"	You prepared, &c.
"	103,	"	11,	<i>for ar'gere, read,</i>	ar'gere.
"	"	"	27,	"	er, read, es.
"	104,	"	30,	"	Bo'gel, read, Bo'gel.
"	106,	"	21,	"	Auf'nehmen, read, Auf'nehmen.
"	107,	"	13,	<i>dele the whole line,</i>	To have, &c.
"	"	"	18,	<i>before participles, read,</i>	past.
"	118,	"	31,	<i>for mit, read,</i>	wir.
"	125,	"	11,	<i>for not will, read,</i>	will not.
"	138,	"	19,	<i>under du wür'dest dich geliebt' ha'ben, &amp;c.</i>	
				<i>read,</i>	

## Imperative.

			lie'be	du	dich,	love	thou	thyself.
			lie'be	er	sich,	let	him	love himself.
			lie'ben	wir	uns,	let	us	love ourselves.
			lie'bet	ihr	euch,	love	ye	yourselves.
			lie'ben	sie	sich,	let	them	love themselves.
"	148,	"	5,	for the <sup>2</sup>	cocks <sup>3</sup> ,	read,	(the)	cocks <sup>2</sup> .
"	"	"	31,	col. 1st,	subjoin,	disturbance,	Störung.	
"	149,	"	2,	col. 2nd,	"	hither,	hierher'.	
"	"	"	21,	"	"	on,	auf, (an).	
						the shoulder,	die	Schul'ter.



**N. B.** In the English exercises to be translated into German, the words which are included in parentheses, if printed in Roman type, are to be omitted in German; but if printed in Italics, they are to be literally rendered in German, whether they are additional to the correct English expressions, or substituted for them.



d in

III.  
t (e)

let-  
er a  
ber-  
by

art,  
and

in  
hus  
ng-  
er-  
ns -

N.B. I  
which  
omit  
rend  
expr

# GERMAN GRAMMAR.

---

## BOOK I. ELEMENTS.

---

### PART I. PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### GENERAL RULES.

§ 1. In the German language each letter is pronounced in every word.

Some exceptions to this rule are mentioned in Chapter III. of this Part; particularly with respect to double vowels, *e* (*e*) after *i* (*i*), and *h* (*h*) in some cases.

§ 2. Each sound is constantly represented by the same letter, and each letter has only one sound. Thus the letter *a* (*a*), which has in English four different sounds, has in German only one, and this one sound is never represented by any other letter than *a*.

A few exceptions are marked in Chapter III. of this Part, particularly in regard to the letters *g* (*g*), *t* (*t*), *v* (*v*), and *y* (*y*), in words taken from foreign languages.

§ 3. Words that belong to foreign languages preserve in German their original spelling and pronunciation. Thus *Shakspeare* (*Shakspeare*) is sounded in German as in English.

The dead languages are pronounced according to the German idiom. The letters *v* (*v*) and *t* (*t*) form exceptions; for which see Chapter III. of this Part.

CHAPTER II.

THE ALPHABET.

Letters.	Usual names.	English.
A, a,	ah,	A, a.
B, b,	bay,	B, b.
C, c,	tsay,	C, c.
D, d,	day,	D, d.
E, e,	a,	E, e.
F, f,	ef,	F, f.
G, g,	ghay,	G, g.
H, h,	hah,	H, h.
I, i,	e,	I, i.
J, j,	yot,	J, j.
K, k,	kah,	K, k.
L, l,	el,	L, l.
M, m,	em,	M, m.
N, n,	en,	N, n.
O, o,	o,	O, o.
P, p,	pay,	P, p.
Q, q,	koo,	Q, q.
R, r,	err,	R, r.
S, s (ś), *	ess,	S, s.
T, t,	tay,	T, t.
U, u,	oo,	U, u.
V, v,	fow,	V, v.
W, w,	way,	W, w.
X, x,	iks,	X, x.
Y, y,	ipsilon,	Y, y.
Z, z,	tsett,	Z, z.

---

\* ś is used only at the end of words.

With respect to the use of the capital letters, it is to be observed:

1. All substantives, as well as all words used substantively, begin with capitals, and also all sentences; as,

der Tag, the day.

die Woche, the week.

der Weise, the wise man.

die Meinigen, my family.

das Meine, mine (my property).

das Lesen, the reading, &c.

Ein rechtschaffener Mann ist

An honest man is the no-

das edelste Werk Gottes.

blest work of God.

2. The pronouns answering to *you, your, &c.* must begin with a capital, when they refer to the person whom we address; as, *Sie*, you; *Ihr*, *Ihrige*, your; *Du*, thou, *Dein*, thine, &c.; but the pronoun *ich*, I, is never written with a capital but at the beginning of a sentence, or when it is used as a substantive, as, *das Ich*, one's self.

The pronoun *sie*, when it answers to the English pronoun *they*, or *she*, is written with a small letter, unless it begin a sentence.

3. Every word begins with a capital when a particular stress is laid upon it; as, the numeral *ein* in the sentence, *Es ist nur Ein Gott*, There is but *one* God.

## CHAPTER III.

### THE SOUNDS OF THE LANGUAGE.

#### § 1. VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

##### A. Vowels.

THE vowels in German are either long or short; which distinction does not (as in English pronouncing dictionaries) imply a difference in the *sound* of the vowel, but merely determines its relative duration.

The vowels are

a....an intermediate sound between *a* in *father*, and *a* in *water*; it is

long in *Grad*, degree; *ha'ben*, to have;

short in *Mann*, man; *Kat'ze*, cat.

â\*....nearly like *a* in *fat*; it is

long in *Altä're*, altars; *Glä'ser*, glasses;

short in *äl'ter*, older; *Äp'fel*, apples.

ê....nearly like *a* in *fate*; yet closer, and without the sound of an *e* which is slightly heard at the end of long *a* in English; it is

long in *See*, sea; *ge'hen*, to go;

short in *es'sen*, to eat; *Recht*, right.

This vowel is in some words frequently pronounced like short *e* in English. But genteel pronunciation in Germany seems to prefer in every instance the close and acute sound which is heard in *See*, and *sen'den*, to send.

The *é* after *i* in the same syllable is not sounded, but merely protracts the sound of the *i*, as in *lie'be*, love.

ë, y,....like *e* in *bee*; it is

long in *mir*, to me; *dir*, to thee;

short in *Fisch*, fish; *Mit'te*, middle.

ö....like *o* in *promote*; it is

long in *O'sen*, stove; *Mond*, moon;

short in *Ross*, horse; *Op'fer*, sacrifice.

ô\*....like the French *ou* in *peur*, which has no corresponding sound in English; it is

long in *schön*, fine; *hö'ren*, to hear;

short in *Köp'fe*, heads; *Öff'nung*, aperture.

u....like *oo* in *moon*, and *u* in *full*; it is

long in *gut*, good; *Blu'me*, flower;

short in *Mund*, mouth; *Mut'ter*, mother.

û\*, y,....like the French *u* in *vu*, to which there is no corresponding sound in English; it is

long in *Gü'te*, goodness; *mü'de*, tired;

short in *Hüt'te*, cottage; *dünn*, thin.

\* That *â*, *ô*, and *û*, are simple sounds, and not diphthongs composed of *ae*, *oe*, and *ue*, is now taught by grammarians, as well as by sound reason; for it is impossible to produce these three sounds, by any combination of other vowels, however rapidly pronounced. It is therefore better to write *Äpfel*, apples; *Öde*, solitude; *Übung*, exercise; instead of *Äepfel*, *Oede*, *Uebung*; and *Ûthe*, instead of *Goethe*.

Two dots on the top of *a*, *o*, *u*, viz. *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, signify the same sounds as the small *e* on the top of the same letters, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*.

**Observation.** The letter *ŷ*, which some German authors retain in more or less words, and others entirely reject, has no peculiar sound of its own. It has the force of *i* in all words that are originally German, as well when sounded by itself, ex. *Tiŷŷ*, Tilly, a proper name, as in the diphthongs, (see B.) ex. *ŷeyn*, to be; *ŷrey*, free. In words derived from the Greek, in which *ŷ* represents the letter *v*, it is commonly sounded like *it*, as in *Enŷtem*, which is pronounced as if it were written *Eiŷtem*; and this mode of writing it is also preferred by some modern scholars.—Some grammarians retain this letter, wherever it serves to distinguish different words, which are spelled alike in every other respect, as *ŷeyn*, to be; and *ŷein*, his. But this reason seems insufficient, as the signification of all such words is determined by the sense they have in the sentence in which they occur. Therefore, according to the general rules above stated, (Chap. I. § 1. and 2.) it seems to be proper to retain the *ŷ*, only

1. In proper names, particularly names of persons, where the mode of writing them has an importance of its own, separate from that which consists in their sound, as in *ŷeyne*, *ŷeyden*;

2. In words derived from foreign languages, where the *ŷ* has the sound of the foreign letter it represents; for example, *Synonymiŷt*, pronounce *Eünoni'miŷt*; *York*, pronounce *Yorŷt*. (The sound of the consonant *ŷ* is given, § 2. A. 4.)

In all other cases the *ŷ* should be given up, and the simple *i* substituted, as in *ŷein*, to be; *ŷrei*, free.

### B. Diphthongs.

*ei*, (*ey*)....like *i* in *fine*; ex. *Frei'heit*, freedom; *Wein*, wine.

*ai*, (*ay*)....nearly the same sound as *ei*, only a little more open; ex. *Hain*, grove; *Mai*, May.

*oi*, (*oy*)....nearly as *oi* in *moist*; it occurs only in a few words, particularly proper names, as, *Hoy'er*.

*ui*, (*uy*)....nearly as *we*; it very seldom occurs; ex. *pfui!* *fy!*

*au*....nearly as *ou* in *mouth*; ex. *Haus*, house; *Kraut*, herb.

*eu*....has no corresponding sound in any modern language; it comes nearest to the sound of *oi* in *voice*, ex. *Freund*, friend; *Feu'er*, fire.

*äu*....nearly the same sound as *eu*; ex. *Häuŷer*, houses; *Kräu'ter*, herbs.

There are no Triphthongs in German.



## § 2. CONSONANTS.

## A. Simple Consonants.

There are in German five sorts of consonants, according to the different organs which are particularly employed in forming them.

## 1. Labials.

*p*....like *p*; ex. *Per'le*, pearl; *plump*, clumsy.

*b*....generally like *b*; as in *But'ter*, butter; but at the end of words like *bp*, as in *laub*, foliage.

*m*....like *m*; ex. *Mann*, man; *Kamm*, comb.

*w*....nearly like *w*; ex. *Wind*, wind; *we'hen*, to blow.

## 2. Labio-dentals.

*f*, *v*, *ph*.... like *f*; ex. *Fels*, rock; *steif*, stiff; *voll*, full; *Philosoph'*, philosopher.

*Ph* is not originally German, but chiefly intended to represent the Greek *φ*, for which modern authors substitute *f*, and accordingly write *Filosoph*, instead of *Philosoph'*.

*B* and *f* have in all genuine German words the same sound.\*

*B* has the English sound of *v* only in words of Latin origin, as, *Novem'ber*, November; *Vers*, verse; and in words belonging to foreign languages, in which this letter is sounded as in English.

## 3. Palatals.

*t*....like *t*; ex. *Tur'teltaube*, turtle dove; *Gott*, God.

*d*....generally like *d*; as in *Du'delsack*, bagpipe; but at the end of words it sounds like *dt*, as in *Mund*, mouth.

*n*....like *n*; ex. *nein*, no.—*N* becomes a nasal sound, when followed by *g* or *t* (as in English); ex. *Gesang'*, song; *Dank'*, thanks.

*l*....like *l*; ex. *Lilie*, lily, *Ball*, ball.

---

\* As *f* and *v* have the same sound, they seem to require only one sign, and *f* has already taken the place of *v* in several words, as in *vest*, *Grav*, which are now written *fest*, *firm*; *Graf*, count. But it seems as yet too bold a step, to dispense with the *v* altogether.

4. *Linguals.\**

*r*....like the Irish *r*; ex. *rol'len*, to roll; *starr*, motionless.

*f* (*ß*)....like *s*; ex. *Sei'te*, side; *Reis*, rice.

*ß* is never pronounced like *z*, neither has it the sharp hissing sound of the English *z*, as this is commonly pronounced.

The *z* is sometimes used as an addition to the *f* (*ß*), but then the *z* is never pronounced; it is sounded in some instances like *ss*, as in *Haß*, hate, or like a simple *f*, as in *Haus*, house. It is therefore better, as some authors do, never to use *ß*, but to substitute, according to its pronunciation, either *ss*, as in *Hass*, or *s*, as in *Haus*.

*sch*....like *sh*; ex. *Schu'le*, school, *Busch*, bush.

The soft sound *zh* is heard only in words taken from the French language; as, *Genie'*, genius; *Pa'ge*, page.

*ch*....when it is preceded by *a*, *o*, *u*, *e*, *i*, or a consonant, is not a guttural, but a lingual, formed in the fore part of the mouth. There is no sound corresponding to it in English. Ex. *Bä'che*, rivulets; *Lö'cher*, holes; *Bü'cher*, books; *Recht*, right; *ich*, I; *Milch*, milk.

*j*....like *y* in *year*; ex. *ja*, yes; *Jahr*, year.

5. *Gutturals.*

*k*, *q*, and, in some instances, *c* and *ch*....are pronounced like *k*; ex. *Karl*, Charles; *Quelle*, source.

*c* is pronounced like *k*, when it stands before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant, as in *Cano'nicus*, prebendary; *Credit'*, credit.

*ch* also, is in some cases pronounced like *k*, as in *Charac'ter*, character; *Chro'nik*, chronicle.

Many German authors make use of *k*, instead of *c* and *ch*, when these letters are sounded like *k*, particularly in those foreign words which are considered as naturalized in German. Accordingly they write *Kredit*, *Karakter*.

*g*....in the beginning of words, like *g* hard, as in *Gast*, guest; at the end, and sometimes in the midst of a word, it has an intermediate sound between *g* hard, and the lingual

---

\* The organic difference between *linguals* and *palatals* consists in the latter being formed particularly by that part of the palate to which the tongue is applied, while the former are produced by the position of the tongue, brought near the roof of the mouth without touching it.

**ch** in *Recht*, ex. *Tag*, day; *Regen*, rain; after *u*, at the close of a syllable, it sounds like *g* in *singing*, ex. *singen*, to sing.

**ch**....when preceded by *a*, *o*, or *u*, is formed in the throat, and sounded like *ch* in the Scotch word *Loch*; ex. *Bach*, rivulet; *Loch*, hole; *Buch*, book.

**h**....like *h*, when it begins a syllable, as in *Höhe*, height; after a vowel, in the midst or at the end of a syllable, the *h* is silent, and merely protracts the sound of the preceding vowel, as in *Mohn*, poppy; *freh*, joyful; and it is silent and entirely lost after *t* or *r*, as in *thun*, to do; *Rhein*, the Rhine.

### B. Compound Consonants.

The most remarkable are

**t**, **ts**, or **ct**, and sometimes **chs**....like *ks* (never like *gz*); ex. *Axt*, ax; *stracks*, straight on. **Ets** is sounded like *t*, when it belongs to a word in its simplest form, as in *der Dachs*, the badger. But when the final *s* is added merely by a change of termination, as in *das Dach*, the roof, genitive, *des Dachs*, of the roof, the original sound of *ch* is preserved.

**z**, **ts**, and in some instances **t** and **t**....are pronounced like *ts* (not *dz*); ex. *Zahn*, tooth; *bereits*, already.

**E** is pronounced like *z* (*ts*), when it precedes *e*, *i*, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, or *y*; ex. *Ocean*, ocean; *Cäsar*, Cæsar.

**T** is commonly pronounced like *z*, in words of Latin origin, when the *t* is followed by *i* and another vowel; ex. *Nation*, nation.

Many authors write *z*, instead of *t* or *t*, when these letters are pronounced like *z*, particularly in words which are considered as naturalized in German; as, *Nazion*, *Ozean*.

**kn**....both letters are sounded; as in *Kna'be*, boy.

**gn**....both letters are sounded; as in *Gna'be*, mercy.

**pfl**....the three letters are sounded; as in *Pflan'ze*, plant.

**schw**....the two sounds, *sch*, and *w*, are uttered, as in *Schwal'be*, swallow.

**Observations.** The doubling of vowels, when it does not create two syllables, protracts the sound, as in *See*, sea.

The doubling of consonants renders the sound stronger and more acute, as in *Don'nerwetter*, thunderstorm.

Instead of **ff** most authors write **cf**; and **ß**, instead of **ff**.

## PART II.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

There are ten parts of speech, viz. Article, Substantive or Noun, Adjective, Numeral, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection. Several of them, viz. the Article, the Substantive, the Adjective, some of the Numerals, the Pronoun, and the Verb, admit of inflection, that is, of a change of termination, indicating the principal relations of that which is expressed by the word inflected. The other parts of speech are not inflected.

The inflection of Articles, Substantives, Adjectives, Numerals, and Pronouns, is called *Declension*, and that of Verbs, *Conjugation*. The declension comprehends two *Numbers*, the *Singular* and the *Plural*, and each number four *Cases*, or relations, which are indicated by certain changes of termination. While in English the Accusative or Objective case is generally like the Nominative, and the Genitive and the Dative are commonly indicated by the Prepositions *of* and *to*, the German language expresses the same relations, by changing the termination of the Nominative case.

That relation which in the Latin Grammar is denominated the Ablative case, is in German expressed by the Dative, and is generally preceded by the Preposition *von*, from; as, *von dem Vater*, from the father. The Vocative is nothing else than the Nominative, as used in an address or exclamation; ex. *o Vater*, O father!

## CHAPTER I.

## ARTICLE.

There are two articles, viz. the indefinite, *ein*, *a* or *an*, and the definite, *der*, *the*; which are declined in three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter.

**Ein, a,** is thus declined :

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ein,	ei'ne,	ein, a.
<i>Gen.</i>	ei'nes,	ei'ner,	ei'nes, of a.
<i>Dat.</i>	ei'nem,	ei'ner,	ei'nem, to a.
<i>Acc.</i>	ei'nen,	ei'ne,	ein, a.

**Der, the,** is thus declined :

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	der,	die,	das, the.
<i>Gen.</i>	des,	der,	des, of the.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem,	der,	dem, to the.
<i>Acc.</i>	den,	die,	das, the.

*Plural, for all the genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	die, the.
<i>Gen.</i>	der, of the.
<i>Dat.</i>	den, to the.
<i>Acc.</i>	die, the.

**Observation.** The articles must agree with the nouns to which they are joined, in gender, number, and case.

## CHAPTER II.

### SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN.

#### § 1. GENDER.

All substantives, or nouns, are either masculine, or feminine, or neuter.

The gender of most nouns is determined by the following rules.

1. The names of male animals, and such nouns as convey the idea of superior power and energy, are commonly masculine ; as *der Mann*, the man ; *der Vater*, the father ; *der Löwe*, the lion ; *der Baum*, the tree ; *der Hammer*, the hammer ; *der Muth*, courage.

2. The names of female animals, and such nouns as express what is tender and delicate, are commonly feminine ; as

die Frau, the lady, or wife; die Mutter, the mother; die Taube, the dove; die Blume, the flower; die Nadel, the needle; die Liebe, love.

3. Of the neuter gender are

a. The letters of the alphabet; as, das A, das B.

b. All diminutive nouns; as, das Pferd'chen, the little horse; das Büch'lein, the little book.

c. All infinitives used as substantives; as, das Es'sen, the eating; das Trinf'en, the drinking.

Some nouns vary their gender, according to their signification; as,

der Band, the volume,  
der Bund, the alliance,  
der Er'be, the heir,  
der Gei'sel, the hostage,  
die Mark, the mark, boundary,  
der Reis, the rice,  
der See, the lake,  
der Thor, the fool,

das Band, the ribbon;  
das Bund, the bundle;  
das Er'be, the inheritance;  
die Gei'sel, the scourge;  
das Mark, the marrow;  
das Reis, the twig;  
die See, the sea;  
das Thor, the gate.

## § 2. DECLENSION.

In many nouns, a, o, and u are, in the 'plural number, changed into the corresponding vowels ä, ö, and ü; as, Thal, valley, plur. Thä'ler, valleys; Sohn, son, plur. Söh'ne, sons; Brü'der, brother, plur. Brü'der, brothers.

The endings of the nominative singular are various, and cannot be brought under certain rules.

The nominative, genitiv., and accusative plural, have the same ending in all the declensions, and are distinguished only by the article; as, die Brü'der, the brothers, gen. der Brü'der, of the brothers, acc. die Brü'der, the brothers.

All those nouns which make the nominative plural in n, or en, retain the same termination in all the other cases of the plural number; as, Tauben, doves; Knaben, boys; Augen, eyes.

The mode of declining common nouns, is different from that of nouns proper.



## A. Declension of Common Nouns.

The principal changes of termination in common nouns, are comprehended under three declensions.

The characteristic of each declension is the *genitive case singular*. In this case some nouns retain the ending of the nominative, as, *die Blüme*, the flower, *gen. der Blüme*, of the flower; while other nouns receive an additional *n*, as, *der Knabe*, the boy, *gen. des Knaben*, of the boy; and others take an additional *s*, as, *das Leben*, the life, *gen. des Lebens*, of the life.

## First Declension.

The first declension comprehends all those nouns which remain *unchanged* in the genitive singular.

These nouns retain the termination of the nominative through all the cases in the singular number; but they differ in the nominative plural, where some of them keep the ending of the singular, as, *die Mutter*, the mother, *nom. plur. die Mütter*, the mothers; while others add *e*, as, *die Kennt'niss*, the knowledge, *nom. plur. die Kennt'nisse*; others *n*, as, *die Blüme*, the flower, *nom. plur. die Blumen*, the flowers; others *en*, as, *die Frau*, the lady, *nom. plur. die Frauen*, the ladies; others *nen*, as, *die Freundin*, the female friend, *nom. plur. die Freundinnen*, the female friends.

Accordingly the first declension contains only one form of the singular, but five forms of the plural number.

*All nouns of the first declension are feminine; and all feminine nouns belong to the first declension.*

## Second Declension.

The second declension comprehends all those nouns which form the genitive singular by adding to the nominative a final *n*, either with or without other letters.

If these nouns in the nominative singular terminate in *e*, they receive only an additional *n* in the genitive, as, *der Knabe*, the boy, *gen. des Knaben*, of the boy; but if they end in any other letter, the genitive is formed by adding *en* to the nominative, as, *der Fels*, the rock, *gen. des Felsen*, of the rock.

With the exception of the nominative singular, all the cases of the singular and plural are like the genitive singular, and therefore always end in *en*.

Accordingly, the second declension comprehends only one form of the plural, but two forms of the singular number: the genitive singular being formed by the addition sometimes of *n*, and sometimes of *en*.

*All nouns which belong to the second declension are masculine; and all masculine nouns belong either to this or to the third declension.*

### Third Declension.

The third declension contains all those nouns which form the genitive singular by *adding to the nominative a final s, either with or without other letters.*

This declension comprehends four forms of the singular, and five of the plural number.

*Singular.* Some nouns receive in the genitive case *merely* an additional *s*, as, *der Wan'derer*, the traveller, *gen. des Wan'derers*, of the traveller; others *es*, as, *das Pferd*, the horse, *gen. des Pferdes*, of the horse; others *ns*, as, *der Gedank'e*, the thought, *gen. des Gedank'ens*, of the thought; and one noun, *das Herz*, the heart, makes the genitive in *ens*, *des Herzens*, of the heart.

*Plural.* Some nouns retain the termination of the singular nominative, as, *der Wan'derer*, *nom. plur. die Wan'derer*; other nouns add *e*, as, *das Pferd*, the horse, *nom. plur. die Pfer'de*, the horses; others *n*, as, *der Gedank'e*, the thought, *nom. plur. die Gedank'en*, the thoughts; others *en*, as, *der Staat*, the state, *nom. plur. die Staaten*; and others *er*, as, *das Feld*, the field, *nom. plur. die Fel'der*.

*All neuter nouns are of the third declension.*

*General Observation.* The dative plural in all the declensions ends in *n*; ex. *Tau'be*, dove, *dat. plur. Tau'ben*; *Mensch*, man, *dat. plur. Men'schen*; *Thier*, animal, *dat. plur. Thie'ren*.

The following table exhibits the endings of nouns in each declension in all the cases except the nominative singular. The different declensions are marked by the figures, 1, 2, 3; the different forms of the singular by Roman, and those of the plural by German letters.



# DECLENSION OF GERMAN COMMON NOUNS.

14

Declension of Common Nouns.

[BOOK I.

## FIRST DECLENSION,

Characterized by having the Genitive, as well as all the other cases of the Singular Number, like the Nominative; and comprehending all the Nouns of the feminine Gender, and only these.

### EXAMPLES.

#### ENDINGS.

#### SINGULAR.

	Mother. 1. a.	Knowledge. 1. b.	Flower. 1. c.	Lady. 1. d.	Songstress. 1. e.
N. as the N.	Mut'ter	Kenn't'niss	Blu'me	Srau	Sang'erin
G. as the N.	Mut'ter	Kenn't'niss	Blu'me	Srau	Sang'erin
D. as the N.	Mut'ter	Kenn't'niss	Blu'me	Srau	Sang'erin
A. as the N.	Mut'ter	Kenn't'niss	Blu'me	Srau	Sang'erin

#### PLURAL.

	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
N. as the N. Sing.	en	en	en	en	en
G. as the N.	en	en	en	en	en
D. as the N.	en	en	en	en	en
A. as the N.	en	en	en	en	en

## SECOND DECLENSION,

Characterized by forming the Genitive Singular in n (n or en), added to the Nominative; and comprehending only nouns of the masculine gender.

#### ENDINGS.

#### SINGULAR.

	(a)	(b)
N.	n	en
G.	n	en
D.	n	en
A.	n	en

	Boy. 2. a.	Rock. 2. b.
N.	Kna'be	Gels
G.	Kna'ben	Gel'sen
D.	Kna'ben	Gel'sen
A.	Kna'ben	Gel'sen

## PLURAL.

N.	n	en	N. Kna'ben	Gel'sen
G.	n	en	G. Kna'ben	Gel'sen
D.	n	en	D. Kna'ben	Gel'sen
A.	n	en	A. Kna'ben	Gel'sen

## THIRD DECLENSION,

*Characterized by forming the Genitive Singular in s (s, es, ns, or ens), added to the Nominative; and com-  
prehending only Nouns of the masculine and neuter Gender.*

## ENDINGS.

## SINGULAR.

(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
N. s	es	ns	ens
G. as the N.	e	n	en
D. as the N.	as the N.	n as the N.	n as the N.

## EXAMPLES.

N.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	People.
G.	s	es	ns	ens	3. b. e.
D.	as the N.	e	n	en	Volf
A.	as the N.	as the N.	n as the N.	n as the N.	Volfes
					Volfe
					Volt

## PLURAL.

(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
N. as the N. S.	e	n	en	er
G. as the N.	e	n	en	er
D. n	en	n	en	ern
A. as the N.	e	n	en	er

N.	Eng'el	Freund	Gedank'e	Herz	Vol'ker
G.	Eng'els	Freund'es	Gedank'ens	Herz'es	Vol'ker
D.	Eng'el	Freund'e	Gedank'en	Herz'en	Vol'ker
A.	Eng'el	Freund	Gedank'en	Herz	Vol'ker

*Observations on the First Declension.*

1. a.—There are only two nouns which retain in the nominative plural the termination of the singular, viz. *Mutter*, mother, and *Tochter*, daughter.
1. b.—The plural in *e* occurs particularly in those words which end in *ft*, *st*, and *niss*; as, *Kraft*, power; *Kunst*, art; *Nacht*, night; *Betrüb'niss*, sorrow.
1. c.—The plural in *n* belongs to feminine nouns which end in *e*, *el*, and *er*; as, *Eh're*, honor; *Bi'bel*, bible; *Schwes'ter*, sister; *plur.* *Eh'ren*, *Bi'beln*, *Schwes'tern*.
1. d.—The plural in *en* is to be found in most words which end in *ei* (*en*), *end*, *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, *ung*, *lt*, and *rt*; as, *Fischerei'*, fishery; *Tugend*, virtue; *Frei'heit*, freedom; *Ewigkeit*, eternity; *Freund'schaft*, friendship; *Achtung*, esteem; *Welt*, world; *Art*, manner; &c.
1. e.—The plural form *nen*, is peculiar to those feminine nouns, which end in *in*, and have the accent not on their final syllable; as, *Sa'tin*, wife; *Löwin*, lioness. This form was originally no other than the preceding 1. d., the nouns in *in* being formerly written with final *nn*, as, *Sa'tinn*, &c. But this practice of doubling the *n* in the singular has gone out of use.

Some nouns of the first declension, as, *Frau*, lady; *Son'ne*, sun; *See'le*, soul; *Er'de*, earth; are, according to an old usage, still sometimes inflected in the genitive singular, as, *Frau'en*, *Son'nen*, *See'len*, *Er'den*.

*Observations on the Second Declension.*

2. a.—The termination of the genitive in *n* is common in masculine nouns which end in *e*; as, *der Löwe*, the lion; *der Bo'te*, the messenger; *der Zeu'ge*, the witness. The names of nations which end in *e*, are inflected in the same manner; as, *der Grie'che*, the Greek; *der Brit'te*, the Briton; *der Deu'tsche*, the German.
2. b.—The genitive in *en* is common in masculine nouns not ending in *e*; as, *der Mensch*, man; *der Herr*, the master; *der Bär*, the bear.

In poetry, the dative and accusative singular are sometimes formed like the nominative singular; as, *dem Fels*, and *den Fels*.

*Observations on the Third Declension.*

3. a. & b.—It depends on euphony whether the genitive singular end in *s* or *es*. Nouns of more than one syllable, which end in *el*, *en*, *er*, and *lein*, take only an *s*; as, *Flügel*, wing; *Mädchen*, girl; *Vater*, father; *Männlein*, little man. But all those nouns of the third declension which end in *s* or *z*, make their genitive singular in *es*; as, *Ross*, steed, *gen. Ross'es*, of a steed; *Satz*, sentence, *gen. Satz'es*, of a sentence. Those nouns which terminate in any other letter, make their genitive singular in the same manner, by adding *es*; but this is frequently contracted into *s*; as, *der Weg*, the way, *gen. des We'ges* or *Wegs* of the way.

These rules apply also to some proper nouns; as, *Decem'ber*, 3. a. a.; *der Rhein*, 3. b. b., the Rhine.

The accusative of those nouns which have *s* or *es* in the genitive, is always like the nominative case.

3. c.—The addition of *ns* in the genitive is peculiar to those nouns, the nominative of which formerly ended in *en*, but are at present commonly spelled without the final *n*, as, *Friede* (*Fried'en*), peace; *Funke* (*Funke'n*), spark; *Fussstapfe* (*Fussstapfen*), footstep; *Glaube* (*Glaube'n*), belief; *Haufe* (*Haufen*), heap; *Nahme* (*Nahme'n*), name; *Saame* (*Saame'n*), seed; *Schade* (*Schade'n*), damage. But the old termination in *en* is not yet entirely out of use.

Some nouns of the second declension, are sometimes, though not properly, inflected according to the form 3. c.; as, *der Knabe*, the boy, *gen. des Kna'bens*; properly, *des Kna'ben*.

If the genitive is formed by adding *ns* to the nominative, the dative and accusative singular always end in *en*.

3. d.—The substantive *Herz*, heart, is the only noun which forms its genitive by adding *ens* to the nominative.

The nominative formerly was *das Herz'e*, which is still used in poetry.

*Buchstab*, letter, is declined either according to 3. b. d., or according to 3. c. c., and in this case the nominative is *Buchstabe*.

3. a.—The nominative plural is like the nominative singular in almost all those nouns masculine and neuter, which end in *el*, *en*, *er*, and *lein*; as, *der Schlüssel*, the key; *das*

Mäd'chen, the girl; der Uhr'macher, the watchmaker; das Fräulein, the young lady.

The plural form, Mäd'chens, Fräuleins, is incorrect, though sometimes used by good authors in derision of bad taste.

3. b.—The addition of *e* to the nominative singular, is the most common plural form of nouns of the third declension; as, das Thier, the animal; der \*Baum, the tree; der Stein, the stone; &c.
3. c.—All those nouns which make' their genitive singular in *ns* (see p. 17. under 3. c.), form their nominative plural by adding *n* to the nominative singular.
3. d.—There are comparatively only a few nouns of this declension, which form their plural by adding *en*; as, das Herz, the heart; der Staat, the state; der Strahl, the ray; das Ohr, the ear.
3. e.—The singular of those nouns, which make their nominative plural by adding *er*, is declined according to the second form of the singular, 3. b.; as, der Wald, the wood, *gen. sing. des Waldes*. In the same manner are declined, Kleid, dress; Geld, money; Leib, body; Geist, spirit.

The nominative plural cannot always be determined by the genitive singular. Ex. das Auge, 3. a. c., the eye, *gen. sing. des Auges, nom. plur. die Augen*.

Some nouns have no plural number; for example, many infinitives which are used as substantives; as, das Lachen, 3. a., the laughing; das Weinen, 3. a., the weeping.

This peculiarity is, in this grammar, marked by omitting the German letter by which the form of the plural is indicated; as, das Hören, 3. a., the hearing.

Other nouns have no singular; as, die Ältern, 3. c., the parents; die Leute, 3. b., people; die Gebrüder, 3. a., the brothers.

This peculiarity is marked by omitting the Roman letter which indicates the form of the singular.

Some nouns have two plural forms; as, das Land, 3. b. b. & c., the land, *nom. plur. die Län'de* and *die Län'der*, the lands; das Gewand', 3. b. b. & c., the dress, *nom. plur. die Gewan'de* and *die Gewän'der*, the dresses.

In some nouns the different formation of the plural, or the change of *a, o, u*, into *ä, ö, ü*, expresses a different signification; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
der Band, the volume, or binding.	die Bän'de, the volumes.
das Band, the ribbon.	die Bän'der, the ribbons.
das Band, the bond.	die Bän'de, the bonds.
die Bank, the bench.	die Bän'ke, the benches.
die Bank, the bank.	die Bän'ken, the banks.
der Bau'er, the peasant.	die Bau'ern, the peasants.
das Bau'er, the cage.	die Bau'er, the cages.
der Bo'gen, the sheet of paper.	die Bo'gen, the sheets of paper.
der Bo'gen, the bow.	die Bö'gen, the bows.
das Gesich't, the vision.	die Gesich'te, the visions.
das Gesich't, the face.	die Gesich'ter, the faces.
der Läden, the shutter.	die Läden, the shutters.
der Laden, the shop.	die Läden, the shops.
der Schild, the shield.	die Schil'de, the shields.
das Schild, the sign.	die Schil'der, the signs.
der Straus, the ostrich.	die Strau'sen, the ostriches.
der Straus, the nosegay.	die Sträu'se, the nosegays.
der Thor, the fool.	die Tho'ren, the fools.
das Thor, the gate.	die Tho're, the gates.

With respect to those common nouns which are derived from *foreign languages*, the following particular rules are to be observed.

These nouns either retain their original termination, as, *Fis'cus, Thé'ma, Do'sis*; or take a German one. This is done by either retrenching their foreign ending, as in *O'cean* (*oceanus*), *ocean*; *Diplom'* (*diploma*); or transforming it into another more idiomatic termination; as, *die Re'gel* (*regula*), *rule*; *die Syl'be* (*syllaba*), *syllable*; &c.

The rule is,—that all those foreign common nouns, the endings of which bear a similarity to German nouns, are declined like these, in the regular way. Thus:

1. All foreign common nouns feminine belong to the first declension, and add in the nominative plural either *n* or *en*; as, *die Ari'e*, 1. c., the tune; *die For'mel*, 1. c., the formula; *die Poesie'*, 1. d., the poetry; *die Person'*, 1. d.; *die Reputab'il'*, 1. d.; *die Tyrannei'*, 1. d., the tyranny.

2. Most of those foreign nouns masculine which end in *ant*, *arch*, *at*, *et*, *it*, and *og*, are of the second declension, 2. b.; as, *Adjutant'*, *Patriarch'*, *Advocat'*, *Poet'*, *Eremit'*, *Theolog'*.

3. Most of the foreign nouns neuter or masculine which end in *er*, *el*, *al*, *an*, *in*, *on*, *ar*, *at*, *em*, *am*, *amm*, *om*, *or*, belong to the third declension; as, *Character*, 3. a. b.; *Capitel*, 3. a. a., chapter; *Portal'*, 3. b. b.; *Capellan'*, 3. b. b., chaplain; *Kamin'*, 3. b. b., chimney; *Postillon'*, 3. a. b.; *Exemplar'*, 3. b. b., specimen; *Magistrat'*, 3. b. b.; *Diadem'*, 3. b. b.; *Balsam*, 3. b. b.; *Epigramm'*, 3. b. b.; *Diplom'*, 3. b. b.; *Professor*, 3. a. d.

Greek and Latin nouns the termination of which is not agreeable to the German idiom, as, *Klima*, climate; *Gymnasium*; *Elericus*, clergyman; &c. remain unaltered in the singular, and are declined only by the article; as,

#### *Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>das Klima</i> ,	the climate.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des Klima</i> ,	of the climate.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem Klima</i> ,	to the climate.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>das Klima</i> ,	the climate.

If these nouns have a plural, it is frequently formed as in the language, from which they are derived; as, *die Klimata*, *Gymnasia*, *Elerici*; and in this case the termination of the nominative plural should be preserved through all the cases of the plural number. But more commonly, the plural is made by a German termination, *die Klimata*, *Gymnasien*, *Eleriker*; and in this case the regular German declension is preserved in all the cases of the plural; as,

#### *Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>die Klimata</i> ,	the climates.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>der Klimata</i> ,	of the climates.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>den Klimaten</i> ,	to the climates.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die Klimata</i> ,	the climates.

It was formerly usual to decline a foreign noun through all the cases of the singular and plural, according to the language from which it was taken; as,

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Gymna'sium
<i>Gen.</i>	Gymna'sii
<i>Dat.</i>	Gymna'sio
<i>Acc.</i>	Gymna'sium

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Gymna'sia
<i>Gen.</i>	Gymna'sio'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	Gymna'siis
<i>Acc.</i>	Gymna'sia

This mode of declining has gone out of use.

Nouns derived from the French, if they are pronounced in the German way, are declined like other German nouns; as, *der Officier*, 3. a. b. (*officier*), the officer; *der Courier*, 3. a. b., the courier; *die Da'me*, 1. c., the lady. But if we pronounce them in the French way, the plural commonly takes an additional *s*; as, *Courier's*,\* &c., through all the cases. In nouns which end in *e*, however, it is more common to form the plural in *n* or *en*; as, *Da'men*, ladies, &c.

Even in some words which are not taken from the French, the plural form in *s* is in use; as, *Kli'ma's* instead of *Kli'mate*; *The'ma's* instead of *The'mate*, themes.

English nouns, when used in German, are, in the singular, declined like German nouns, and receive in the plural an additional *s*; as, *nom. sing. der Lord*, *gen. des Lords*, *nom. plur. die Lord's*; *nom. sing. die La'dy*, *gen. der La'dy*, *nom. plur. die La'dy's*; *nom. sing. das Bud'get*, *gen. des Bud'gets*, *nom. plur. die Bud'get's*.

*B. Declension of Proper Nouns.*

Proper nouns,† particularly names of persons and countries, are declined in two different ways; viz. either *with* or *without* the article.

1. If they are declined with the definite or indefinite article, the article alone is inflected, in the singular number, the noun itself remaining unaltered; as,

\* An apostrophe (') before the final *s*, is used to distinguish this form of the plural.

† Some proper nouns are declined like common nouns. Page 16, under 2. a., and page 17, under 3. a. & b.



*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	der Schlé'gel	die Mark	ein Ea'to	der Ea'pet
<i>Gen.</i>	des Schlé'gel	der Mark	ei'nes Ea'to	des Ea'pet
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Schlé'gel	der Mark	ei'nem Ea'to	dem Ea'pet
<i>Acc.</i>	den Schlé'gel	die Mark	ei'nen Eato	den Ea'pet

In the plural number these nouns either remain unaltered, or take a German termination, or the foreign one in *s* ; as,

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	die Schlé'gel	die Mar'ken	{ die Eato'ne or Eato'nen }	die Ea'pet's
<i>Gen.</i>	der Schlé'gel	der Mar'ken	der Eato'nen	der Ea'pet's
<i>Dat.</i>	den Schlé'geln	den Mar'ken	den Eato'nen	den Ea'pet's
<i>Acc.</i>	die Schlé'gel	die Mar'ken	{ die Eato'ne or Eato'nen }	die Ea'pet's

Feminine nouns in *a* make their plural in *en* ; as, *die Theresia*, plur. *die Theresien*.

2. If proper nouns are declined without the article, their plural is formed in the same manner as when they are declined with the article. But in the singular they commonly take, in the genitive case, an additional *s* or *es*. In some nouns, particularly those which end in *s*, *ss* (*ß*), *sch*, *r*, and feminines in *e*, the genitive singular is formed by adding *ens* or *ns* to the nominative ; as,

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Schil'ler	An'na	Wu'ise	Leib'nitz
<i>Gen.</i>	Schil'lers	An'nas	Wu'isens	Leib'nitzens
<i>Dat.</i>	Schil'ler	An'na	Wu'ise	Leib'nitz
<i>Acc.</i>	Schil'ler	An'na	Wu'ise	Leib'nitz

Even the genitive case of those nouns which end in *a* is sometimes formed in *ens*, the *a* being dropped ; as, *Dia'na*, gen. *Dia'nas* or *Dia'nens*. Yet the first seems to be the more elegant form. Sometimes in the language of conversation (particularly in the north of Germany), the dative and accusative are formed in *n* or *en* ; as, *Leib'nitzen*, *Wu'isen*. But it seems to be better style, not to inflect these nouns except in their genitive. \*

---

\* For the reason above stated, I do not find sufficient classical ground for marking two different forms of declining foreign appellatives, or, as some Grammarians call them, a

*Observations.* The mode of declining proper nouns with the article, is the same, whether the noun stands alone, or is preceded by an adjective or pronoun.

Accordingly we say, *das Verdienst Washingtons*, the merit of Washington; but *das Verdienst des Washington*, or, *des groſſen* (of the great) *Washington*, or, *unſeres* (of our) *Washington*: and *die Dankbarkeit Marias*, the gratitude of Mary; but *die Dankbarkeit der frommen* (of the pious) *Maria*.

If the name of a person is immediately preceded by a common noun, expressing the office or character of that person, the proper noun alone is declined, if the common noun is not preceded by the definite article; as, *Doctor Franklins Erfindungen*, the discoveries of Doctor Franklin; *König Ludwigs Tod*, the death of King Louis: but if the definite article precedes, the common noun is declined, and the proper noun remains unaltered; as, *der Tod des Königs Ludwig*; *die Erfindungen des Doctors Franklin*.

If the name of a person is preceded by one or more christian names, none of these is declined, if they have the definite article before them; as, *die Schriften des Johann Jakob Rousseau*, the works of John James Rousseau: but when they are not preceded by the article, the family name of the person is alone declined, the christian names remaining unaltered; as, *Johann Christoph Adelungs Sprachlehre*, the grammar of John Christopher Adelung.

But there is an exception to this rule, when the family name is separated from the christian name (or names) by a preposition, particularly by *von* (being commonly the mark of noble descent): in this case the christian names alone are inflected; as, *die Gedichte Heinrichs von Ofterdingen*, the poems of Henry of Ofterdingen; *der Opfertod Arnolds Strutthans von Winkelried*, the sacrifice of Arnold Strutthan of Winkelried.

### *Promiscuous Exercises on the Declensions of Nouns.*

The following list of nouns may not only serve as a useful vocabulary, but possesses the advantage of having the

---

German and a foreign declension. The German declension, according to those authors, consists in the formation of the genitive in *ns* or *ens*, the dative in *n* or *en*, and the accusative in *n* or *en*.

gender and declension marked, the former by the letters, *m. f. n.*, and the latter by the numbers, 1, 2, 3; with the different forms of the singular and the plural number, those of the singular being denoted by Roman and those of the plural by German letters.

Of the eels,  
The evening,  
To the abbots,  
Of the field or acre,

Of the fields,  
The shoulders,  
Of the nobility,  
To the ape,  
To the apes,  
Of the altars,  
To the age,  
Of the antiquities,  
To the blackbirds,  
The offices,  
The ants,  
The nurses,  
Of the devotion,  
The preparations,  
To the replies,  
Of the labors,  
To the eyes,  
Of the oyster,  
The brooks,  
The path,  
Of the ball,  
To the ribbons,  
To the ideas,  
Of the mountains,  
To the bed,  
To the beds,  
Of the proofs,  
To the pictures,  
Of the pears,  
Of the flowers,  
To the letters,  
The breasts,  
To the books,

*Äal*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* eel.  
*Äbend*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* evening.  
*\*Äbt*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* abbot.  
*\*Älter*, *m.* 3. *a. a.* field or  
acre.  
.....  
*Äch'sel*, *f.* 1. *c.* shoulder.  
*Ädel*, *m.* 3. *a.* nobility.  
*Äffe*, *m.* 2. *a.* ape.  
.....  
*\*Älter*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* altar.  
*Älter*, *n.* 3. *a. a.* age.  
*\*Äl'terthum*, *n.* 3. *b. e.* antiquity.  
*Äm'sel*, *f.* 1. *c.* blackbird.  
*\*Ämt*, *n.* 3. *b. e.* office.  
*Ämeise*, *f.* 1. *c.* ant.  
*Äm'me*, *f.* 1. *c.* nurse.  
*Än'dacht*, *f.* 1. devotion.  
*Än'stalt*, *f.* 1. *d.* preparation.  
*Änt'wort*, *f.* 1. *d.* reply.  
*Är'beit*, *f.* 1. *d.* labor.  
*Äu'ge*, *n.* 3. *a. c.* eye.  
*Äu'ster*, *f.* 1. *c.* oyster.  
*\*Bach*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* brook.  
*Bahn*, *f.* 1. *d.* path.  
*\*Ball*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* ball.  
*\*Band*, *n.* 3. *b. e.* ribbon.  
*Begriff*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* idea.  
*Berg*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* mountain.  
*Bett*, *n.* 3. *b. d.* bed.  
.....  
*Beweis*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* proof.  
*Bild*, *n.* 3. *b. e.* picture.  
*Birn*, *f.* 1. *d.* pear.  
*Blü'me*, *f.* 1. *c.* flower.  
*Brief*, *m.* 3. *b. b.* letter.  
*\*Brust*, *f.* 1. *b.* breast.  
*\*Buch*, *n.* 3. *b. e.* book.

The books,  
 To the canals,  
 To the cardinals,  
 To the roofs,  
 Of the badgers,  
 The dikes,  
 To the thumbs,  
 Of the swords,  
 To the poets,  
 To the villages,  
 To the heirs,  
 The eggs,  
 To the fables,  
 Of the threads,  
 Of the barrels,  
 To the fists,  
 Of the enemies,  
 To the fields,  
 Of the rocks,  
 To the fetters,  
 Of the plains,  
 To the rivers,  
 The wives,  
 Of the female friends,

To the feet,  
 The forks,  
 The geese,  
 To the guest,  
 The prayers,  
 Of the dangers,  
 The countries,  
 The spirits,  
 Of the money,  
 The ghosts,  
 To the conversation,  
 To the limbs,  
 The gods,  
 The graves,  
 Of the count,  
 The property,  
 The cocks,  
 Of the hands,  
 Of the skins,

.....  
 \*Canal', *m.* 3. *b.* *b.* canal.  
 \*Cardinal', *m.* 3. *b.* *b.* cardinal.  
 \*Dach, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* roof.  
 \*Dachs, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.* badger.  
 \*Damm, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.* dike.  
 Dau'men, *m.* 3. *a.* *a.* thumb.  
 De'gen, *m.* 3. *a.* *a.* sword.  
 Dich'ter, *m.* 3. *a.* *a.* poet.  
 \*Dorf, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* village.  
 Er'be, *m.* 2. *a.* heir.  
 Ei, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* egg.  
 Fa'bel, *f.* 1. *c.* fable.  
 Fa'den, *m.* 3. *a.* *a.* thread.  
 Fass, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* barrel.  
 \*Faust, *f.* 1. *b.* fist.  
 Feind, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.* enemy.  
 Feld, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* field.  
 Fels, *m.* 2. *b.* rock.  
 Fessel, *f.* 1. *c.* fetter.  
 Flur, *f.* 1. *d.* plain.  
 \*Fluss, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.* river.  
 Frau, *f.* 1. *d.* wife.  
 Freun'din, *f.* 1. *e.* (female)  
 friend.  
 \*Fus, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.* foot.  
 Fa'bel, *f.* 1. *c.* fork.  
 \*Gans, *f.* 1. *b.* goose.  
 \*Gast, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.* guest.  
 Gebet', *n.* 3. *b.* *b.* prayer.  
 Gefahr', *f.* 1. *d.* danger.  
 Ge'gend, *f.* 1. *d.* country.  
 Geist, *m.* 3. *b.* *e.* spirit.  
 Geld, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* money.  
 Gespenst', *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* ghost.  
 Gespräch', *n.* 3. *b.* *b.* conversa-  
 tion.  
 Glied, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* limb.  
 \*Gott, *m.* 3. *b.* *e.* God.  
 \*Grab, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* grave.  
 Graf, *m.* 2. *b.* count.  
 \*Gut, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.* property.  
 \*Hahn, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.* cock.  
 \*Hand, *f.* 1. *b.* hand.  
 \*Haut, *f.* 1. *b.* skin.

Of the heroes,  
 Of the master,  
 To the wood,  
 To the fowl,  
 Of the hats,  
 Of the islands,  
 To the year,  
 Of the Jew,  
 Of the boy,  
 To the calves,  
 To the children,  
 Of the churches,  
 To the coats,  
 The cloisters,  
 Of the buttons,  
 To the heads,  
 Of the salmon,  
 To the countries,  
 Of the burdens,  
 To the holes,  
 Of the maids,  
 To the almonds,  
 Of the mice,  
 Of the mothers,  
 To the nightingales,  
 Of the fools,  
 The nuts,  
 Of the places,  
 To the popes,  
 Of the path,  
 The plants,  
 Of the jaw,  
 The borders,  
 Of the ranks,  
 The spaces,  
 The riches,  
 To the judge,  
 To the juices,  
 To the songstresses,

Held, *m.* 2. *b.* hero.  
 Herr, *m.* 2. master.  
 \*Holz, *n.* 3. *b. e.* wood.  
 \*Huhn, *n.* 3. *b. e.* fowl.  
 \*Hut, *m.* 3. *b. b.* hat.  
 In'sel, *f.* 1. *c.* island.  
 Jahr, *n.* 3. *b. b.* year.  
 Ju'de, *m.* 2. *a.* Jew.  
 Jung'e, *m.* 2. *a.* boy.  
 \*Kalb, *n.* 3. *b. e.* calf.  
 Kind, *n.* 3. *b. e.* child.  
 Kir'che, *f.* 1. *c.* church.  
 Kleid, *n.* 3. *b. e.* coat.  
 \*Klo'ster, *n.* 3. *a. a.* cloister.  
 \*Knopf, *m.* 3. *b. b.* button.  
 \*Kopf, *m.* 3. *b. b.* head.  
 Lachs, *m.* 3. *b. b.* salmon.  
 Land, *n.* 3. *b. b. & e. †* country.  
 Last, *f.* 1. *d.* burden.  
 \*Loch, *n.* 3. *b. e.* hole.  
 \*Magd, *f.* 1. *b.* maid.  
 Man'del, *f.* 1. *c.* almond.  
 \*Maus, *f.* 1. *b.* mouse.  
 \*Mut'ter, *f.* 1. *a.* mother.  
 Nach'tigall, *f.* 1. *d.* nightingale.  
 Narr, *m.* 2. *b.* fool.  
 \*Nuss, *f.* 1. *b.* nut.  
 \*Ort, *m.* 3. *b. b. & e. †* place.  
 \*Papst, *m.* 3. *b. b.* pope.  
 Pfad, *m.* 3. *b. b.* path.  
 Pflan'ze, *f.* 1. *c.* plant.  
 Ra'chen, *m.* 3. *a. a.* jaw.  
 \*Rand, *m.* 3. *b. e.* border.  
 Rang, *m.* 3. *b.* rank.  
 \*Raum, *m.* 3. *b. b.* space.  
 \*Reich'thum, *m.* 3. *b. e.* riches.  
 Rich'ter, *m.* 3. *a. a.* judge.  
 \*Saft, *m.* 3. *b. b.* juice.  
 Säng'erin, *f.* 1. *e.* songstress.

† The *a* in Land is changed into *ä*, and the *o* in Ort into *ö* (in the plural number), only when these nouns are declined according to 3. *b. e.*; but they preserve their original vowels, when declined according to 3. *b. b.*

The troops,  
Of the shadow,  
The treasures,  
To the ships,  
The shields,  
To the serpents,  
The castles,  
The debts,  
The swallows,  
Of the soldier,  
Of the looking-glass,

The storks,  
The stockings,  
Of the actions,  
To the daughters,  
To the dreams,  
The cloths,  
Of the virtues,  
Of the watches,  
The nations,  
To the forests,  
Of the walls,  
Of the women,  
Of the worlds,  
Of the wind,  
The wishes,  
The worms,  
Of the numbers,  
To the tooth,  
To the times,  
To the tents,  
Of the circle,  
The tolls,  
The aims,  
Of the onion,  
Of Catherine,  
Of the Hague,  
Of Huss,  
Of the Indies,  
To the Netherlands,

Of the Sibyl,

Schaar, *f.* 1. *b.* troop.  
Schar'ten, *m.* 3. *a.* shadow.  
\*Schatz, *m.* 3. *b.* treasure.  
Schiff, *n.* 3. *b.* ship.  
Schild, *m.* 3. *b.* shield.  
Schlang'e, *f.* 1. *c.* serpent.  
\*Schloß, *n.* 3. *b.* castle.  
Schuld, *f.* 1. *b.* debt.  
Schwal'be, *f.* 1. *c.* swallow.  
Soldat', *m.* 2. *b.* soldier.  
Spie'gel, *m.* 3. *a.* looking-glass.  
\*Storch, *m.* 3. *b.* stork.  
\*Strumpf, *m.* 3. *b.* stocking.  
That, *f.* 1. *b.* action.  
\*Tochter, *f.* 1. *a.* daughter.  
\*Traum, *m.* 3. *b.* dream.  
\*Tuch, *n.* 3. *b.* cloth.  
Tugend, *f.* 1. *b.* virtue.  
Uhr, *f.* 1. *b.* watch.  
\*Volk, *n.* 3. *b.* nation.  
\*Wald, *m.* 3. *b.* forest.  
\*Wand, *f.* 1. *b.* wall.  
Weib, *n.* 3. *b.* woman.  
Welt, *f.* 1. *b.* world.  
Wind, *m.* 3. *b.* wind.  
\*Wunsch, *m.* 3. *b.* wish.  
\*Wurm, *m.* 3. *b.* worm.  
Zahl, *f.* 1. *b.* number.  
\*Zahn, *m.* 3. *b.* tooth.  
Zeit, *f.* 1. *b.* time.  
Zelt, *n.* 3. *b.* tent.  
Zirkel, *m.* 3. *a.* circle.  
\*Zoll, *m.* 3. *b.* toll.  
Zweck, *m.* 3. *b.* aim.  
Zwie'bel, *f.* 1. *c.* onion.  
Katharina, Catherine.  
Der Haag, the Hague.  
Huss, Huss.  
In'dien, *n.* India.  
Die Niederlande, the Netherlands.  
Sibyl'le, Sibyl.

## Recapitulatory Exercises.

Die neun MUSEN sind die GÖTTINNEN der schön'en Künste und Wissenschaften.

Wir haben vier Elemen'te, das Wasser, die Erde, die Luft, und das Feuer; das Wasser dient den Menschen, den Thie'ren, den Pflanzen, ja selbst den Metal'len zur Nahrung.

Die Luft umgiebt den ganzen Erd'ball.

Die leben'digen Geschöp'fe ath'men die Luft ein.

Das Feu'er macht die Metal'le schmelzen.

Das Feu'er bringt Wär'me hervor.

Die Flam'me ist ein Zeichen des Feu'ers.

Auf der O'berfläche der Erde wachsen Bäu'me, Kräu'ter, und Pflanzen.

Im Früh'linge blü'hen viele Ar'ten von Blu'men; dann sieht man Ro'sen, Veil'chen, Narcis'sen, Hyacin'then, Tul'pen, und vie'le an'dere Blu'men.

neun, nine.

MUSE, *f.* muse.

sind, are.

GÖTTIN, *f.* goddess.

schönen, fine.

Kunst, *f.* art.

und, and.

Wissenschaft, *f.* science.

wir haben, we have.

vier, four.

Element, *n.* element.

das Wasser, (*the*) water.

die Erde, (*the*) earth.

die Luft, (*the*) air.

das Feuer, (*the*) fire.

dient, serves (*is useful to*).

der Mensch, (*the*) man.

das Thier, (*the*) animal.

die Pflanze, (*the*) plant.

ja selbst, even.

das Metall, (*the*) metal.

zur, as, (*for zu der, to the*).

Nahrung, *f.* food.

umgiebt, surrounds.

ganzen, whole.

Erd'ball, *m.* globe.

lebendigen, living.

Geschöp'f, *n.* creature.

athmen ein, breathe

macht, makes.

schmelzen, to melt.

bringt hervor, brings forth.

Wär'me, warmth.

Flam'me, *f.* flame.

ist, is.

Zeichen, *n.* sign.

auf, upon.

O'berfläche, *f.* surface.

wachsen, grow.

Baum, *m.* tree.

Kraut, *n.* herb.

Pflanze, *f.* plant.

im, in, (*for in dem, in the.*)

Früh'ling, *m.* spring.

blü'hen, blossom.

viele, many.

Art, *f.* sort.

von, of.

Blume, *f.* flower.

dann, then.

sieht man, we see.

Rose, *f.* rose.

Veilchen, *f.* violet.

Narcisse, *f.* narcissus.

tea

Hyacinthe, *f.* hyacinth.

Tulpe, *f.* tulip.

andere, other.

The quills of (*the*) geese, ravens, and bustards, serve for (*the*) writing; but not the quills of (*the*) hens and turkeys.

We hold the pen with the hand, and make letters with it.

Letters are parts of (*the*) syllables, syllables parts of (*the*) words, and words parts of (*the*) speech.

Many objects we cannot see; for instance, the soul of (*the*) man, and the thoughts of man.

We know the will of men by their actions.

The writings of \* Martin Luther, Zwingli, Ulrich of† Hutten, and other reformers, spread the new doctrine in all parts of \* Germany and Switzerland.

quill, *Fe'der'fel*, *m.* 3. b. b.

goose, \**Gans*, *f.* 1. b.

raven, *Ra'be*, *m.* 2. a.

bustard, *Trap'pe*, *f.* 1. c.

serve, *die'nen*.

for, *zum* (i. e. zu dem, to the).

writing, *Schrei'ben*, *n.* 3. a.

but, *a'ber*.

not, *nicht*.

hen, *Hen'ne*, *f.* 1. c.

turkey, \**Trut'hahn*, *n.* 3. b. b.

we hold, *wir hal'ten*.

pen, *Fe'der*, *f.* 1. c.

with, *mit*.

hand, \**Hand*, *f.* 1. b.

make, *ma'chen*.

letter, *Buch'stabe*, *m.* 3. c. c.

with it, *damit'*.

are, *sind*.

part, *Theil*, *m.* 3. b. b.

syllable, *Syl'be*, *f.* 1. c.

word, \**Wort*, *n.* 3. b. e.

speech, *Re'de*, *f.* 1. t.

many, *vie'le*.

object, \**Ge'genstand*, *m.* 3. b. b.

we cannot see, *ko'n'nen wir*

*nicht se'hen*.

for instance, *zum Bei'spiel*.

the soul, *See'le*, *f.* 1. c.

the thought, *Gedan'ke*, *m.* 3. c. c.

we know, *wir erken'nen*.

will, *Wil'se*, *m.* 3. c. c.

by, *aus*.

their, *ih'ren*.

actions, *Hand'lung*, *f.* 1. d.

writing, *Schrift*, *f.* 1. d.

other, *an'derer*.

reformer, *Reforma'tor*, *m.* 3.

a. d.

spread, *verbrei'teten*.

new, *neu'e*.

doctrine, *leh're*, *f.* 1. c.

all, *al'len*.

part, *Theil*, *m.* 3. b. b.

Germany, *Deutsch'land*, *n.*

Switzerland, *die Schweiz*.

\* Genitive case.

† of, von.



## CHAPTER III.

## ADJECTIVES.

The Adjective appears in its simple form, when its termination is not affected by gender, declension, or comparison; as, *Die Bürger, gut und frei*, The citizens, good and free.

## § 1. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are declined by adding certain letters to their simple form.

Every adjective is declined in *three* different forms.

## First Declension.

Adjectives are inflected according to the first declension, *when they are not preceded by an article or a pronoun*. The form of this declension is nearly like that of the article, *der, die, das*. The adjective *gut*, good, for example, is thus declined.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>gu'ter,</i>	<i>gu'te,</i>	<i>gu'tes,</i>	good.
<i>G.</i>	<i>gu'tes, or gu'ten,*</i>	<i>gu'ter,</i>	<i>gu'tes, or gu'ten,*</i>	of good.
<i>D.</i>	<i>gu'tem,</i>	<i>gu'ter,</i>	<i>gu'tem,</i>	to good.
<i>A.</i>	<i>gu'ten,</i>	<i>gu'te,</i>	<i>gu'tes,</i>	good.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

*gu'te,* good.  
*gu'ter,* of good.  
*gu'ten,* to good.  
*gu'te,* good.

The following is an example of an adjective in the first declension, as joined to nouns of different genders.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>gu'ter Wein,</i>	good wine.
<i>G.</i>	<i>gu'ten or gu'tes Weines,</i>	of good wine.
<i>D.</i>	<i>gu'tem Weine,</i>	to good wine.
<i>A.</i>	<i>gu'ten Wein,</i>	good wine.

---

\* The use of the one or the other of these two forms, (*gu'tes, gu'ten*), depends on euphony alone.

*Fem.*

N.	gu'te Frucht,	good fruit.
G.	gu'ter Frucht,	of good fruit.
D.	gu'ter Frucht,	to good fruit.
A.	gu'te Frucht,	good fruit.

*Neut.*

N.	gu'tes Brod,	good bread.
G.	gu'tes or gu'ten Bro'des,	of good bread.
D.	gu'tem Bro'de,	to good bread.
A.	gu'tes Brod,	good bread.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

N.	gu'te Wei'ne, Früch'te, Bro'de,	good wines, fruits,
G.	gu'ter Wei'ne, Früch'te, Bro'de,	of good &c. [loaves.
D.	gu'ten Wei'nen, Früch'ten, Bro'den,	to good &c.
A.	gu'te Wei'ne, Früch'te, Bro'de,	good &c.

So decline *gro'sser \*Mann*, 3. b. e., great man; *wahr'e Ge-schich'te*, 1. c., true history; *lie'bes Kind*, 3. b. e., dear child.

## Second Declension.

Adjectives are inflected according to the second declension, when they are preceded by the definite article, *der, die, das*; or by a demonstrative or relative pronoun; as, *die'ser*, this; *je'ner*, that; *der'jenige*, that; *dersel'be*, the same; *wel'cher*, who; or by the indefinite pronouns, *je'der*, *jeg'licher*, *je'd'weder*, every, (the last three having no plural.) Ex.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
N.	der gu'te,	die gu'te,	das gu'te,	the good.
G.	des gu'ten,	der gu'ten,	des gu'ten,	of the good.
D.	dem gu'ten,	der gu'ten,	dem gu'ten,	to the good.
A.	den gu'ten,	die gu'te,	das gu'te,	the good.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

N.	die gu'ten,	the good.
G.	der gu'ten,	of the good.
D.	den gu'ten,	to the good.
A.	die gu'ten,	the good.

Der gu'te, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

N.	der gu'te Mann,	the good man.
G.	des gu'ten Man'nes,	of the good man.
D.	dem gu'ten Man'ne,	to the good man.
A.	den gu'ten Mann,	the good man.

Die gu'te, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

N.	die gu'te Frau,	the good woman.
G.	der gu'ten Frau,	of the good woman.
D.	der gu'ten Frau,	to the good woman.
A.	die gu'te Frau,	the good woman.

Das gu'te, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

N.	das gu'te Werk,	the good work.
G.	des gu'ten Wer'kes,	of the good work.
D.	dem gu'ten Wer'ke,	to the good work.
A.	das gu'te Werk,	the good work.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

N.	die gu'ten Män'ner,	Frau'en,	Wer'ke,	
	the good	men,	women,	works.
G.	der gu'ten Män'ner,	Frau'en,	Wer'ke,	of the good &c
D.	den gu'ten Män'nern,	Frau'en,	Wer'ken,	to the good &c.
A.	die gu'ten Män'ner,	Frau'en,	Wer'ke,	the good &c.

So decline der klei'ne Kna'be, 2. a., the little boy ; die kluge Frau, 1. d., the prudent woman ; das klei'ne Mäd'chen, 3. a. a., the little girl.

### Third Declension.

Adjectives are inflected according to the third declension, when they are preceded by the indefinite article, ein, ei'ne, ein ; or by a personal or a possessive pronoun, as, ich, I ; du, thou ; er, he, &c. ; mein, mine ; dein, thine ; sein, his, &c. This declension is like the first in the nominative and accusative singular, and like the second in all the cases of the plural.

The declension is as follows :

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	mein gu'ter,	mei'ne gu'te,	mein gu'tes,	my good.
<i>G.</i>	mei'nes gu'ten,	mei'ner gu'ten,	mei'nes gu'ten,	of my good.
<i>D.</i>	mei'nem gu'ten,	mei'ner gu'ten,	mei'nem gu'ten,	to my good.
<i>A.</i>	mei'nen gu'ten,	mei'ne gu'te,	mein gu'tes,	my good.

**Mein gu'ter**, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i>	mein gu'ter Bru'der,	my good brother.
<i>G.</i>	mei'nes gu'ten Bru'ders,	of my good brother.
<i>D.</i>	mei'nem gu'ten Bru'der,	to my good brother.
<i>A.</i>	mei'nen gu'ten Bru'der,	my good brother.

**Mei'ne gu'te**, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i>	mei'ne gu'te Schwes'ter,	my good sister.
<i>G.</i>	mei'ner gu'ten Schwes'ter,	of my good sister.
<i>D.</i>	mei'ner gu'ten Schwes'ter,	to my good sister.
<i>A.</i>	mei'ne gu'te Schwes'ter,	my good sister.

**Mein gu'tes**, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

<i>N.</i>	mein gu'tes Kind,	my good child.
<i>G.</i>	mei'nes gu'ten Kin'des,	of my good child.
<i>D.</i>	mei'nem gu'ten Kin'de,	to my good child.
<i>A.</i>	mein gu'tes Kind,	my good child.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i>	mei'ne gu'ten Bru'der,	Schwes'tern,	Kin'der,	
	my good brothers,	sisters,	children.	
<i>G.</i>	mei'ner gu'ten Bru'der,	Schwes'tern,	Kin'der,	of my &c.
<i>D.</i>	mei'nen gu'ten Bru'dern,	Schwes'tern,	Kin'dern,	to my &c.
<i>A.</i>	mei'ne gu'ten Bru'der,	Schwes'tern,	Kin'der,	my &c.

So decline, ein wei'ser Mann, 3. b. e., a wise man ; ei'ne scho'ne Frau, 1. d., a fair lady ; ein klei'nes Haus, 3. b. e., a small house ; dei'ne treue Freun'din, 1. e., thy faithful (female) friend.

The following table exhibits the terminations of the adjectives, according to the three declensions.

First Declension, like gu'ter.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	er	e	es	e
<i>Gen.</i>	es or en	er	es or en	er
<i>Dat.</i>	em	er	em	en
<i>Acc.</i>	en	e	es	e

Second Declension, like der gu'te.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	e	e	e	en
<i>Gen.</i>	en	en	en	en
<i>Dat.</i>	en	en	en	en
<i>Acc.</i>	en	e	e	en

Third Declension, like mein gu'ter.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	er	e	es	en
<i>Gen.</i>	en	en	en	en
<i>Dat.</i>	en	en	en	en
<i>Acc.</i>	en	e	es	en

*Promiscuous Exercises on the Adjectives and Nouns.*

Of the fine children.	schön.	Kind, n. 3. b. e.
To a fine child.	glück'lich.	Tag, m. 3. b. b.
Of happy days.	gut.	*Mann, m. 3. b. e.
Of good men.	un'wissend.	zeu'te, m. 3. b.
The ignorant people.	flüß'ig.	*Luft, f. 1. b.
The liquid air.	fließ'ig.	*Magd, f. 1. b.
The industrious maid.	leicht.	Ar'beit, f. 1. d.
An easy work.	schwer.	Ar'beit, f. 1. d.
Of hard labor.	spar'sam.	Mahl'zeit, f. 1. d.
The frugal meal.	erha'ben.	Gich'te, f. 1. c.
Tall firs.	hart.	Ei'che, f. 1. c.
Of the hard oak.	schat'tig.	Ul'me, f. 1. c.
A shady elm.	hart.	Ei'sen, n. 3. a. a.
Of hard iron.	früh.	ter'che, f. 1. c.
The early lark.	un'bekannt.	*Land, n. 3. b. b. & e.
An unknown land.	troja'nisch.	Held, m. 2. b.
Of the Trojan hero.	gesit'tet.	Euro'pa, n.
Of civilized Europe.	heiß.	A'frika, n.
To hot Africa.	frei.	Ame'rika, n.
Free America.	gros.	A'sien, n.
To large Asia.	feu'rig.	Hel'la, m.
To the fiery Hecla.	schön.	He'lena, f.
Of the fair Helen.	keusch.	Dia'na, f.
The chaste Diana.	geogra'phisch.	Mei'le, f. 1. c.
The geographical miles.	schreck'lich.	Don'ner, m. 3. a. a.
Terrible thunder.	olym'pisch.	Spiel, n. 3. b. b.
The Olympic games.	entfernt.	*Thal, n. 3. b. e.
Of distant vallies.	schön.	Blä'me, f. 1. c.
Of fine flowers.	fromm.	*Ba'ter, m. 3. a. a.
The pious father. (Acc.)	frisch.	But'ter, f. 1.
To fresh butter.	roth.	Kleid, n. 3. b. e.
To a red coat.	schwarz.	Brod, n. 3. b. b.
Black bread.		

*Observations.* I. When several adjectives are, one after another, joined to the same substantive, they are generally declined as each of them would be, if it stood alone, according to the above rules. Thus, in the example, mein gu'ter al'ter Freund, my good old friend, both adjectives, gu'ter and al'ter, are inflected according to the third declension; in, die treu'e, zärt'liche Mut'ter, the faithful, tender mother, both

adjectives are inflected according to the second declension; and in, reife, köstliche Frucht, ripe, delicious fruit, each adjective is inflected according to the first declension. But in this last case (viz. when adjectives are put together without being preceded by an article or pronoun), we find, in many instances, only the first adjective inflected according to the first declension, and the others according to the third, in all the cases, except the nominative singular. The following examples exhibit these two modes of declining.

## Masculine.

## Singular.

N. schö'ner ro'ther Ap'fel,	fine red apple.
G. schö'nes (or schö'nen*) ro'then Ap'fels,	of a fine red apple.
D. schönem ro'them or ro'then Ap'fel,	to a fine red apple.
A. schön'en ro'then Ap'fel,	fine red apple.

## Feminine.

## Singular.

N. schö'ne ro'the Ro'se,	fine red rose.
G. schö'ner ro'ther or ro'then Ro'se,	of fine red rose.
D. schö'ner ro'ther or ro'then Ro'se,	to fine red rose.
A. schö'ne ro'the Ro'se,	fine red rose.

## Neuter.

## Singular.

N. schö'nes ro'thes Tuch,	fine red cloth.
G. schö'nes (or schö'nen*) ro'then Tuches,	of fine red cloth.
D. schönem ro'them or ro'then Tuche,	to fine red cloth.
A. schö'nes ro'thes Tuch,	fine red cloth.

---

\* The difference between *es* and *en* in the genitive singular of the *first* adjective masculine or neuter, has nothing to do with the two modes of declining here exhibited, but is a matter of euphony, as has been before observed, page 30. But the genitive of the *subsequent* adjectives never ends in *es*, but always in *en*: thus we cannot say, schö'nes ro'thes Ap'fels, but we must say, schö'nes (or schö'nen) ro'then Ap'fels.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

- N. schö'ne ro'the or ro'then Äp'fel, Ro'sen, Tü'cher,  
fine red apples, roses, cloths.  
G. schö'ner ro'ther or ro'then Äp'fel, Ro'sen, Tü'cher, of &c.  
D. schö'nen ro'then Äp'feln, Ro'sen, Tü'chern, to &c.  
A. schö'ne ro'the or ro'then Äp'fel, Ro'sen, Tü'cher, fine &c.

In good writing and speaking, the choice between these two modes of declining an adjective when subsequent to another, though frequently depending on euphony, is sometimes determined by the degree of importance assigned to the subsequent adjective. Thus, in speaking of "good domestic cloths," we may design either to distinguish good *domestic* from good *foreign* cloths, or good domestic from *bad* domestic cloths. The first meaning is expressed in German by inflecting the subsequent like the preceding adjective, according to the first declension; as, gu'ter ein'heimischer Tü'cher, of good *domestic* cloths; but in order to express the last mentioned meaning we decline the subsequent adjective according to the third declension; as, gu'ter ein'heimischen Tü'cher, of good domestic cloths.

The above observation concerning the declension of an adjective subsequent to another, applies also to adjectives preceded by the indefinite pronouns, meh'rere, several; ei'nige, some; et'liche, some; wel'che, some\*; man'che, some; we'nige, few; vie'le, many; al'le, all. Thus, to distinguish "all good men" from all that are not so, we say, al'le gu'te Men'schen; but in order to distinguish "all good men" from *some* good ones, we say, al'le gu'ten Men'schen.

*Observation II.* When indeclinable words precede, whether numerals, adjectives, or adverbs, they have no influence upon the adjective; as,

Et'was gu'ter Wein,	some good wine.
Viel fri'sche Milch,	much fresh milk.
We'nig kal'tes Was'ser,	a little cold water.
Sehr gu'te Men'schen,	very good men.
Vier baa're Tha'ler,	four dollars in cash.

---

\* This indefinite pronoun is not to be confounded with the relative, wel'cher, wel'che, wel'ches, who, which. If the latter precedes an adjective, this is always inflected according to the second declension, as has been observed, page 31.



**Fünf lang'e Jah're,** five long years.  
**Nach zehn lang'en Jah'ren,** after ten long years.

But the adjective is declined according to the above rules concerning subsequent adjectives (Obs. I.), when it is preceded by *zwei* or *drei*, these two numerals being declined in the genitive and dative. Examples :

**G. Zwei'er lang'er or lang'en Ta'ge,** of two long days.  
**G. Drei'er baa'rer or baa'ren Tha'ler,** of three dollars in cash.  
**D. Drei'en gu'ten Men'schen,** to three good men.

**Observation III.** In familiar language, and in poetry, the termination of an adjective, when it precedes a neuter noun, is sometimes dropped in the nominative and accusative case singular, and its simple form alone is retained ; as, *schön Wetter*, fine weather, instead of *schö'nes Wetter* ; *ein froh Gesicht*, a cheerful face, instead of *ein fro'hes Gesicht*.

**Observation IV.** If an adjective in its simple form is put before another adjective the termination of which agrees with the following substantive, in gender, number, and case, the first adjective is not to be considered as denoting a quality of the substantive, but as an adverb, qualifying the adjective after it. The following examples will explain this difference.

**Ein gan'zes neu'es Haus,** a whole, new house.  
**Ein ganz neu'es Haus,** a house wholly or quite new.  
**Ein neu'es ein'gebundnes Buch,** a new book, bound up.  
**Ein neu ein'gebundnes Buch,** a book newly bound.  
**Ein hal'bes gebrä'tenes Huhn,** half a roasted chicken.  
**Ein halb gebrä'tenes Huhn,** a chicken half roasted.

**V.** When two adjectives of the same termination come together, coupled by the conjunction *und*, and, it is usual in familiar discourse to drop the termination of the first ; as, *ein roth- und weiß'es Gesicht*, a red and white face ; *ein genüg- und ar'beitsamer Mensch*, a contented and industrious man.

Adjectives may be used as substantives, both in the singular and plural ; as, *der Wei'se*, the wise man ; *die Wei'se*, the wise woman ; *das Erhä'bene*, the sublime ; *der Gelehr'te*, the learned man ; *die Schö'ne*, the fair woman ; *der Bekann'te*, the male acquaintance ; *die Bekann'te*, the female acquaintance ; *der Verwand'te*, the male relation ; *die Verwand'te*, the female relation ; *der Gelieb'te*, the beloved man ; *die Gelieb'te*, the beloved woman.

## § 2. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The degrees of comparison are the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*. The comparative is formed by adding *r* or *er*, and the superlative by adding *st*, or *est*, to the end of the simple word, or positive; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Klein, little;	klei'ner, less;	kleinst, least.
Weis'e, wise;	wei'ser, wiser;	wei'sest, wisest.
Dreist, bold;	drei'ster, bolder;	drei'stest, * boldest.

So form:

hohl, hollow.	lahm, lame.
rauh, rough.	stolz, proud.
blau, blue.	roh, raw.
schlecht, bad.	fest, firm.
toll, mad.	zähm, tame.
sanft, soft.	schlank, slender.
mü'de, weary.	

The preceding adjectives do not change their vowels in the comparative and superlative, but most adjectives change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in the comparative and superlative; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
alt, old;	äl'ter, older;	äl'test, oldest.
lang, long;	läng'er, longer;	läng'st, longest.
kurz, short;	kür'zer, shorter;	kür'zest, shortest.

So form:

*arm, poor.	*kalt, cold.
*bang'e, fearful.	*klug, prudent.
*dumm, stupid.	*nass, wet.
*grob, coarse.	*schwach, weak.
*groß, great.	*stark, strong.
*hart, hard.	

---

\* The superlative degree is seldom used in its simple form, but is commonly made to agree, in gender, number, and case, with the noun to which it refers, by adding to the superlative such endings as the declension of adjectives requires (see page 40); ex. klein'ste Gab'e, smallest gift; der wei'seste Rath, the wisest counsel; sein drei'stestes Un'ternehmen, his boldest enterprise.

Some adjectives form their comparison irregularly ; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
gut, good ;	bess'er, better ;	best, best.
hoch, high ;	hö'her, higher ;	höch'st, highest.
na'he, near ;	nä'hër, nearer ;	näch'st, nearest.
viel, much ;	mehr, more ;	mei'st, most.

The comparative and superlative of adjectives are declined like the positive.

The adjective *rein*, pure, comparative *rei'ner*, superlative *reinst*, is thus declined in its comparative degree.

### First Declension.

#### *Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	rei'nerer,	rei'nere,	rei'neres,	pur <sup>r</sup> .
<i>G.</i>	{ rei'neres, or rei'neren,* }	rei'nerer,	{ rei'neres, or rei'neren,* }	of pur <sup>r</sup> .
<i>D.</i>	rei'nerem,	rei'nerer,	rei'nerem,	to pur <sup>r</sup> .
<i>A.</i>	rei'neren,	rei'nere,	rei'neres,	pur <sup>r</sup> .

#### *Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i>	rei'nere,	pur <sup>r</sup> .
<i>G.</i>	rei'nerer,	of pur <sup>r</sup> .
<i>D.</i>	rei'neren,	to pur <sup>r</sup> .
<i>A.</i>	rein'ere,	pur <sup>r</sup> .

### Second Declension.

#### *Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	der rei'nere,	die rei'nere,	das rei'nere,	the pur <sup>r</sup> .
<i>G.</i>	des rei'neren,	der rei'neren,	des rei'neren,	of the pur <sup>r</sup> .
<i>D.</i>	dem rei'neren,	der rei'neren,	dem rei'neren,	to the pur <sup>r</sup> .
<i>A.</i>	den rei'neren,	die rei'nere,	das rei'nere,	the pur <sup>r</sup> .

\* See page 30, note.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

N.	die rei'neren,	the purer.
G.	der rei'neren,	of the purer.
D.	den rei'neren,	to the purer.
A.	die rei'neren,	the purer.

### Third Declension.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	mein rei'nerer,	mei'ne rei'nere,	mein rei'neres, my purer.
G.	mei'nes rei'neren,	mei'ner rei'neren,	mei'nes rei'neren, of my purer.
D.	mei'nem rei'neren,	mei'ner rei'neren,	mei'nem rei'neren, to my purer.
A.	mei'nen rei'neren,	mei'ne rei'nere,	mein rei'neres, my purer.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

N.	mei'ne rei'neren,	my purer.
G.	mei'ner rei'neren,	of my purer.
D.	mei'nen rei'neren,	to my purer.
A.	mei'ne rei'neren,	my purer.

In the same manner is declined the superlative of *rein* ; viz:

First Declension :

rein'ster, rein'ste, rein'stes, purest, &c.

Second Declension :

der rein'ste, die rein'ste, das rein'ste, the purest, &c.

Third Declension :

mein rein'ster, mei'ne rein'ste, mein rein'stes, my purest, &c.

Thus inflect through the three declensions :

Edlerer \*Mann, 3. b. e., more noble man.

Best'er Freund, 3. b. b., best friend.

Wär'mere \*luft, 1. b., warmer air.

Schön'ste Frau, 1. d., handsomest woman.

Jüng'eres Kind, 3. b. e., younger child.

Frei'stes \*land, 3. b. e., freest country.

*Observations on the Comparison of Adjectives.*

I. The *e* is often dropped in the comparative of adjectives, ending in *el*, *en*, and *er*; as,

*Positive.*

*e'del*, noble;

*si'cher*, safe;

*vollkom'men*, perfect;

*Comparative.*

*e'dler*, nobler, (for *e'deler*.)

*si'cher*, safer, (for *si'cherer*.)

*vollkom'mer*, more perfect, (for *vollkom'mener*.)

II. Most primitives change their vowels in the comparative and superlative; as, *stark*, strong; *sta'rker*, stronger; *der sta'rkste*, the strongest; *kurz*, short; *ku'rzer*, *der ku'rzeste*; but the following are exceptions, as well as some others previously noticed; *falsch*, false; *gera'de*, straight; *hold*, affectionate; *lo'se*, loose; *glatt*, smooth; *matt*, faint; *nackt*, naked; *rund*, round; *stumpf*, dull; *platt*, flat; *satt*, satiated; *schlaff*, slack. Derivatives never change their vowels; as, *la'sterhaft*, vicious; *la'sterhafter*, more vicious; *der la'sterhafteste*, the most vicious.

Recapitulatory Exercises on Adjectives.

Die Natur' zeigt uns scho'nere Ge'genstände als die Kunst.

Die berg'ichten Ge'genden sind an'genehmer als die e'benen.

Die Wol'le der säch'sischen Schaa'fe ist fei'ner als die Wol'le der eng'lischen.

Die Man'deln ha'ben ei'nen fei'neren Geschmac' als die Nüs'se.

Die unüberwind'liche Flot'te der Spa'nier hielt ei'nen au'serordentlichen Sturm aus.

Der reich'ste Mensch ist nicht im'mer der glück'lichste, und der arm'ste ist nicht im'mer der un'glücklichste; son'dern der tugendhafteste ist der glück'lichste un'ter den Men'schen.

Die Zu'gend ist das höch'ste Gut des Men'schen; der grös'te Mensch a'ber, hat nicht im'mer die'ses höch'ste Gut, und er ist daher nicht im'mer un'srer Ach'tung der wür'digste.

Die Figur' des Zir'kels ist die vollkom'menste un'ter den geometrischen Figu'ren.

die Natur, nature.

zeigt, exhibits.

uns, to us.

schön, fine.

\*Gegenstand, object.

als, than.

die Kunst, art.

bergicht, mountainous.

Gegend, country.

sind, are.

angenehm, pleasant.	arm, poor.
eben, plain.	unglücklich, unhappy.
Wolle, wool.	sondern, but.
sächsisch, Saxon.	tugendhaft, virtuous.
Schaaß, sheep.	unter, among.
ist, is.	Tugend, virtue.
fein, fine.	hoch, high.
englisch, English.	Gut, good.
Mandel, almond.	aber, but.
haben, have.	groß, great.
Geschmack, taste.	hat nicht immer, has not al-
Nuß, nut.	ways.
unüberwindlich, invincible.	dieses, this.
Flotte, fleet.	er, he.
Spanier, Spaniard.	daher, therefore.
hielt aus, endured.	würdig, worthy.
außerordentlich, extraordinary.	unster, of our.
Sturm, storm.	Achtung, esteem.
reich, rich.	Figur, figure.
Mensch, man.	Kreis, circle.
nicht immer, not always.	vollkommen, complete.
glücklich, happy.	geometrisch, geometrical.

The father is more discreet than the son.

The cedar is higher than the willow.

The oak yields us the hardest wood, and is said to<sup>7</sup> attain<sup>7</sup> (to) the<sup>1</sup> greatest<sup>2</sup> age<sup>3</sup> of<sup>4</sup> all<sup>5</sup> trees<sup>6</sup>.

God is the most powerful being; therefore he can humble<sup>4</sup> the<sup>1</sup> most<sup>2</sup> exalted<sup>2</sup> man<sup>2</sup>, and<sup>5</sup> make<sup>10</sup> the<sup>6</sup> weakest<sup>7</sup> into<sup>8</sup> the<sup>8</sup> strongest<sup>9</sup>.

Iceland is one of the coldest countries; and those regions are the hottest, which lie<sup>4</sup> under<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> equator<sup>3</sup>.

The petitions of the poorest citizens ought to be heard.

The oldest persons do not remember such a severe frost.

The longer the better.

This is my youngest son.

That is the tamest bird.

He is the proudest man.

He has the strongest reasons.

father, \*Vater, m. 3. a. a.  
discreet, \*klug.

than, als.  
son, \*Sohn, m. 3. b. b.

cedar, <i>Ze'der</i> , <i>f.</i> 1. <i>c.</i>	are, <i>sind</i> .
willow, <i>We'i'de</i> , <i>f.</i> 1. <i>c.</i>	hot, <i>heiss</i> .
oak, <i>*Eich'baum</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i>	which, <i>wel'che</i> .
yields, <i>lie'fert</i> .	under the equator, <i>unter dem</i>
us, <i>uns</i> .	<i>Äqua'tor</i> .
hard, <i>*hart</i> .	lie, <i>lie'gen</i> .
wood, <i>*Holz</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. <i>b. c.</i>	petition, <i>Bit'te</i> , <i>f.</i> 1. <i>c.</i>
and is said, <i>und soll</i> .	poor, <i>*arm</i> .
great, <i>*hoch</i> .	citizen, <i>Bür'ger</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. <i>a. a.</i>
age, <i>Äl'ter</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. <i>a. a.</i>	ought to be heard, <i>soll'ten</i>
of, <i>un'ter</i> .	<i>gehört wer'den</i> .
all, <i>al'len</i> .	old, <i>*alt</i> .
tree, <i>*Baum</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i> ( <i>Dat.</i> )	person, <i>Person'</i> , <i>f.</i> 1. <i>d.</i>
to attain to, <i>erreichen</i> .	do not remember, <i>erinnern</i>
God, 3. <i>b. c.</i> , <i>God</i> .	<i>sich nicht</i> .
powerful, <i>mäch'tig</i> .	such a, <i>ein sol'cher</i> . ( <i>Gen.</i> )
being, <i>Wes'en</i> , 3. <i>a. a.</i>	severe, <i>*stark</i> .
therefore he can, <i>da'her kann</i>	frost, <i>Grost</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i>
<i>er</i> .	the, <i>je</i> .
exalted, <i>erha'ben</i> .	long, <i>*lang</i> .
man, <i>Mensch</i> , <i>m.</i> 2. <i>b.</i>	the, <i>je</i> .
humble, <i>ernie'drigen</i> .	good, <i>gut</i> .
weak, <i>*schwach</i> .	this, <i>dies</i> .
into the, <i>zum</i> .	my, <i>mein</i> .
strong, <i>*stark</i> .	young, <i>*jung</i> .
to make, <i>ma'chen</i> .	that, <i>das</i> .
Iceland, <i>Is'land</i> .	tame, <i>zähm</i> .
one, <i>ei'nes</i> .	bird, <i>*Vo'gel</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. <i>a. a.</i>
cold, <i>kalt</i> .	he is, <i>er ist</i> .
country, <i>*land</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. <i>b. c.</i>	proud, <i>stolz</i> .
those, <i>die</i> .	he has, <i>er hat</i> .
region, <i>Ge'gend</i> , <i>f.</i> 1. <i>d.</i>	strong, <i>*stark</i> .
	reason, <i>*Grund</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i>

## CHAPTER IV.

## NUMERALS.

The numbers are divided into *cardinal*, *ordinal*, *proportional*, *distributive*, and *collective*.

I. The *cardinal* numbers are as follows :

(Null or *Ze'ro*, nothing.)  
Ein or *eins*, one.

Zwei (or *zwen*), two.  
Drei (or *dren*), three.

Vier, four.	Ein und drei'ßig, thirty-one, &c.
Fünf, five.	Vier'zig, forty, &c.
Sechs, six.	Fünf'zig or fünf'zig, fifty, &c.
Sieben, seven.	Sech'zig, sixty, &c.
Acht, eight.	Sieben'zig or sieb'zig, seventy, &c.
Neun, nine.	Acht'zig, eighty, &c.
Ze'hen or zehn, ten.	Neun'zig, ninety, &c.
Elf, eleven.	Hun'dert, a hundred.
Zwölf, twelve.	Hun'dert und ein or eins, a hundred and one.
Drei'zehn, thirteen.	Hun'dert und zwei, a hundred and two, &c.
Bier'zehn, fourteen.	Zwei hun'dert, two hundred, &c.
Fünf'zehn or fünf'zehn, fifteen.	Tau'send, a thousand.
Sech'zehn, sixteen.	Zehn tau'send, ten thousand.
Sieben'zehn or sieb'zehn, seven-teen.	Ei'ne Million', one million.
Acht'zehn, eighteen.	Zwei Millio'n'en, two millions.
Neun'zehn, nineteen.	Drei Millio'n'en, three mil- lions, &c.
Zwan'zig, twenty.	Ein tau'send acht hun'dert und vier und zwan'zig, 1824.
Ein und zwan'zig, one and twenty.	
Zwei und zwan'zig, two and twenty, &c.	
Drei'ßig, thirty.	

Some of the cardinal numbers are declinable.

The numeral *ein*, one, when put before a substantive, is commonly declined like the article *ein*, a; but it is often, like an adjective, inflected according to the three declensions of adjectives; as,

1. *Ei'ner*, *ei'ne*, *ei'nes*, one; *gen.* *ei'nes*, *ei'ner*, *ei'nes*, of one; &c.

2. *Der ei'ne*, *die ei'ne*, *das ei'ne*, the one; *gen.* *des ei'nen*, *der ei'nen*, *des ei'nen*, of the one; &c.

3. *Mein ei'ner*, *mei'ne ei'ne*, *mein ei'nes*, my one; *gen.* *mei'nes ei'nen*, *mei'ner ei'nen*, *mei'nes ei'nen*, of my one; &c. *Zwei\** and *drei*, make *zwei'er* and *drei'er* in the genitive, *zwei'en* and *drei'en* in the dative (see page 38); most of the other numerals admit of declension in the dative only, by adding *en*, as, *vie'ren*, *fünf'en*, &c.

---

\* The cardinal number, *zwei*, two, admits of three genders; as, *Masc.* *zwei*, *Fem.* *zwo*, *Neut.* *zween*, two. But, in modern German, *zwei* is commonly used for all the genders.



*Observations on the Cardinal Numbers.*

1. *Ein* is joined to the noun; as, *ein Mann*, one man; *ei'ne Frau*, one woman; and in order to distinguish it from the article, it is pronounced with a stronger accent. *Ei'ner* is used when the noun is understood; as, *hier ist ei'ner*, here is one; (that is, one man, or one thing, understood) &c; *hier ist ei'ne*, here is one, (that is, one woman) &c. *Ein'mal eins ist eins*, once one is one. *Ha'ben Sie ein Mess'er*, have you a knife? *hier ist ei'nes*, here is one, (that is, one knife.)

2. The cardinal numbers are converted into substantives, by the addition of *er*, and *in*; as, *ein Fünfziger*, a man of fifty; *ei'ne Dreißigerin*, a woman of thirty.

The ordinal numbers are formed by adding *te* to the cardinal; except, *der erste*, the first; *der dritte*, the third: but after the number nineteen, *ste* is added.

H. The ordinal numbers are as follows:

Der erste, the first.	Der zwei und zwanzigste, the two and twentieth.
Der zweite, the second.	Der drei und zwanzigste, the three and twentieth.
Der dritte, the third.	Der dreißigste, the thirtieth.
Der vierte, the fourth.	Der ein und dreißigste, the one and thirtieth, &c.
Der fünfte, the fifth.	Der vierzigste, the fortieth.
Der sechste, the sixth.	Der fünfzigste or funfzigste, the fiftieth.
Der siebente, the seventh.	Der sechzigste, the sixtieth.
Der achte, the eighth.	Der siebenzigste or siebzigste, the seventieth.
Der neunte, the ninth.	Der achtzigste, the eightieth.
Der zehnte, the tenth.	Der neunzigste, the ninetieth.
Der elfte or eilfte, the eleventh.	Der hundertste, the hundredth.
Der zwölfte, the twelfth.	Der zwei hundertste, the two hundredth.
Der dreizehnte, the thirteenth.	Der drei hundertste, the three hundredth, &c.
Der vierzehnte, the fourteenth.	Der vier hundertste, the four hundredth.
Der fünfzehnte or funfzehnte, the fifteenth.	Der fünf hundertste, the five hundredth.
Der sechzehnte, the sixteenth.	Der sechs hundertste, the six hundredth.
Der siebzehnte or siebzehnte, the seventeenth.	Der sieben hundertste, the seven hundredth.
Der achtzehnte, the eighteenth.	Der acht hundertste, the eight hundredth.
Der neunzehnte, the nineteenth.	Der neun hundertste, the nine hundredth.
Der zwanzigste, the twentieth.	Der tausendste, the thousandth.
Der ein und zwanzigste, the one and twentieth.	Der zwei tausendste, the two thousandth.
	Der drei tausendste, the three thousandth, &c.

In compound numbers, the last only assumes the form of an ordinal; as, *der tauſend acht hun'dert und vier und zwan'zigſte*, the one thousand eight hundred and twenty-fourth.

These adjectives may be declined in all three forms.

1. Without the article; as, \*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>zwei'ter,</i>	<i>zwei'te,</i>	<i>zwei'tes,</i>	second.
<i>G.</i>	{ <i>zwei'tes</i> or <i>zwei'ten,</i>	{ <i>zwei'ter,</i>	{ <i>zwei'tes</i> or <i>zwei'ten,</i>	{ of a second, &c.

2. With the definite article; as :

<i>N.</i>	<i>der zwei'te,</i>	<i>die zwei'te,</i>	<i>das zwei'te,</i>	the second.
<i>G.</i>	<i>des zwei'ten,</i>	<i>der zwei'ten,</i>	<i>des zwei'ten,</i>	of the second, &c.

*Der an'dere*, the other, is used as synonymous with *der zwei'te*, where there are only two persons or things spoken of.

3. With the indefinite article, as :

<i>N.</i>	<i>ein zwei'ter,</i>	<i>ei'ne zwei'te,</i>	<i>ein zwei'tes,</i>	a second.
<i>G.</i>	<i>ei'nes zwei'ten,</i>	<i>ei'ner zwei'ten,</i>	<i>ei'nes zwei'ten,</i>	of a second, &c.

The Germans always say, *ein und zwan'zigſte*, one and twentieth; *zwei und drei'ſigſte*, two and thirtieth, and the like; but never, as in English, *zwan'zig er'ſte*, twenty-first; *drei'ſig zwei'te*, thirty-second, &c.

*Observations.* Partitive and fractional numbers are formed by a composition of ordinal and cardinal numbers, with various words or letters.

1. With *halb* (half), thus :

- An'derthalb* \* (for *zweite'halb*,) one and a half.
- Drit'tehalb*, two and a half.
- Bier'tehalb*, three and a half.
- Fünf'tehalb*, four and a half.
- Sech'stehalb*, five and a half.
- Sie'bentehalb*, or *sieb'tehalb*, six and a half.
- Zehn'tehalb*, nine and a half, &c.

Examples. *Vor an'derthalb Jah'ren*, a year and a half

---

\* This mode of compounding seldom exceeds *zwölft'halb*, eleven and a half.

ago ; in drit'tehalb Stun'den, in two hours and a half ; but in speaking of the hour of the day, the Germans say, halb eins, half past twelve ; halb zwei, half past one, &c.

2. With theil (part), as :

Das Drit'theil, the third or third part.

Das Bier'theil, the quarter or fourth part.

Das Fünf'theil, the fifth or fifth part.

Das Bier'theil Hun'dert, or das Bier'tel Hun'dert, the quarter of a hundred, &c.

In the above compound words, theil is frequently contracted into tel ; as,

Ein Drit'tel, a third part, or one third.

Ein Bier'tel, a fourth part, or quarter.

Ein Fünftel, a fifth, or one fifth.

Ein Sechstel, one sixth.

Ein Zehntel, one tenth.

Ein Zwan'zigstel, one twentieth, &c.

So in the plural, as :

Zwei Drit'tel, two thirds.

Drei Bier'tel, three fourths.

Bier Sie'bentel, four sevenths, &c.

These are regarded as substantives, and of the neuter gender ; but Theil, when used separately, is masculine.

III. Numerals of *proportion* and *distribution* are :

Ein'fach or ein'fältig, single.

Zwei'fach or zwei'fältig, double.

Drei'fach or drei'fältig, treble.

Bier'fach or vier'fältig, fourfold, &c.

Hun'dertfach or hun'dertfältig, centuple, or a hundred fold,

Tau'sendfach or tau'sendfältig, a thousand fold, &c.

*Observation.* The above numerals, in fach or fältig, are regularly declined, like other adjectives.

Die Häl'fte, the half.

Ein'mal, once.

Zwei'mal, twice.

Drei'mal, thrice, or three times.

Bier'mal, four times, &c.

Erst'lich or er'stens, firstly, or in the first place.

Zwei'tens, or zum an'dern, secondly.

Drit'tens, or zum drit'ten, thirdly.

Vier'tens, or zum vier'ten, fourthly, &c.

Ein'zeln, singly, or ein und ein, one by one.

Zwei und zwei, two and two, or two by two.

Drei und drei, three and three, &c.

Ein'nerlei, of one sort, or the same.

Zwei'erlei, of two sorts, or two different things, &c.

Paar'weise, in pairs, &c.

#### IV. The collective numbers are :

Ein Paar, a pair, few, or couple.

Ein Dutzend, a dozen.

Eine Man'del, fifteen, &c.

The English word, *time*, or *times*, is expressed by the termination *mal*\* ; as,

Dies'esmal, this time.

Ein an'dermal, another time.

Manch'mal, many a time.

Viel'mal, many times.

Oft'mal, oftentimes.

Wie viel'mal, how many times.

And also in multiplying ; as, zwei mal zwei sind vier, twice two are four (that is, literally, two times two are four) ; drei mal drei sind neun, three times three are nine, &c.

#### Recapitulatory Exercises on the Numerals, &c.

One and one make two.

Ten times ten make a hundred.

Six thousand six hundred and sixty-six soldiers composed the legion with the Romans.

It is said that in order to be able to write Chinese, the common man must<sup>6</sup> know<sup>4</sup> eighty<sup>1</sup> thousand<sup>3</sup> letters,<sup>3</sup> but the learned a hundred and sixty thousand.

Since the birth of Christ, a<sup>2</sup> thousand<sup>3</sup> eight<sup>4</sup> hundred<sup>5</sup> and<sup>6</sup> twenty-seven<sup>7</sup> years<sup>8</sup> have<sup>1</sup> elapsed<sup>9</sup>.

Germany was divided<sup>4</sup> into<sup>1</sup> ten<sup>2</sup> circles<sup>3</sup>.

America was discovered<sup>8</sup> by<sup>1</sup> Christopher<sup>2</sup> Columbus<sup>3</sup> in<sup>4</sup> the<sup>5</sup> fifteenth<sup>6</sup> century<sup>7</sup>.

(The) spring commences the twenty-first (of) March, (the) summer the twenty-first (of) June, (the) autumn the twenty-

---

\* The word *mal*, in old German, signifies *time* or *times*.

first (of) September, and (*the*) winter the twenty-first (of) December.

December is the twelfth month in the year.

Sunday (*the Sunday*) is the first day in the week, (*the*) Monday the second, (*the*) Tuesday the third, (*the*) Wednesday the fourth, (*the*) Thursday the fifth, (*the*) Friday the sixth, (*the*) Saturday the seventh and last.

Vienna, the capital of Austria, lies in the sixteenth degree of longitude, and forty-eighth degree of latitude.

make, macht.	spring, Früh'ling, m. 3. b. b.
times, mal.	commences, fängt an.
soldier, Kri'ger, m. 3. a. a.	March, Mär'z, m. 3. b. b.
composed with the Romans a	summer, Som'mer, m. 3. a. a.
legion, mach'ten bei den Rö'mern ei'ne legion' aus.	June, Ju'n'ius, m. (Ju'ni, of June.)
it is said, man sagt.	autumn, Herb'st, m. 3. b. b.
that in order to be able to	September, Septem'ber, m. 3. a. a.
write Chinese, dass um chi-ne'sisch schrei'ben zu kö'n'nen.	winter, Win'ter, m. 3. a. a.
common, gemein'.	December, Decem'ber, m. 3. a. a.
letter, Buch'st'ab, m. 3. c. c.	month, Mo'nat, m. 3. b.
to know, ken'nen.	in the, im (for in dem.)
must, mü's'se.	Sunday, Sonn'tag, m. 3. b. b.
but, a'ber.	day, Tag, m. 3. b. b.
learned, gelehrt'.	Monday, Mon'tag, m. 3. b. b.
since, seit.	Tuesday, Dien'stag, m. 3. b. b.
Christ, Chris'tus.	Wednesday, Mitt'woch, m. 3. a. b.
birth, Geburt', f. 1. d.	Thursday, Don'nerstag, m. 3. b. b.
have, sind.	Friday, Frei'tag, m. 3. b. b.
year, Jahr, n. 3. b. b.	Saturday, Sonn'abend, m. 3. b. b.
elapsed, verflos'sen.	last, leg'te.
Germany, Deutsch'land.	Vienna, Wien.
was, war.	capital, Haupt'stadt, f. 1. b. of, von.
into, in.	Austria, Ö's'treich.
circle, Kreis, m. 3. b. b.	lies, liegt.
divided, getheilt'.	longitude, Läng'e, f. 1. c.
America, Ame'rika.	latitude, Brei'te, f. 1. c.
was, wur'de.	
by, von.	
Christopher Columbus, Chris'toph Colum'bus.	
century, Jahrhun'dert, 3. b. b.	
discovered, entdeckt'.	

## CHAPTER V.

## PRONOUNS.

There are six kinds of pronouns, viz. *personal, possessive, demonstrative, interrogative, relative, and indefinite.*

In German, as in English, there are five personal pronouns; viz. *ich, I; du, thou; er, he; sie, she; es, it; with their plurals, wir, we; ihr, you; sie, they.*

## § 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns are declined as follows :

## First Person.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>ich, I.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>wir, we.</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>mei'ner, of me.</i>	<i>G.</i>	<i>un'ser, of us.</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>mir, to me.</i>	<i>D.</i>	<i>uns, to us.</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>mich, me.</i>	<i>A.</i>	<i>uns, us.</i>

## Second Person.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>du, thou.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>ihr, you.</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>dei'ner, of thee.</i>	<i>G.</i>	<i>eu'er, of you.</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>dir, to thee.</i>	<i>D.</i>	<i>euch, to you.</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>dich, thee.</i>	<i>A.</i>	<i>euch, you.</i>

## Third Person.

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>er, he.</i>	<i>sie, she.</i>		<i>es, it.</i>	
<i>G.</i>	<i>sei'ner, of him.</i>	<i>ih'rer, of her.</i>		<i>sei'ner, of it.</i>	
<i>D.</i>	<i>ih'm, to him.</i>	<i>ihr, to her.</i>		<i>ih'm, to it.</i>	
<i>A.</i>	<i>ihn, him.</i>	<i>sie, her.</i>		<i>es, it.</i>	

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>sie, they.</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ih'rer, of them.</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ih'nen, to them.</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>sie, them,</i>

The personal pronouns, when employed as reciprocals,\* are declined in the following manner :

## First Person.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>N.</i> . . . . .		<i>N.</i> . . . . .	
<i>G.</i> mei'ner (mein), of myself.		<i>G.</i> un'ser, of ourselves.	
<i>D.</i> mir, to myself.		<i>D.</i> uns, to ourselves.	
<i>A.</i> mich, myself.		<i>A.</i> uns, ourselves.	

## Second Person.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>N.</i> . . . . .		<i>N.</i> . . . . .	
<i>G.</i> dei'ner (dein), of thyself.		<i>G.</i> eu'er, of yourselves.	
<i>D.</i> dir, to thyself.		<i>D.</i> euch, to yourselves.	
<i>A.</i> dich, thyself.		<i>A.</i> euch, yourselves.	

## Third Person.

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> . . . . .		
<i>G.</i> sei'ner (sein), of himself.	ih'rer (ihr), of herself.	sei'ner (sein), of itself.
<i>D.</i> sich, to himself.	sich, to herself.	sich, to itself.
<i>A.</i> sich, himself.	sich, herself.	sich, itself.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> . . . . .	
<i>G.</i> ih'rer, of themselves.	
<i>D.</i> sich, to themselves.	
<i>A.</i> sich, themselves.	

Sometimes, to give a greater stress to the meaning of a personal pronoun, or a noun, one of the indeclinable words, *selbst*, or *sel'ber*; is added; as, *ich selbst* (or *sel'ber*), I myself;

---

\* These pronouns are used with reflective verbs, to express what we do to ourselves; ex. *ich flei'ße mich*, I dress myself; *du liebst dich*, thou lovest thyself; *er liebt sich*, he loves himself; &c.

sei'ner selbst, of himself; wir selbst, we ourselves; sich selbst, to himself, or, himself; to themselves, or, themselves, (as the sentence may require;) Cäsar selbst, Cæsar himself.

## § 2. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive pronouns are either *conjunctive*, or *absolute*.

### *Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns.*

The conjunctive possessive pronouns are as follows :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. F. &amp; N.</i>	
mein,	mei'ne,	mein,	mei'ne,	my.
dein,	dei'ne,	dein,	dei'ne,	thy.
sein,	sei'ne,	sein,	sei'ne,	his, its.
ihr,	ih're,	ihr,	ih're,	her.
un'ser,	un'sere, or un'sre,	un'ser,	un'sere, or un'sre,	our.
eu'er,	eu'ere, or eu're.	eu'er,	eu'ere, or eu're,	your.
ihr,	ih're,	ihr,	ih're,	their.

*Observation.* These pronouns are declined in the singular like the article *ein*, *a*, and in the plural like the adjective *gu'te*, good, in the first declension; as,

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. F. &amp; N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mein,	mei'ne,	mein,	mei'ne, my.
<i>G.</i>	mei'nes,	mei'ner,	mei'nes,	mei'ner, of my
<i>D.</i>	mei'nem,	mei'ner,	mei'nem,	mei'nen, to my.
<i>A.</i>	mei'nen,	mei'ne,	mein,	mei'ne, my.

These possessive pronouns are called *conjunctive*, because they are joined to substantives, with which they must agree, in gender, number, and case. They are declined as follows.

*Mein*, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :



*Singular.**Plural.*

N. mein Brū'der, my brother.

N. mei'ne Brū'der, my brothers.

G. mei'nes Brū'ders, of my brother.

G. mei'ner Brū'der, of my brothers.

D. mei'nem Brū'der, to my brother.

D. mei'nen Brū'dern, to my brothers.

A. mei'nen Brū'der, my brother.

A. mei'ne Brū'der, my brothers.

Mei'ne, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. mei'ne Schwes'ter, my sister.

N. mei'ne Schwes'tern, my sisters.

G. mei'ner Schwes'ter, of my sister.

G. mei'ner Schwes'tern, of my sisters.

D. mei'ner Schwes'ter, to my sister.

D. mei'nen Schwes'tern, to my sisters.

A. mei'ne Schwes'ter, my sister.

A. mei'ne Schwes'tern, my sisters.

Mein, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. mein Buch, my book.

N. mei'ne Bü'cher, my books.

G. mei'nes Bü'ches, of my book.

G. mei'ner Bü'cher, of my books.

D. mei'nem Bü'che, to my book.

D. mei'nen Bü'chern, to my books.

A. mein Buch, my book.

A. mei'ne Bü'cher, my books.

So decline, dein Vetter, *m.* 3. *a. c.*, thy male cousin ; sei'ne Vasse, *f.* 1. *c.*, his female cousin ; ihr Freund, *m.* 3. *b. h.*, her friend ; unser Nefse, *m.* 2. *a.*, our nephew ; eu're Nichte, *f.* 1. *c.*, your niece ; ihr Haus, *n.* 3. *b. e.*, their house.

*Absolute Possessive Pronouns.*

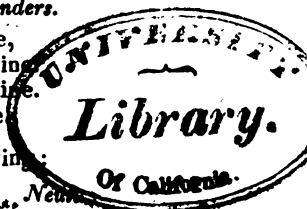
They are called *absolute* possessive pronouns, because they stand for some noun, which precedes them, expressed or understood, and with which they must agree in gender, number, and case. They are inflected according to the second declension of adjectives, like der gute, as follows :

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> der mei'nige,	die mei'nige,	das mei'nige,	mine.
<i>G.</i> des mei'nigen,	der mei'nigen,	des mei'nigen,	of mine.
<i>D.</i> dem mei'nigen,	der mei'nigen,	dem mei'nigen,	to mine.
<i>A.</i> den mei'nigen,	die mei'nige,	das mei'nige,	mine.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> die mei'nigen,	mine,
<i>G.</i> der mei'nigen,	of mine.
<i>D.</i> den mei'nigen,	to mine.
<i>A.</i> die mei'nigen,	mine.



So decline the following:

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
der dei'nige,	die dei'nige,	das dei'nige,	thine.
der sei'nige,	die sei'nige,	das sei'nige,	his, its.
der ih'rige,	die ih'rige,	das ih'rige,	hers.
der un'srige,	die un'srige,	das un'srige,	ours.
der eu'rige,	die eu'rige,	das eu'rige,	yours.
der ih'rige,	die ih'rige,	das ih'rige,	theirs.

*Plural.*

die dei'nigen,	thine.
die sei'nigen,	his, its.
die ih'rigen,	hers.
die un'srigen,	our.
die eu'rigen,	yours.
die ih'rigen,	theirs.

The substantive *Hut*, hat, with a conjunctive possessive pronoun before it, and an absolute possessive pronoun, after it, is thus declined:

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i> sein <i>Hut</i> und der mei'nige,	his hat and mine.
<i>G.</i> sei'nes <i>Hu'te</i> und des mei'nigen,	of his hat and mine.
<i>D.</i> sei'nem <i>Hu'te</i> und dem mei'nigen,	to his hat and mine.
<i>A.</i> sei'nen <i>Hut</i> und den mei'nigen,	his hat and mine.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i> sei'ne <i>Hu'te</i> und die mei'nigen,	his hats and mine.
<i>G.</i> sei'ner <i>Hu'te</i> und der mei'nigen,	of his hats and mine.
<i>D.</i> sei'nen <i>Hu'ten</i> und den mei'nigen,	to his hats and mine.
<i>A.</i> sei'ne <i>Hu'te</i> und die mei'nigen,	his hats and mine.

So decline :

mein Freund und der sei'nige,	my friend and his.
sei'ne Freun'din und die mei'nige,	his ( <i>female</i> ) friend and mine.
ihr Bru'der und der dei'nige,	their brother and thine.
mein Bru'der und der eu'rige,	my brother and yours.
mei'ne Schwes'ter und die sei'nige,	my sister and his.
sei'ne Schwes'ter und die ih'rige,	his sister and hers.
ih're Mut'ter und die mei'nige,	her mother and mine.
mein Buch und das sei'nige,	my book and his.
un'ser Va'terland und das ih'rige,	our country and theirs.
ihr Va'terland und das un'srige,	their country and ours.

The Germans sometimes make use of the following absolute possessive pronouns, instead of the preceding.

Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. & N.	
mei'ner,	mei'ne,	mei'nes,	mei'ne,	mine.
dei'ner,	dei'ne,	dei'nes,	dei'ne,	thine.
sei'ner,	sei'ne,	sei'nes,	sei'ne,	his, its.
ih'rer,	ih're,	ih'res,	ih're,	hers.
un'ser,	{ un'sere or un'sre,	{ un'seres or un'sres,	{ un'sere or un'sre,	{ ours.
eu'rer,	eu're,	eu'res,	eu're,	yours.
ih'rer,	ih're,	ih'res,	ih're,	theirs.

Or,

der mei'ne,	die mei'ne,	das mei'ne,	die mei'nen,	mine.
der dei'ne, &c.				

These correspond to the French pronouns, *le mien, le tien*, &c. and, like *der mei'nige*, &c., are used without a noun, the noun being understood; as, That is my hat, *Das ist mein Hut*; No, it is mine, *Nein, es ist mei'ner*, or, *der mei'ne*, or, *der mei'nige*.

The pronouns, *mei'ner*, mine; *dei'ner*, thine, &c., are declined like, *gu'ter, gu'te, gu'tes*, according to the first declension; and *der mei'ne, der dei'ne*, &c., like *der gu'te, die gu'te, das gu'te*, according to the second declension.

In addressing a person, where in English the pronouns, *you, your*, and *yours*, are used, the Germans, in speaking to intimate friends, make use of *du, thou*; *dein, thy*; *dei'ner, thine*; but in addressing others they employ the plural of the *third* person, *Sie*, which in this case does not mean *they*

but *you*. This alteration of the original meaning of the pronoun, is denoted by writing it with a capital letter (see p. 3.), in all its cases; as, *Nom. & Acc. Sie*, you; *Gen. Ihr'er*, of you; *Dat. Ih'nen*, to you. The same remark applies to the corresponding possessive pronouns, *Ihr*, *Ih're*, *Ihr*, your; *Ihr'er*, *Ih're*, *Ih'res*, or, *der Ihr'ige*, *die Ihr'ige*, *das Ihr'ige*, yours. Ex. *Sie* you find are *Ihr* your ei'gener own Herr master.

In the old German language, the pronouns *Ihr*, you, *Eu'rr*, your, were used to address a person in a dignified manner, and this mode (which corresponds to the English), is still sometimes used in poetry. But in common life this mode of addressing persons is rarely used, except in speaking to inferiors in rank, for which purpose also the third person singular, *er*, he, or *sie*, she, is sometimes employed.

### § 3. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns are those which point out the persons or things spoken of. They are declined in the following manner, like *gu'ter*, according to the first declension of adjectives.

#### *Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>die'ser</i> ,	<i>die'se</i> ,	<i>die'ses</i> or <i>die's</i> ,	<i>this</i> .
<i>G.</i>	<i>die'ses</i> ,	<i>die'ser</i> ,	<i>die'ses</i> ,	<i>of this</i> .
<i>D.</i>	<i>die'sem</i> ,	<i>die'ser</i> ,	<i>die'sem</i> ,	<i>to this</i> .
<i>A.</i>	<i>die'sen</i> ,	<i>die'se</i> ,	<i>die'ses</i> ,	<i>this</i> .

#### *Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>die'se</i> ,	<i>these</i> .
<i>G.</i>	<i>die'ser</i> ,	<i>of these</i> .
<i>D.</i>	<i>die'sen</i> ,	<i>to these</i> .
<i>A.</i>	<i>die'se</i> ,	<i>these</i> .

So decline the following :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>je'ner</i> ,	<i>je'ne</i> ,	<i>je'nes</i> , that;	<i>je'ne</i> , those.
<i>sel'biger</i> ,	<i>sel'bige</i> ,	<i>sel'biges</i> ,	<i>sel'bige</i> , the same.
<i>sol'cher</i> ,	<i>sol'che</i> ,	<i>sol'ches</i> ,	<i>sol'che</i> , such.

Dieſer, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

- N.* dieſer Kna'be, this boy.  
*G.* dieſes Kna'ben, of this boy.  
*D.* dieſem Kna'ben, to this boy.  
*A.* dieſen Kna'ben, this boy.

*Plural.*

- N.* dieſe Kna'ben, these boys.  
*G.* dieſer Kna'ben, of these boys.  
*D.* dieſen Kna'ben, to these boys.  
*A.* dieſe Kna'ben, these boys.

Dieſe, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

- N.* dieſe Magd, this (maid) servant.  
*G.* dieſer Magd, of this servant.  
*D.* dieſer Magd, to this servant.  
*A.* dieſe Magd, this servant.

*Plural.*

- N.* dieſe Mäg'de, these servants.  
*G.* dieſer Mäg'de, of these servants.  
*D.* dieſen Mäg'den, to these servants.  
*A.* dieſe Mäg'de, these servants.

Dieſes, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

- N.* dieſes Kind, this child.  
*G.* dieſes Kin'des, of this child.  
*D.* dieſem Kin'de, to this child.  
*A.* dieſes Kind, this child.

*Plural.*

- N.* dieſe Kin'der, these children.  
*G.* dieſer Kin'der, of these children.  
*D.* dieſen Kin'dern, to these children.  
*A.* dieſe Kin'der, these children.

So decline :

Je'nes Mä'd'chen, *n.* 3. *a.* a., that girl.

Je'ner \*Brü'der, *m.* 3. *a.* a., that brother.

Sol'che Nach'richt, *f.* 1. *d.*, such a report.

Je'ne \*Frucht, *f.* 1. *b.*, that fruit.

Sol'ches Wet'ter, *n.* 3. *a.* such weather.

The demonstrative pronoun, *der*, that, is thus declined (nearly like the article, *der*, the) :

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> <i>der</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>das</i> ,	that.
<i>G.</i> <i>ders</i> or <i>dersen</i> ,	<i>der</i> or <i>deren</i> ,	<i>ders</i> or <i>dersen</i> ,	of that.
<i>D.</i> <i>dem</i> ,	<i>der</i> ,	<i>dem</i> ,	to that.
<i>A.</i> <i>den</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>das</i> ,	that.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> <i>die</i> ,	those.
<i>G.</i> <i>derer</i> or <i>deren</i> ,	of those.
<i>D.</i> <i>denen</i> ,	to those.
<i>A.</i> <i>die</i> ,	those.

The pronoun *derjenige*, he that, is thus declined (like *der gute*, according to the second declension of adjectives).

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> <i>derjenige</i> ,	<i>diejenige</i> ,	<i>dasjenige</i> ,	he, she, it or that.
<i>G.</i> <i>desjenigen</i> ,	<i>derjenigen</i> ,	<i>desjenigen</i> ,	of him, her, it or that.
<i>D.</i> <i>demjenigen</i> ,	<i>derjenigen</i> ,	<i>demjenigen</i> ,	to him, her, it or that.
<i>A.</i> <i>denjenigen</i> ,	<i>diejenige</i> ,	<i>dasjenige</i> ,	him, her, it or that.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> <i>diejenigen</i> ,	they or those.
<i>G.</i> <i>derjenigen</i> ,	of them or of those.
<i>D.</i> <i>denjenigen</i> ,	to them or to those.
<i>A.</i> <i>diejenigen</i> ,	them or those.

So decline :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>dersel'be</i> ,	<i>diesel'be</i> ,	<i>dassel'be</i> ,	<i>diesel'ben</i> ,	the same, or he, she, it.
<i>dersel'bige</i> ,	<i>diesel'bige</i> ,	<i>dassel'bige</i> ,	<i>diesel'bigen</i> ,	the same, &c.

So decline the following :

Der'sel'be \*Mann, *m.* 3. *b. e.*, the same man.  
 Der'jenige \*Mann, that man.  
 Die'jenige Tu'gend, *f.* 1. *d.*, that virtue.  
 Die'sel'be Tu'gend, the same virtue.  
 Das'jenige \*Buch, *n.* 3. *b. e.*, that book.  
 Das'sel'be \*Buch, the same book.

#### § 4. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative pronouns relate to some word or phrase going before, which word or phrase is called the antecedent. They are declined in the following manner.

Wel'cher, who, is thus declined (according to the first declension of adjectives) :

##### *Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> wel'cher,	wel'che,	wel'ches,	who, which, or that.
<i>G.</i> wel'ches,	wel'cher,	wel'ches,	of whom or of which.
<i>D.</i> wel'chem,	wel'cher,	wel'chem,	to whom or to which.
<i>A.</i> wel'chen,	wel'che,	wel'ches,	whom or which.

##### *Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> wel'che,	who, which, or that.
<i>G.</i> wel'cher,	of whom or of which.
<i>D.</i> wel'chen,	to whom or to which.
<i>A.</i> wel'che,	whom or which.

Der, who, is declined like the demonstrative pronoun, *der*, that, (page 59;) as,

##### *Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> der,	die,	das,	who, which, or that.
<i>G.</i> des'sen or des's,	de'ren or der,	des'sen or des's,	whose, of whom, or of which.
<i>D.</i> dem,	der,	dem,	to whom or to which.
<i>A.</i> den,	die,	das,	whom or which.

**Wer**, who, and **was**, what, as relatives, are used in the singular only, and are thus declined:

<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> wer, who, whosoever, which, he who, she who.	<i>N.</i> was, what.
<i>G.</i> wessen, wess, of whom, of whomsoever, of which, &c.	<i>G.</i> wessen, wess, of what.
<i>D.</i> wem, to whom, to whomso- ever, &c.	<i>D.</i> wem, to what.
<i>A.</i> wen, whom, whomsoever, &c.	<i>A.</i> was, what.

*Observations.* **Wer** and **was** are sometimes relative and sometimes interrogative pronouns.

**Wer**, is sometimes Englished by *he who*; as, **Wer mich liebt, der ist mein Freund**, He who loves me, is my friend. **Was**, is sometimes Englished by *that which*; as, **Was ich gesagt habe, ist wahr**, That which, or what, I have said, is true.

The relative *so*, which, who, is indeclinable.

## § 5. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Interrogative pronouns are used in asking questions.

The interrogative pronouns are, **wer**, who? **was**, what? **welcher**, who? which? **was für ein**, what sort of? or, **was für**, what? They are declined in the following manner:

### *Singular and Plural.*

<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> wer, who?	<i>N.</i> was, what?
<i>G.</i> wessen, wess, whose?	<i>G.</i> von was or wovon, of what?
<i>D.</i> wem, to whom?	<i>D.</i> zu was or wozu, to what?
<i>A.</i> wen, whom?	<i>A.</i> was, what?

**Welcher**, who, which, though a relative pronoun, is frequently used as an interrogative; it is declined in the following manner (according to the first declension of adjectives):



<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. F. &amp; N.</i>
<i>N.</i> wel'cher,	wel'che,	wel'ches,	wel'che, which?
<i>G.</i> wel'ches,	wel'cher,	wel'ches,	wel'cher, of which?
<i>D.</i> wel'chem,	wel'cher,	wel'chem,	wel'chen, to which?
<i>A.</i> wel'chen,	wel'che,	wel'ches,	wel'che, which?

Was für ein, what? or, what sort of? is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> was für ein or ei'ner,*	was für ei'ne,	was für ein or ei'nes, what? or, what sort of?
<i>G.</i> was für eines,	was für ei'ner,	was für ei'nes, of what?
<i>D.</i> was für ei'nem,	was für ei'ner,	was für ei'nem, to what?
<i>A.</i> was für ei'nen,	was für ei'ne,	was für ein or ei'nes,* what?

*Plural, for the three genders.*

*N.* was für, what? or, what sort of?

*No genitive.*

*D.* was für, to what?

*A.* was für, what?

## § 6. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns are so called, because they refer to things in an indefinite manner. Some are *numeral*; as, ei'ner, one; kei'ner, no one, &c.; others *distributive*; as, je'der, each, every, &c.

These pronouns are generally declined like adjectives. Kei'ner, no one or none, is thus inflected according to the first declension :

\* Was für ein, is always used before a noun with which it agrees; was für ei'ner, and was für ei'nes (or eins), are used by themselves, with reference to a preceding noun. Ex. *Quest.* Haben Sie das Gemäl'de gese'hen? Have you seen the picture? *Ans.* Was für ein Gemäl'de? What picture? or simply, Was für ei'nes? Which one?

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> kei'ner,	kei'ne,	kei'nes,	no one or none.
<i>G.</i> kei'nes,	kei'ner,	kei'nes,	of no one.
<i>D.</i> kei'nem,	kei'ner,	kei'nem,	to no one.
<i>A.</i> kei'nen,	kei'ne,	kei'nes,	no one.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> kei'ne,	none.
<i>G.</i> kei'ner,	of none.
<i>D.</i> kei'nen,	to one.
<i>A.</i> kei'ne,	none.

*Observation.* Kein, no, is declined like the article ein; an, *M.* kein; *F.* kei'ne; *N.* kein, &c.

The following are declined like kei'ner.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
sol'cher,	sol'che,	sol'ches, such.
ein'ziger,	ein'zige,	ein'ziges, only.
ei'niger,	ei'nige,	ei'niges, some or any.
man'cher,	man'che,	man'ches, many a one.
al'ler,	al'le,	al'les, all.
je'der,	je'de,	je'des, every or each.
jed'weder,	jed'wede,	jed'wedes, every.
jeg'licher,	jeg'liche,	jeg'liches, every.
ei'ner,	ei'ne,	ei'nes, a person, some one, or one.
ei'ner von bei'den,	ei'ne von bei'den,	ei'nes von bei'den, either.
kei'ner von bei'den,	kei'ne von bei'den,	kei'nes von bei'den, neither.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

Sol'che,	such.
Ein'zige,	only.
Ei'nige,	some or any.
Man'che,	many.
Al'le,	all.

Je'der, jed'weder, jeg'licher, ei'ner, ei'ner von bei'den, and kei'ner von bei'den, have no plural.

The plural, bei'de, both, is declined like that of kei'ner.

The singular of that pronoun is used only in the neuter gender; viz. *N.* bei'des, both; *G.* bei'des, of both; *D.* bei'dem, to both; *A.* bei'des, both.

Some of these pronouns are declined as adjectives, with *ein* or *der*.

*Ein je'der*, each, is inflected according to the third declension, and in the singular number only:

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> ein je'der,	ei'ne je'de,	ein je'des,	each or every one.
<i>G.</i> ei'nes je'den,	ei'ner je'den,	ei'nes je'den,	of each.
<i>D.</i> ei'nem je'den,	ei'ner je'den,	ei'nem je'den,	to each.
<i>A.</i> ei'nen je'den,	ei'ne je'de,	ein je'des,	each.

*Der ei'ne*, the one, is inflected according to the second declension.

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> der ei'ne,	die ei'ne,	das ei'ne,	the one.
<i>G.</i> des ei'nen,	der ei'nen,	des ei'nen,	of the one.
<i>D.</i> dem ei'nen,	der ei'nen,	dem ei'nen,	to the one.
<i>A.</i> den ei'nen,	die ei'ne,	das ei'ne,	the one.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> die ei'nen,	the ones.
<i>G.</i> der ei'nen,	of the ones.
<i>D.</i> den ei'nen,	to the ones.
<i>A.</i> die ei'nen,	the ones.

So decline :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
ein an'drer,	ei'ne an'dre,	ein an'dres,	another.
der an'dre,	die an'dre,	das an'dre,	the other.
ein ein'ziger,	ei'ne ein'zige,	ein ein'ziges,	an only one.
der ein'zige,	die ein'zige,	das ein'zige,	the only one.
ein ei'niger,	ei'ne ei'nige,	ein ei'niges,	an only one.
der ei'nige,	die ei'nige,	das ei'nige,	the only one.
ein jed'weder,*	ei'ne jed'wede,	ein jed'wedes,	every.
ein jeg'licher,	ei'ne jeg'liche,	ein jeg'liches,	any, every one.

\* *Jed'weder*, is generally used without the article, and is then inflected like *je'der*, or *kei'ner*, according to the first declension.

The substantive pronouns, *Je'mand*, some or any body ; *Nie'mand*, nobody, are used in the singular only, and are declined both as adjectives and as nouns, as follows.

*N.* *je'mand*, some or any body.

*G.* *je'mands* or *je'mandes*, of some or any body.

*D.* *je'mand* or *je'mandem*, to some or any body.

*A.* *je'mand* or *je'manden*, some or any body.

*N.* *nie'mand*, nobody.

*G.* *nie'mands* or *nie'mandes*, of nobody.

*D.* *nie'mand* or *nie'mandem*, to nobody.

*A.* *nie'mand* or *nie'manden*, nobody.

*Je'derman*, every body, is declined as a noun.

*N.* *je'derman*, every body.

*G.* *je'dermans*, of every body.

*D.* *je'derman*, to every body.

*A.* *je'derman*, every body.

*Man*, one, we, people, they, &c. like the French pronoun, *on*, is used only in the third person singular, and is indeclinable.

### *Recapitulatory Exercises on all the Pronouns.*

*Wir sind Men'schen und wir sind sterb'lich.*

*Tho'ren, die ihr seid, indem' ihr hoffet, dass ihr oh'ne euch Mü'he zu geben, gelehrt' und wei'se werden kön'net.*

*Sokrates sag'te oft zu sei'nen Freun'den ; Mein le'ben ist mir nicht so schätzb'ar als die Zu'gend.*

*Un'ser Kö'rper ist hin'fällig, a'ber un'sre See'le wird e'wig le'ben.*

*Mein Geschmack' ist nicht der dei'nige, und dein Geschmack' ist nicht der mei'nige ; ich fin'de Vergnü'gen an Gemäl'den aus der Nie'derländischen Schu'le, und du, an Gemäl'den aus der Italia'nischen.*

*Woher' die'ser Un'terschied ? da doch sonst mei'ne Nei'gung mit der dei'nigen beina'he ganz überein'stimmt.*

*Ein je'der schöpft aus der Quel'le sei'ner Lei'denschaften, sein Glück o'der Un'glück.*

*Ich frag'te nach je'mand, fand a'ber nie'manden zu Hau'se.*

*Je'des Land hat sei'ne Gebräu'che.*

*Die Schwach'heit ist ein Feh'ler, wel'chen man schwer'lich verbes'sert.*

*Es giebt Feh'ler wel'che man sorg'fältig verbirgt'.*

sind, are.	Schule, school.
sterblich, mortal.	italiänisch, Italian.
Thor, fool.	woher, whence.
die ihr seid, as you are.	Unterschied, difference.
indem ihr hoffet, to hope.	da doch, since.
ohne zu geben, without giving.	sonst, otherwise.
ench, yourselves.	Neigung, inclination.
Mühe, trouble.	beinahe ganz übereinstimmt,
werden können, can become.	coincides almost entirely.
gelehrt, learned.	schöpft, draws.
weise, wise.	aus, from.
sagte oft, often said.	Quelle, source.
zu, to.	Leidenschaft, passion.
Freund, friend.	Glück oder Unglück, good or ill
leben, life.	fortune.
ist nicht so schätzbar, is not so	fragte, enquired.
valuable.	nach, after.
die Tugend, virtue.	fund, found.
Körper, body.	zu Hause, at home.
hinfällig, perishable.	land, country.
aber, but.	hat, has.
Seele, soul.	Gebrauch, custom.
wird ewig leben, will live for	die Schwachheit, weakness.
ever.	Fehler, fault.
Geschmack, taste.	man schwerlich verbessert, is with
finde Vergnügen an, am pleas-	great difficulty corrected.
ed with.	Es giebt, there are.
das Gemälde, picture.	man, we.
aus, (out) of.	sorgfältig, carefully.
niederländisch, Flemish.	verbirgt, conceals.

---

I know him. He knows them. She knows us. You know her. They know them. He gives it to them. We give it to him. She gives it to me. They give it to us. Tell it to him. He told it to them. Take pity on (of) me. He is ashamed (*shames himself*) of thee. We remember (*ourselves of*) you. There are ten<sup>3</sup> of<sup>1</sup> us<sup>2</sup>. There are six<sup>3</sup> of<sup>1</sup> them<sup>2</sup>. Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. I ascribe it to myself. He was not<sup>3</sup> master<sup>4</sup> of<sup>1</sup> himself<sup>2</sup>. When thy days are<sup>2</sup> dark<sup>1</sup>, then thy<sup>2</sup> false<sup>3</sup> friends<sup>4</sup> depart<sup>1</sup> from<sup>5</sup> thee<sup>6</sup>, but thy true friends forsake thee not.

They gave it not to my friend, but to thine.

We owe it not to your desert, but to theirs.

This is not thy lot but mine. I mean this house.

This is the man (*this man is it*) of whom I speak.

Thou must do<sup>2</sup> this<sup>1</sup>, but not<sup>2</sup> leave<sup>2</sup> that<sup>1</sup> (undone).

This is his own estate.

He does as those people of the torrid zone, who shoot<sup>2</sup> arrows<sup>1</sup> at<sup>2</sup> the<sup>3</sup> sun<sup>4</sup>.

Who is the most estimable among men? The most virtuous.

What (*which*) man can promise<sup>4</sup> himself<sup>1</sup> constant<sup>2</sup> happiness<sup>3</sup>?

Which season is the pleasantest?

know, *ken'ne*.

knows, *kennt*.

you know, *ihr ken'net*.

they—know, *ken'nen*.

gives, *gibt*.

give, *ge'ben*.

tell, *sa'ge*.

told, *sa'gte*.

take pity, *erbar'met euch*.

ashamed, *schämt*.

remember, *erin'nern*.

there are, *es sind*.

shalt, *sollst*.

neighbour, *Nach'bar, m. 3. a. c.*

as, *wie*.

ascribe, *schrei'be—zu*.

was, *war*.

not, *nicht*.

master, *Herr, m. 2. b.*

when, *wenn*.

day, *der Tag, m. 3. b. b.*

dark, *dunk'el*.

are, *sind*.

then, *dann*.

depart, *wei'chen*.

false, *falsch*.

friend, *Freund, m. 3. b. b.*

from, *von*.

thee, (*Dat.*)

but, *a'ber*.

true, *wahr*.

forsake, *verlas'sen*.

gave, *ga'ben*.

but, *son'dern*.

owe, *verdan'ken*.

desert, *Verdien'st, m. 3. b. b.*

lot, *loos, n. 3. b. b.*

mean, *mei'ne*.

is, *ist*.

speak, *re'de*.

must, *mu'sst*.

this, (*Acc. Neut.*) *dies*.

do, *thun*.

but, *a'ber*.

that, *das*.

not leave, *nicht las'sen*.

own, *ei'gen*.

estate, *\*Gut, n. 3. b. e*

does, *macht es*.

as, *wie*.

people, *\*Volk, n. 3. b. e*.

torrid, *heiss*.

zone, *So'ne, f. 1. c.*

arrow, *Pfeil, m. 3. b. b.*

at, *ge'gen*.

sun, *Son'ne, f. 1. c.*

to shoot, *ab'schießen*.

estimable, *schätz'bar*.

among, *un'ter*.

virtuous, *tu'gendhaft*.

can, *kann*.

himself, (*Dat.*)

constant, *bestän'dig*.

happiness, Glück, n. 3. b.  
promise, versprechen.

season, Jahrzeit, f. 1. d.  
pleasant, angenehm.

Many persons suffer themselves to<sup>6</sup> be<sup>6</sup> deceived<sup>6</sup> by<sup>1</sup> nobody<sup>2</sup> except<sup>3</sup> themselves<sup>4</sup>.

Apply thyself to virtue; this will never forsake thee.

Whoever is<sup>6</sup> not<sup>4</sup> diligent<sup>5</sup> in<sup>1</sup> his<sup>2</sup> youth<sup>3</sup>, will<sup>1</sup> not<sup>6</sup> know<sup>9</sup> (trow) to<sup>7</sup> employ<sup>8</sup> himself<sup>5</sup> in<sup>3</sup> his<sup>3</sup> manhood<sup>4</sup>.

Who did (*has<sup>1</sup> done<sup>3</sup>*) that<sup>2</sup>? his brother or your sister.

His sister and mine.

Which house (*do*) you<sup>2</sup> mean<sup>1</sup>?

What book is this?

Who will get<sup>3</sup> the<sup>1</sup> prize<sup>2</sup>? my cousin or his.

Judges must be<sup>8</sup> just<sup>7</sup> towards<sup>1</sup> every one<sup>2</sup>, even<sup>3</sup> towards<sup>4</sup> their<sup>5</sup> enemies<sup>6</sup>.

Put these coins again in their places.

I know no one who is<sup>3</sup> so<sup>1</sup> happy<sup>2</sup> as he.

(We must give) to every one his own.

person, Mensch.

suffer, lassen.

by, von.

except, außer.

to be deceived, betrügen.

apply, befehlen.

to, (Gen.)

virtue, Tugend, f. 1. d.

will, wird.

never, nie.

forsake, verlassen.

in, in.

his, (Dat.)

youth, Jugend, f. 1.

not, nicht.

diligent, fleißig.

will, wird.

manhood, Man'nesalter, m. 3. a.

to employ, zu beschäftigen.

know, wissen.

has, hat.

that, das.

done, gethan'.

house, \*Haus, n. 3. b. e.

mean, meinen.

what, was für ein.

book, Buch.

will, wird.

prize, Preis, m. 3. b. b.

get, davon'tragen.

cousin, Vet'ter, m. 3. a. c.

judge, Rich'ter, m. 3. a. g.

must, müssen.

towards, gegen.

every one, je'derman.

even, selbst, (Acc.)

enemy, Feind, m. 3. b. b.

just be, gerecht sein.

put, setzet.

coin, Mün'ze, f. 1. c.

again, wie'der.

in, auf.

their, (Acc.)

place, \*Platz, n. 3. b. b.

know, kennen.

happy, glück'lich.

is, ist.

as, als.

to every one, je'dem.

his own, das sei'nige.

## CHAPTER VI.

## VERBS.

*General Remarks.*

VERBS express the connection between subjects (nouns), and qualities (adjectives or adverbs). The various modes in which qualities are connected with subjects, are expressed by different kinds of verbs and the different parts of each verb.

Verbs are divided into *neuter*, *active*, *reflective*, and *passive*. Some verbs are defective, as the impersonal verbs. A complete verb comprehends, besides the *participles*, four moods, the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, and the *imperative*, and these principal parts of the verb contain different tenses; each tense contains two numbers, and three persons in each number. Some of these different forms of the verb are *original*, and others *supplementary*.

The original forms are the infinitive present of the active or neuter verb, and all those parts which are formed from the infinitive mood, by altering, increasing, or diminishing it. Thus from the infinitive *lieben*, to love, is formed the imperfect, *ich lieb'te*, I loved.

The supplementary forms are made by joining the past participle, or the infinitive mood, to an auxiliary verb; as, *ich ha'be geliebt*, I have loved; *ich wer'de lieben*, I shall love.

In their original forms, all German verbs are active or neuter; except the past participle which, when it stands by itself, has (as in English) a *passive* meaning; as, *geliebt*, loved. This passive meaning is preserved when the past participle is joined to the auxiliary *wer'den*, to become, which in this instance is Englished to *be*, and forms the passive voice; as, *ich wer'de geliebt*, I am loved. But the past participle takes an active signification when it is joined to the auxiliary *ha'ben*, to have; as, *ich ha'be geliebt*, I have loved.

The indicative and the subjunctive contain two original tenses, the present and the imperfect.

All the original forms, which are made from the infinitive, are either *regular* or *irregular*.\*

There is no difference between active and neuter verbs with respect to the original tenses.

---

\* This division affects the supplementary forms in as much as most of them are made by joining an auxiliary verb to the past participle, which is either regular or irregular.



## § 1. REGULAR VERBS.

A verb is regular if in its conjugation the original letters of the radical part of the infinitive\* mood remain unchanged, and if the additional syllables are conformable to the following table.

Indicative.				Subjunctive.		
<i>Present.</i>						
1st Per.		2d Per.	3d Per.	1st Per.	2d Per.	3d Per.
<i>Sing.</i>	e	st or est	t or et	e	est	e
<i>Plur.</i>	en	t or et	en	en	et	en
<i>Imperfect.</i>						
<i>Sing.</i>	te or ete	test or etest	ts or ete	ete	etest	ete
<i>Plur.</i>	ten or eten	tet or etet	ten or eten	eten	etet	eten
Imperative.				Participle.		
<i>Sing.</i>	—	e	e	<i>Present, end.</i>		
<i>Plur.</i>	en	et or t	en	<i>Past, ge—et or t.</i>		
<i>Infinitive.</i>						
<i>Present, en.</i>						

\* It is in general easy to distinguish the radical part of a verb from additions to its beginning or end; as the former occurs also without the latter, either as a word by itself, or as a part of other words. Thus in the verb, *gebrauchen*, to use, the syllable *brauch* is the root; for it occurs also by itself, *Brauch*, usage; and in other combinations, as in *verbrauchen*, to use up or consume, and *gebrauchlich*, usual.

*Observations.* In regard to the past participle, it should be observed, that the syllable *ge* is not prefixed, when the radical part of the verb is preceded by *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ver*, *zer*, or *ge*, which are frequently combined with it to express particular modifications of the original meaning of the verb. Thus, the past participle of the regular verb, *geloben*, to vow (derived from *loben*, to praise), is not *gegelobt*, but *gelobt*. But when the abovementioned syllables belong to the radical part of the verb, the syllable *ge* is prefixed; as in *beten*, to pray, *past. part. gebetet*, prayed for; and in the irregular verb, *geben*, to give, *past. part. gegeben*, given.

The infinitive always terminates in *en* added to the radical part; as, *lieben*, to love; *glauben*, to believe, &c.; except when the last radical letter is *l*, or *r*, then the *t* is commonly omitted: as, *lächeln*, to smile; *hindern*, to hinder (instead of *lächelen*, *hinderen*.)

In German, as in English, there is but one conjugation of regular verbs.

### Conjugation of the Regular Verb, *lieben*, to love.

Infinitive.		Participle.	
<i>lieben</i> , to love.		<i>Present.</i> <i>liebend</i> , loving.	
		<i>Past.</i> <i>geliebt</i> , loved.	
Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
		<i>Present.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	
<i>ich liebe</i> , I love, do love, or am loving.		<i>ich liebe</i> , I may love.	
<i>du liebst</i> or <i>liebest</i> , thou lovest, dost love, or art loving.		<i>du liebest</i> , thou mayst love.	
<i>er, sie, or es liebt</i> or <i>liebet</i> , he, she, or it loves, does love, or is loving.		<i>er liebe</i> , he may love.	

---

In some verbs the radical part consists of more than one syllable, and though this may by etymology be reduced to the monosyllable *heil*, healed, the remoter root is not regarded in forming the tenses.

*Plural.*

wir lieben, we love, do love,  
or are loving.

ihr liebt or liebet, you love.  
sie lieben, they love.

*Plural.*

wir lieben, we may love.

ihr liebet, you may love.  
sie lieben, they may love.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich liebte or liebete, I loved  
or did love.

du liebtest or liebetest, thou  
lovedst.

er liebte or liebete, he loved.

*Singular.*

ich liebete, I might love.

du liebetest, thou mightst love.

er liebete, he might love.

*Plural.*

wir liebten or liebeten, we  
loved.

ihr liebtet or liebetet, you  
loved.

sie liebten or liebeten, they  
loved.

*Plural.*

wir liebten, we might love.

ihr liebetet, you might love.

sie liebten, they might love.

*Imperative.**Singular.*

liebe (du), love (thou).

liebe er, let him love.

*Plural.*

lieben wir, let us love.

liebet or liebt (ihr), love (you), or do (you) love.

lieben sie, let them love.

So decline, loben, to praise ; glauben, to believe.

*Exercises on the Regular Verbs.*

## Indicative Mood.

*Present.*

I esteem.	ach'ten, to esteem.
Thou dost not labor.	ar'beiten, to labor.
He banishes.	ban'nen, to banish.
We do not move.	bew'e'gen, to move.
Do you build?	ba'u'en, to build.
Do they not fear?	befürch'ten, to fear.

*Imperfect.*

I desired.	begeh'ren, to desire.
Thou didst not beg.	bet'e'n, to beg.
Did it gleam?	strah'len, to gleam.
We bled.	blu'ten, to bleed.
Did you form?	bil'den, to form.
They did not borrow.	bor'gen, to borrow.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.*

I may not weaken.	schwä'chen, to weaken.
Thou mayst not inherit.	er'ben, to inherit.
He may conquer.	ero'bern, to conquer.

*Imperfect.*

She might explain.	erklä'ren, to explain.
We might not hear.	hö'ren, to hear.
You might hunt.	ja'gen, to hunt.
They might hew.	hau'en, to hew.

## Imperative.

Do not rob.	rau'ben, to rob.
Reckon.	rech'nen, to reckon.
Let them depict.	schil'dern, to depict

## § 2. IRREGULAR VERBS.

A verb is irregular, if, in its conjugation, the letters of its radical part are changed; as, *wis'sen*, to know, *imp. ich wuß'te*, I knew, *past part. gewuß't*, known; or if the additional syllables are not in conformity to the preceding table of regular verbs; as, *mah'len*, to grind, *past part. gemah'len*, ground. But most of the irregular verbs combine these two characteristics; as, *bin'den*, to bind; *ich band*, I bound; *gebun'den*, bound.

Commonly, though not always, the irregularity exists in the imperfect, and in the past participle. In the imperfect, most of the irregular verbs do not receive the termination *te*; as, *schei'den*, to separate, *imp. ich schied*, I separated. In the past participle, most of the irregular verbs take *en*, instead of *et*; as, *sing'en*, to sing, *past part. gesung'en* (instead of *gesinget*).

The following list of irregular verbs exhibits in alphabetical order all the anomalous forms of each. Those parts of the verb which are not given, are regular, except when the sign, &c. is put after the first or second person of a tense, to indicate that the other persons of that tense are formed in the same irregular way.

If for the same tense or person, two or more forms are set down, the first of them is to be considered as the most usual; and when the regular form is also in use, it is inserted in a parenthesis.

This table is complete in regard to simple verbs; but of the compound verbs it contains only such as either occur very frequently, or are not easy to be traced to their origin, or differ in some respect from the simple verbs from which they are derived. The section on *Compound Verbs*, containing a list of the particles with which simple verbs are most frequently compounded, will enable the learner to trace any compound verb to the simple one from which it is derived, and by this means to find out any irregularity of the former by referring to the latter in the following list.

(The section on *Auxiliary Verbs* contains three irregular verbs, with all their regular and irregular inflections.)

## A LIST OF ALL THE IRREGULAR VERBS IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER.

Infinitive.	Present. Indicative.	Imperfect.		Imperative.	Past Participle.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
B. Bac'ken, to bake	du bäckst, er bäckt, (or du backst, er backt,) thou bakest, he bakes	ich back, &c. (or backte, &c.) I baked	ich bücke, &c. I might bake		gebac'ken, baked
Beding'en, to stipulate.	. . . . .	ich beding, (or be- &c. (or be- dingte, &c.) or bedung, &c.	ich bedünge, &c. or be- dinge, &c. (or bedün- ge, &c.)	. . . . .	bedung'en
Befehl'en, to command	du befehl'st, er befehle	ich befehl, (or be- &c. or be- fehl', &c.)	ich befehle, &c.	befehl'	befohl'en
Beflei'sen, (sich, reflect- ive) to study, or ap- ply one's self.	. . . . .	ich befehle, (or be- &c. or be- fehl', &c.)	ich befehle, &c.	. . . . .	besess'en
Beginn'en, to begin	. . . . .	ich beginn, (or be- &c. or be- ginn', &c.)	ich beginne, &c. or be- ginn', &c.	. . . . .	begon'n'en
Beiß'en, to bite	. . . . .	ich beiß, (or be- &c. or be- biß', &c.)	ich beiße, &c.	. . . . .	gebiss'en

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Ber'gen, to conceal	du birgst, er birgt		ich barg, &c.	ich bär'ge, &c. or ir'ge, &c.	birg, (or ber'ge)	gebor'gen
Ber'sten, to burst	(du ber'stest, er ber'stet, or) du bir'stest, er bir'st		ich borst, &c. or barst, &c.	ich bör'ste, &c. &c. or bär'ste, &c.	birst, (or ber'ste)	(or) gebor'sten
Besin'nen, (sich, reflexive) to recollect			ich besann, &c.	ich besän'ne, &c.		beson'nen
Besit'zen, to possess			&c. or besaß, &c.	&c. or be-saß, &c.		besessen
Betrü'gen or betrü'gen, to deceive			ich betrog, &c.	ich betrö'ge, &c.		betro'gen
Bewe'gen, to induce			ich bewog, &c.	ich bewö'ge, &c.		bewo'gen
Bie'gen, to bend			ich bog, &c.	ich bö'ge, &c.		gebo'gen.
Bie'ten, to bid, to offer	er bie'tet or beut		ich bot, &c.	ich bö'te, &c.		gebo'ten
Bin'den, to bind			ich band, &c.	ich bän'de, &c.		gebun'den

Bir'ten, to beg, to ask	du blä'sest, er blä'set or blä'st	ich bat, &c. ich bät'te, &c.	gebé'ten
Bla'sen, to blow		ich blies, &c. ich blie'se, &c.	gebla'sen
Blei'ben, to remain		ich blieb, &c. ich blie'be, &c.	geblei'ben
Blei'chen, to grow pale		ich blisch, &c. ich blis'che, &c.	gebli'chen
Bra'ten, to roast	(du bra'test, er bra'tet, or) brät'st, er brät	ich briet, &c. ich brie'te, &c. (or bra'tete, (or bra'tete, &c.)	gebra'ten
Bre'chen, to break	du brich'st, er bricht	ich brach, ich brä'che, brich &c.	gebro'chen
Bren'nen, to burn, &c.		ich brannt'e &c. (or brenn'te, &c.)	gebrannt'
Bring'en, to bring, &c.		ich bräch'te, ich bräch'te, &c.	gebräch't
Den'ken, to think		ich dach'te, ich dach'te, &c.	gedach't
Ding'en, to bargain, to hire		ich dung, &c. ich däng'e, or dang, &c. (or däng'e, &c. ding'te, &c.) (or ding'ete, &c.)	gedung'en



Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Dre'schen, to thresh	du dre'schest (or dre'schest), drischt	er dre'schet (or dre'schest), drischt	ich drisch or drosch, &c. (or drisch'te, &c.)	ich drä'sche or drö'sche, &c. (or dre- schete)	drisch	gedro'schen
Dring'en, to press, to urge	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich drang, &c.	ich dränge, &c.	. . . . .	gedrung'en
Dür'sen, to be permit- ted.	ich darf, du darfst, er darf	. . . . .	ich dürste, &c.	ich dürste, &c.	—	gedurft
Empfang'en, to receive	du empfangst, er empfängt	. . . . .	ich empfang', &c.	ich empfang'e, &c.	. . . . .	empfang'en
Empfeh'len, to recom- mend	du empfiehlst, er empfiehlt	. . . . .	ich empfahl', &c. &c. or em- pfohl', &c.	ich empfehl'le &c.	empfehl	empfoh'len
Empfin'den, to feel, to perceive	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich em- pfand', &c.	ich empfan- de, &c.	. . . . .	empfin'den
Entrin'nen, to escape	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich entrann', &c.	ich enträn- &c. or en- tronn', &c.	. . . . .	entron'nen
Erblei'chen, to grow pale	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich erblich', &c.	ich erbliche, &c.	. . . . .	erbl'chen

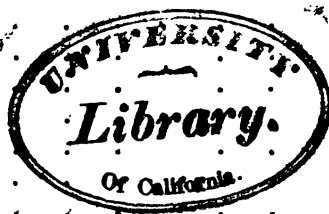
Erkú'ten, to choose	. . . . .	ich erkör', &c.	ich erkó're, &c.	erko'ten
Erló'schen, to become extinct	du erlö'schest, er erlö'scht',	ich erlosch', &c.	ich erlö'sche, &c.	erlö'schen
Erschal'ten, to resound	. . . . .	ich erscholl', &c.	ich erschól'le, &c.	erschól'ten
	. . . . .	&c. (or erschall'te, &c.)	&c. (or erschál'lete, &c.)	
Erschréc'ken, to be frightened	du erschrickst', er erschrickt'	ich erschack't', &c.	ich erschrác'ke, &c.	erschroc'ken
	. . . . .	&c. (or erschrock', &c.)	erschroc'ke, &c.	
Erwá'gen, to consider	. . . . .	ich erwog', &c.	erwó'ge, &c.	erwó'gen or erwágt'
	. . . . .	&c., (or erwág'te, &c.)	(or erwá'gete &c.)	
Es'sen, to eat	du is'sest, er is'set or isst	ich aß, &c.	ich áß'te, &c.	gegess'en
Fá'hren, to ride, to go	du fährst, er fährt	ich fuhr, &c.	ich fúh're, &c.	gefab'ren
Fál'len, to fall	du fällst, er fällt	ich fiel, &c.	ich fie'le, &c.	gefal'len
Fáng'en, to catch	du fängst, er fängt	ich fing, &c.	ich fing'e, &c.	gefang'en
Ge'ch'ten, to fight	du fichtst, er ficht	ich focht, &c.	ich fúcht'te, &c.	gesoch'ten
	. . . . .	&c.	fúcht'te (or focht'te)	

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Gin'den, to find Gleth'ten, to twist	. . . . . du stichst, er sticht	. . . . . . . . . .	ich fand, &c. ich stocht, &c.	ich fän'de, &c. ich stöch'te, &c.	. . . . . sticht	gesin'den gestoch'ten
Glie'gen, to fly Glie'hen, to flee, to run away	. . . . . (du flieh'st, er flie'h'et, or) fluch'st, er flucht er (flie'set or) flucht	. . . . . . . . . . du (du er	ich flog, &c. ich flog, &c. ich floss, &c.	ich flö'ge, &c. ich flöh'e, &c. ich flö'se, &c.	. . . . . (flie'he, or) flucht	geslo'gen geslo'hen geslossen
Gra'gen, to ask.	du fragst, er fragt, (or du fragst, er fragt)	. . . . . . . . . .	ich frug, &c. (or frag'te, &c.)	ich fräg'e (or frä'gete, &c.)	. . . . . friss	gestresen
Gres'sen, to eat, devour	du frisst, er frisst, or frisst	. . . . . . . . . .	ich fraß, &c.	ich frä'sse, &c.	. . . . . friss	gestresen
Grie'ren, to freeze	. . . . . . . . . .	. . . . . . . . . .	ich froz, &c.	ich frö're, &c.	. . . . . friss	gestro'ren
G. Gebä'ren, to ferment	. . . . . . . . . .	. . . . . . . . . .	ich (gäh'r'te, &c. or) goh'r, &c.	ich (gäh'r'te, &c. or) göh'r'e, &c.	. . . . . friss	gegoh'ren
Gebä'ren, to bring forth	(du gebä'r'st, er gebä'r't, or) gebier'st, er gebiert'	. . . . . . . . . . du (du er	ich gebär't, &c. ich gebär't, &c.	ich gebä're, &c. ich gebä're, &c.	. . . . . (gebä're or) gebier'	gebö'ren

Ge'ben, to give	du giebst, &c. giebt	ich gab, &c. ich gä'be, &c.	ich gieb (gebie'te or) gebent'	gege'ben
Gebie'ten, to command	. . . . .	ich gebot, &c. ich gebö'te, &c.	. . . . .	gebo'ten
Gedei'hen, to prosper	. . . . .	ich gedieh, &c. ich gedie'he, &c.	. . . . .	gedie'hen
Gesal'sen, to please	du gefällst, er gefällt	ich gefiel, &c. ich gefie'le, &c.	. . . . .	gesal'sen
Ge'hen, to go, to walk	. . . . .	ich ging, &c. ich ging'e, &c.	. . . . .	gegan'gen
Geling'en, <i>impers.</i> , to succeed	. . . . .	es gelang, &c. es gelang'e, &c.	. . . . .	gelingen
Gel'sten, to be worth, to cost	du giltest, er gilt	ich galt, &c. ich gäl'te or golt, &c. göl'te, &c.	gilt (or gel'te)	gegol'ten
Gene'sen, to recover (from illness)	. . . . .	ich genas, &c. ich genä'se, &c.	. . . . .	gene'sen
Genie'sen, to enjoy	er (genieß' or) genießt	ich genoss, &c. ich genö'sse, &c.	. . . . .	genos'sen
Gera'then, to get into, to hit upon	du geräthst, er geräth	ich gerieth, &c. ich gerie'the, &c.	. . . . .	gera'then
Gesche'hen, <i>impers.</i> , to happen	es geschähe, &c. geschä'he, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	gesche'hen
Gewin'nen, to gain, to win	. . . . .	ich gewann, &c. ich gewön'ne, &c. or ge-wonn', &c. wän'ne, &c.	. . . . .	gewon'nen

Infinitive.	Present. Indicative.	Imperfect.		Past Participle.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.	
Die'sen, to pour, to spill	er gießt (or) giest	ich gies, &c. ich giesse, &c.	(gieße or giesse)	gegossen
Glei'chen, to resemble	. . . . .	ich gleich, &c. ich gleiche, &c.	. . . . .	geglichen
Glei'ten, to glide	. . . . .	ich glitt, &c. ich glitte, &c.	. . . . .	geglitten
Glim'men, to shine, to glimmer	. . . . .	ich glömm, ich glömmte, &c. (or glimm'te, &c.)	. . . . .	geglommen
Gra'ben, to dig	du grabst, er gräbt	ich grab, &c. ich gräbe, &c.	. . . . .	gegraben
Grei'sen, to seize, to grasp	. . . . .	ich griff, &c. ich griffe, &c.	. . . . .	gegriffen
Ha'ben, to have	du hast, er hat	ich ha'te, ich hätte, &c.	. . . . .	gehaben
Hal'ten, to hold	er hältst, er hält	ich hielt, &c. ich hielte, &c.	. . . . .	gehalten
Hang'en, to hang	du hängst, er hängt	ich hing, &c. ich hänge, &c.	. . . . .	gehangen
Har'en, to hew	. . . . .	ich hieb, &c. ich hieße, &c.	. . . . .	gehar'en

Heben, to heave	du hilfst, er hilft	ich hob, &c.	ich hob'be, &c. or hü'be, &c.	gehoben
Heißen, to bid		ich hies, &c.	ich hie'se, &c.	geheißen
Helfen, to help		ich half, &c.	ich hälfe, &c. or hülf, &c.	geholfen
Heißen, to chide		ich tiff, &c.	ich tiffse, &c.	getiffen
Ken'nen, to know		ich kannte, &c.		gekant'et
Klein'ben, to cleave		ich klob, &c.	ich klob'be, &c.	gekloben
Klim'men, to climb		ich klonn, &c.	ich klöm'me, &c. (or klüm'mete, &c.)	geklim'men
Klingen, to sound		ich klang, &c.	ich klänge, &c.	gekling'en
Kneif'en, to pinch		ich kniff, &c.	ich kni'se, (or knie'ste, &c.)	getniffen
Kom'men, to come		ich kam, &c.	ich kä'me, &c.	geköm'men
Kön'nen, to be able	ich kann, du kannst, er kann, &c.	ich konnt'e, &c.	ich könn'te, &c.	gekonn't



Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Kriech'en, to creep	. . . . .		ich kroch, &c.	ich krodhe, &c.	. . . . .	getro'chen
<i>z.</i>						
La'den, to load	du lädst, er lädt (or du lädest, er lädet)		ich lud, &c.	ich lüde, &c.	. . . . .	gela'den
La's'en, to let	du lässest, er lässest or lässe		ich lies, &c.	ich ließe, &c.	. . . . .	gela's'en
Lauf'en, to run	du läufst, er läufte, (or du läufst, er laufft)		ich lief, &c.	ich ließe, &c.	. . . . .	gelauf'en
Lei'den, to suffer	. . . . .		ich litt, &c.	ich litte, &c.	. . . . .	gelie'ten
Lei'h'en, to lend	du siehst, er siehst		ich sieh, &c.	ich siehe, &c.	. . . . .	gelie'h'en
Le's'en, to read	. . . . .		ich las, &c.	ich läse, &c.	. . . . .	gele's'en
Lie'gen, to lie down	. . . . .		ich lag, &c.	ich läge, &c.	. . . . .	gele'gen
Lü'gen, to lie, to utter a falsehood	. . . . .		ich log, &c.	ich löge, &c.	. . . . .	gelo'gen
<i>M.</i>						
Ma'h'en, to grind	. . . . .		ich mied, &c.	ich miede, &c.	. . . . .	gemah'en
Mei'den, to avoid	. . . . .				. . . . .	gemie'den
Me's'en, to milk	du milchst, er milcht, (or du meldest, er melst)		ich molk, &c.	ich mölke, &c.	. . . . .	gemol's'en
			(or melste, &c.)	(or milke, &c.)		
Me's'en, to measure	du missest, er missest or misst		ich maß, &c.	ich mäße, &c.	. . . . .	gemess'en

Misfal'sen, to displease	du misfällst, er misfällt	ich misfiel, &c.	ich misfielte, &c.	misfal'sen
Mö'gen, to be willing	ich mag, du magst, er mag	ich mochte, &c.	ich möchte, &c.	gemocht'
Mü'sen, to be able, to like	to be able, to like	ich mußte, &c.	ich müßte, &c.	gemußt'
N.				
Neh'men, to take	du nimmst, er nimmt	ich nahm, &c.	ich nahm, nimm	genom'men
Nen'nen, to name		ich nannte, &c.		genannt'
P.				
Pfei'sen, to whistle		ich pfiß, &c.	ich pfißte, &c.	gepfißen
Pfe'gen, to cherish		ich pflegte, &c.	ich pflegte, &c.	gepflo'gen
		&c. or) &c. or) pfloß-		
		pflog, &c.	ge, &c.	
Prei'sen, to extol, to	to	ich pries, &c.	ich pries, &c.	gepriesen
praise				
Q.				
Quel'sen, to spring forth,	du quillst, er quillt	ich quoll, &c.	ich quollte, &c.	or gequoll'sen
to gush, (of fluids)			quill	
R.				
Räch'en, to avenge				gero'chen (or getäch't)



<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
<i>Ra'then</i> , to advise	du räthst, er räth		ich riet'h, &c.	ich rie'the, &c.	. . .	gerä'then
<i>Rei'ben</i> , to rub	. . .		ich rieb, &c.	ich rie'be, &c.	. . .	gerie'ben
<i>Rei'sen</i> , to tear	. . .		ich riß, &c.	ich riß'e, &c.	. . .	geri'sen
<i>Rei'ten</i> , to ride	. . .		ich ritt, &c.	ich rit'te, &c.	. . .	gerit'ten
<i>Ren'nen</i> , to run	. . .		ich rann'te, &c.	. . .	. . .	gerann't
<i>Rie'chen</i> , to smell	. . .		(or rem'te, &c.)			
<i>Ring'en</i> , to wrestle	. . .		ich roch, &c.	ich rö'che, &c.	. . .	gerö'chen
<i>Rin'nen</i> , to run, to drop, ( <i>of Fluids</i> )	. . .		ich rang, &c.	ich rāng'e, &c.	. . .	gerung'en
<i>Ru'fen</i> , to call	. . .		ich rann, &c.	ich rān'ne, &c.	. . .	geron'nen
	. . .			(or rān'ne, &c.)		
	. . .		ich rief, &c.	ich rie'fe, &c.	. . .	geru'fen
	. . .		(or ruf'te, &c.)			
<i>Sau'sen</i> , to drink hard, to tipple	du säufst, er säuft		ich söß, &c.	ich söß'fe, &c.	. . .	gesö'sen
<i>Sau'gen</i> , to suck	. . .		ich sog, &c.	ich sö'ge, &c.	. . .	gesö'gen
	. . .		(or saug'te, &c.)			

S.

<b>Œchaffen, to create</b>	.	.	.	.	.	ich ſchuf, &c.	ich ſchü'fe, &c.	geſchaffen
<b>Œchäl'en, to sound</b>	.	.	.	.	.	ich ſcholl, &c. (or ſchall'te, &c.)	ich ſchöll, &c. (or ſchäll'te, &c.)	
<b>Œchei'den, to separate,</b> to part	.	.	.	.	.	ich ſchied, &c.	ich ſchie'de, &c.	geſchie'den
<b>Œchei'nen, to appear, to</b> shine	.	.	.	.	.	ich ſchien, &c.	ich ſchie'ne, &c.	geſchie'nen
<b>Œchei'ren, to scold, to</b> chide	du ſchiltſt, er ſchilt	.	.	.	.	ich ſchalt, &c.	ich ſchäl'te, ſchilt (or geſchol'ten ſchel'te)	
<b>Œche'ren, to shear</b>	.	.	.	.	.	ich ſchor, &c.	ich ſchöre, &c.	geſcho'ren
<b>Œchie'ben, to push, to</b> shove	.	.	.	.	.	ich ſchob, &c. (or ſchieb'te, &c.)	ich ſchöbe, &c. (or ſchieb'te, &c.)	geſcho'ben
<b>Œchie'ſen, to shoot</b>	.	.	.	.	.	ich ſchoß, &c.	ich ſchöſ'se, &c.	geſchoſ'sen
<b>Œchin'den, to flay</b>	.	.	.	.	.	ich ſchund, &c. (or ſchin'dete, &c.)	ich ſchün'de, &c. (or ſchin'dete, &c.)	geſchün'den
<b>Œſchl'a'ſen, to sleep</b>	du ſchläſſt, er ſchläft	.	.	.	.	ich ſchlieſ, &c.	ich ſchlie'fe, &c.	geſchl'a'ſen
<b>Œſchl'a'gen, to beat, to</b> strike	to den ſchlägt, er ſchlägt	.	.	.	.	ich ſchlug, &c.	ich ſchlä'ge, &c.	geſchl'a'gen

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Schleichen, to sneak	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schlich, &c.	ich schlicke, &c.	. . . . .	geschlichen
Schleifen, to grind, to sharpen	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schliff, &c.	ich schliffe, &c.	. . . . .	geschliffen
Schleissen, to split, to slit	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schlüss, &c.	ich schlüsse, &c.	. . . . .	geschliffen
Schließen, to shut, to lock up	er (schließet or) schließt		ich schloß, &c.	ich schliesse, (schliesse, or) schlesse		geschlossen
Schling'en, to sling	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schlang, &c.	ich schlänge, &c.	. . . . .	geschlungen
Schmeißen, to throw	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schmiss, &c.	ich schmeisse, &c.	. . . . .	geschmissen
Schmelzen, to melt	du schmilzest, er schmilzt		ich schmolz, &c.	ich schmelze, (schmelze, or) schmilz		geschmolzen
Schnaub'en, to pant	. . . . .	. . . . .	schnob, &c. (or schnaubte, &c.)			
Schneiden, to cut	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schnitt, &c.	ich schneite, &c.	. . . . .	geschnitten
Schrauben, to screw	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich (schraubte, &c. or) schraub, &c.	ich (schraube, &c. or) bete, &c.	. . . . .	geschraubt

Schrei'ben, to write	.	.	.	.	.	ich schrieb, ich schrie'be, &c.	geschrie'ben
Schrei'en, to cry	.	.	.	.	.	ich schrie, &c. ich schrie, &c.	geschrie'n
Schrei'ten, to stride	.	.	.	.	.	ich schritt, ich schrit'te, &c.	geschrit'ten
Schwä'ren, to fester, to suppurate	.	.	.	.	.	ich schwor, ich schwö're, &c.	geschwo'ren
Schwie'gen, to be silent	.	.	.	.	.	ich schwieg, ich schwie'ge, &c.	geschwie'gen
* Schwel'len, to swell	du	schwillest, er	schwille	.	.	ich schwoll, ich schwöl'le, &c.	geschwol'len
Schwim'men, to swim	.	.	.	.	.	ich schwamm, ich schwäm'- &c. or me, &c. or schwamm, schwöm'me, &c.	geschwom'- men
Schwim'den, to vanish	.	.	.	.	.	ich schwand, ich schwän'- &c. de, &c.	geschwun'- den
Schwing'en, to swing	.	.	.	.	.	ich schwang, ich schwäng'e, &c.	geschwung'- en
Schwö'ren, to swear	.	.	.	.	.	ich schwor, ich schwö're, &c. or schwur, &c. schwü're, &c.	geschwo'ren
Se'hen, to see	du	siehst, er	sieht	.	.	ich sah, &c. ich sä'he, &c.	gese'hen
Sen'den, to send	.	.	.	.	.	ich sandte, &c.	gesand't

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.	
Sein, to be	ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind		ich war, &c. ich wä're, &c.	ich wä're, &c.	gewesen
Seiden, to boil			ich (sie'dete, &c. or) sotte, &c.	ich (sie'dete, &c. or) sö'te, &c.	ge'sotten
Singen, to sing			ich sang, &c.	ich sänge, &c.	gesungen
Sinken, to sink			ich sank, &c.	ich sä'nke, &c.	gesunken
Sinnen, to think, to meditate			ich sann, &c.	ich sä'nne, &c.	gesonnen
Sitzen, to sit			ich saß, &c.	ich sä'sse, &c.	gesessen
Sollen, to be obliged	ich soll, du sollst, er soll				
Speisen, to spit			ich spie, &c.	ich spie'e, &c.	gespie'en
Spinnen, to spin			ich spann, &c.	ich spä'nne, &c.	gesponnen
Spalten, to split, to cleave			ich spalt, &c.	ich spä'lte, &c.	gespalten
Sprechen, to speak	du sprichst, er spricht		ich sprach, &c.	ich sprä'che, &c.	gesprochen

Erprie'sen, to sprout	. . . . .	ich sprosse, ich sprosse, &c.	. . . . .	gesprossen
Erspring'en, to spring, to leap	. . . . .	ich sprang, ich spränge, &c.	. . . . .	gesprungen
Erste'hen, to sting, to du prick	stichst, er sticht	ich stach, &c. ich stäche, &c.	stich, (or ste=gesto'chen che)	gesto'chen
Estec'ten, to stick	. . . . .	ich (steck'te, ich (steck'te, or) steck or) stäke, &c.	. . . . .	gestan'den
Esteh'en, to stand	. . . . .	ich stand, &c. ich stän'de, or stand, &c., or &c.	. . . . .	gestan'den
Esteh'sen, to steal	du stieh'st, er stieh'st	ich stahl, &c. ich stäh'le, stiehl or stohl, &c., or &c.	stiehl	gestoh'sen
Estei'gen, to ascend	. . . . .	ich stieg, &c. ich stie'ge, &c.	. . . . .	gestie'gen
Esterb'en, to die	du stirbst, er stirbt	ich starb, &c. ich stür'be, stirb &c.	. . . . .	gestor'ben
Errie'b'en, to dust, to scatter	. . . . .	ich stob, &c. ich stö'be, &c.	. . . . .	gesto'ben
Erin'ken, to stink	. . . . .	ich stank, &c. ich stän'ke, &c.	. . . . .	gestun'ken
Erro'sen, to push	du stöß'st, er stößt	ich sties, &c. ich stie'se, &c.	. . . . .	gesto'sen
Errei'chen, to stroke, to slide along	. . . . .	ich strich, ich strich'e, &c.	. . . . .	gestri'chen

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Streiten, to strive, to contend	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich streit, &c.	ich streite, &c.	. . . . .	gestritten
Thun, to do	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich that, &c.	ich thät, &c.	. . . . .	gethan
Tragen, to carry	du trägst, er trägt		ich trug, &c.	ich trüge, &c.	. . . . .	getragen
Treffen, to hit	du triffst, er trifft		ich traf, &c.	ich träfe, triff		getroffen
Treiben, to drive	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich trieb, &c.	ich triebe, &c.	. . . . .	getrieben
Treten, to tread	du trittst, er tritt		ich trat, &c.	ich träte, tritt		getreten
Trügen or trügen, to deceive	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich trog, &c.	ich tröge, &c.	. . . . .	getrogen
Trinken, to drink	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich trank, &c.	ich tränke, &c.	. . . . .	getrunken
B. Verbergen, to conceal	du verbirgst, er verbirgt		ich verbarg, &c. or verborg, &c.	ich verbärge, &c. or verhörge, &c.	verbirg	verbor-gen

Verbie'ten, to forbid	. . . . .	ich verbot', ich verbot'te, &c.	verbo'ten
Verblei'chen, to fade	. . . . .	ich verblieh', ich verbliehe, &c.	verbli'chen
Verder'b'en, to perish	du verderbst', er verdirbt'	ich verderb', ich verderbe, &c. or verdirb', &c.	verder'b'en
Verdrie'sen, <i>impers.</i> to es (verdriss' or) verdreuss', offend	. . . . .	es verdross', es verdross'te, &c.	verdro'ssen
Berges'sen, to forget	du vergis'sest, er vergisst'	ich vergass', ich vergass'te, &c.	berges'sen
Berglei'chen, to compare	. . . . .	ich verglich', ich verglich'te, &c.	bergli'chen
Verlas'sen, to leave	du verlass'sest, er verlässt	ich verlies', ich verliet', &c.	verlas'sen
Verlie'ren, to lose	. . . . .	ich verlor', ich verlor'te, &c.	verlo'ren
Verlös'schen, to be extinguished	. . . . .	ich verlosch', ich verloschte, &c. (or verloschte, &c.)	verlös'schen
Vermei'den, to avoid	. . . . .	ich vermied', ich vermied'te, &c.	vermie'den
Verschling'en, to devour	. . . . .	ich verschlang', ich verschlang'te, &c.	



Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Berschwin'den, to disappear	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schwand', &c.	ich ver=schwänd', &c.		
Berwir'ten, to perplex, to confound	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich (berwirr'te, &c.) or verworr't', &c.	ich (berwirr'te, &c.) or verworr'te, &c.		berwir'tet or verworr'ten
Berzei'hen, to forgive	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich verzieh', &c.	ich verzie'h'e, &c.		verzie'hen
Wach'sen, to grow	du wach'sest, er wächst		ich wuchs', &c.	ich wüch'se, &c.		gewach'sen
Wa'schen, to wash	(du was'chest, er wäscht, or) du wä'schest, er wäscht		ich wusch', &c.	ich wüsch'e, &c.		gewa'schen
We'ben, to weave	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich web', &c., (or web'te, &c.)	ich wö'be, &c. (or web'e, &c.)		
We'i'chen, to yield	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich wich', &c.	ich wüch'e, &c.		gewi'chen
We'i'ssen, to show	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich wies', &c.	ich wies'e, &c.		gewie'sen

Wer'den, to turn	. . . . .	ich wand'te, ich wänd'te, &c. (or &c. (or wend'te, &c.)	gewor'den
Wer'den, to sue for, to sue	to sue for, to sue	ich warb, &c. ich wär'be, wirb &c., or wä'r'be, &c.	gewor'den
Wer'den, to become	du wirst, er wird	ich wur'de, ich wär'de, &c. &c., or ich ward, du wardst, er ward, wir wur'den, &c.	
Wer'sen, to throw	du wirfst, er wirft	ich warf, ich wär'fe, wirf &c. &c. or wä'r'fe, &c.	gewor'sen
Wie'gen, to weigh, to have weight	. . . . .	ich wog, &c. ich wö'ge, &c.	gewo'gen
Win'den, to wind, to turn	. . . . .	ich wand, ich wänd'te, &c. &c.	gewin'den
Wis'sen, to know	ich weis, du weist, er weiss	ich wuß'te, ich wüß'te, &c. &c.	gewuß't
Wiss'en, to be willing, to wish	ich will, du willst, er will		
Zeih'en, to accuse of	. . . . .	ich zieh, &c. ich zie'he, &c.	gezie'h'en

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Past	
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Participle.
Zie'h'en, to draw, to pull	(du ziehst, er zieht, &c. or) zieuchst, er zieuchst, &c.	du ziehst, er zieht, &c. or) zieuchst, er zieuchst, &c.	ich zog, &c.	ich zö'ge, &c.	(zie'he, or) zieuch,	gezö'gen
Zwing'en, to force, to compel			ich zwang, &c.	ich zwänge, &c.	. . . .	-gezwung'en

Several of the above verbs are irregular only when they are used as neuter, and are regular when they are used as active verbs. Of this description are, *auf'schü'ten*, to become extinguished, *irregular*, and *auf'schü'ten*, to extinguish, *regular*; *blei'chen*, to become pale, *irr.* and *blei'chen*, to make pale, *reg.*; *erschre'cken*, to be frightened, *irr.*, and *erschre'cken*, to frighten, *reg.*; *schmel'zen*, to be melting, *irr.*, and *schmel'zen*, to melt (actively), *reg.*; *schwei'gen*, to be silent, *irr.*, and *schwei'gen*, to silence, *reg.*; *schwel'sen*, to swell (in a neuter sense), *irr.* and *schwel'sen*, to swell (in an active sense), *reg.*; *ste'cken*, to stick or adhere, *irr.*, and *ste'cken*, to stick or put into something, *reg.*; *verder'ben*, to perish, *irr.*, and *verder'ben*, to ruin, *reg.*; *wei'chen*, to give way, *irr.* and *wei'chen*, to soften, *reg.*

Some verbs which have different significations, are regular when they are used in one, and irregular when used in another sense; as, *bew'e'gen*, to move, *reg.*, and *bew'e'gen*, to induce, *irr.*; *wie'gen*, to rock, *reg.*, and *wie'gen*, to weigh, *irr.*

The following verbs, which are similar to each other, are to be distinguished.

Sau'gen, to suck, *irr.*

Schwim'men, to swim, *irr.*

Sink'en, to sink, *irr.*

Spring'en, to spring, *irr.*

Trink'en, to drink, *irr.*

Säu'gen, to suckle, *reg.*

Schwem'men, to wash away, *reg.*

Sen'ken, to sink, to let down, *reg.*

Spreng'en, to sprinkle, *reg.*

Tränk'en, to give to drink, *reg.*

*Promiscuous Exercises on the Irregular Verbs.*

*Indicative.*

*Present.*

I know,  
Do I dare?  
I must not,  
Can I not?  
Thou fallest,  
Dost thou catch?  
Thou dost not hold,  
Dost thou not hang?  
He must,  
Can he?  
He does not let,  
Does he not sleep?  
She advises,  
Does she go?  
She does not dig;  
Does she not strike?  
It grows,  
Does it see?  
It does not eat,  
Does it not happen?  
We give,  
Do we step?  
We do not forget,  
You read,  
Do you measure?  
You do not hew,  
Do you not carry?  
They see,  
Do they remain?  
They do not seize,  
They do not go,



wissen.  
dürfen.  
müssen.  
können.  
sollen.  
singen.  
halten.  
hängen.  
müssen.  
können.  
lassen.  
schlafen.  
rauchen.  
fahren.  
graben.  
schlagen.  
wachsen.  
sehen.  
essen.  
geschehen.  
geben.  
treten.  
vergessen.  
lesen.  
messen.  
hauen.  
tragen.  
sehen.  
bleiben.  
greifen.  
gehen.

*Imperfect.*

I might,  
 Did I eat?  
 I did not dig,  
 Did I not step?  
 Thou remainedst,  
 Didst thou lend?  
 Thou didst not avoid,  
 Didst thou not fight?  
 He moved,  
 Did he heave, or lift?  
 He did not conceal,  
 Did he not take?  
 He commanded,  
 Did she speak?  
 She did not write,  
 Did she not praise  
 It bit,  
 Did it glide?  
 It did not drive,  
 Did it not bark?

mö'gen.  
 es'sen.  
 gra'ben.  
 tre'ten.  
 blei'ben.  
 lei'hen.  
 mei'den.  
 fch'eten.  
 bewe'gen.  
 he'ben.  
 ber'gen.  
 neh'men.  
 befeh'len.  
 spre'chen.  
 schrei'ben.  
 prei'sen.  
 bei'ssen.  
 glei'ten.  
 trei'ben.  
 bel'sen.

*Imperative.*

Read (*thou*),  
 Give,  
 Take,  
 Do not step,  
 Eat, or do you eat,  
 Do not forget,  
 Let him come,  
 Let him not give,  
 Let us go,  
 Speak, or do you speak,  
 Let them enjoy,  
 Do not speak,

le'sen?  
 ge'ben.  
 neh'men.  
 tre'ten.  
 es'sen.  
 verges'sen.  
 kom'men.  
 ge'ben.  
 ge'hen.  
 spre'chen.  
 genie'sen.  
 spre'chen.

*Subjunctive.**Present.*

I may fall,  
 I may not be able,  
 Thou mayst not,

fal'len.  
 kön'nen.  
 mö'gen.

Thou must,  
He may be willing,  
We may beat,  
They may not bear,

müß'sen.  
wol'len.  
schla'gen.  
tra'gen.]

### Imperfect.

I might dig,  
I might not die,  
Thou mightst break,  
Thou mightst not command,  
He might conceal,  
She might not help,  
It might eat,  
It might not sting,  
We might not lose,  
You might not creep,  
They might not confuse,  
They might not spoil,

gra'ben.  
ster'ben.  
bre'chen.  
befeh'len.  
ber'gen.  
hel'fen.  
es'sen.  
ste'chen.  
verlie'ren.  
frie'chen.  
verwir'ren.  
verder'ben.

### Past Participle.

Begun,  
Spoken,  
Not deceived,  
Fled,  
Flowed,  
Not sheared,  
Broken,  
Recommended,  
Stolen,  
Valued,  
Given,  
Helped,  
Requested,  
Called,

begin'nen.  
spre'chen.  
betrie'gen.  
flie'hen.  
flie'sen.  
sche'ren.  
bre'chen.  
empfeh'len.  
steh'len.  
gel'ten.  
ge'ben.  
hel'fen.  
bit'ten.  
hei'sen.

### § 3. REFLECTIVE VERBS.

Active verbs, when they reflect upon the agent, are called *reflective verbs*. They are formed with the pronouns *mich, dich, sich, uns, euch, sich*, answering to the English pronouns *myself; thyself; himself, herself, itself; ourselves; yourselves; themselves*: they are conjugated like active verbs, and are either regular or irregular.

Conjugation of the Reflective Verb *sich lieben*, to love one's self.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

## Present.

## Singular.

## Singular.

*ich liebe mich*, I love myself.

*ich liebe mich*, I may love myself.

*du liebst dich*, thou lovest thyself.

*du liebest dich*, thou mayst love thyself.

*er, sie, or es liebt sich*, he, she, it loves himself, herself, or itself.

*er, sie, or es liebe sich*, he, she, it may love himself, herself, or itself.

## Plural.

## Plural.

*wir lieben uns*, we love ourselves.

*wir lieben uns*, we may love ourselves.

*ihr liebet euch*, you love yourselves.

*ihr liebet euch*, you may love yourselves.

*sie lieben sich*, they love themselves.

*sie lieben sich*, they may love themselves.

## Imperfect.

## Singular.

## Singular.

*ich liebte mich*, I loved myself.

*ich liebete mich*, I might love myself.

*du liebtest dich*, thou, &c.

*du liebetest dich*, thou, &c.

## Plural.

## Plural.

*wir liebten uns*, we loved ourselves.

*wir liebten uns*, we might love ourselves.

*ihr liebtet euch*, you, &c.

*ihr liebtet euch*, you, &c.

## Imperative.

## Singular.

## Plural.

*liebe dich*, love thyself.

*lieben wir uns*, let us love ourselves.

*liebe er sich*, let him love himself.

*liebt, or liebet euch*, love yourselves.

*lieben sie sich*, let them love themselves.

*Exercises on the Reflective Verbs;*

## Indicative.

*Present.*

I am ashamed,	sich schä'men, to be ashamed.
Thou art conceited,	sich ein'bilden, to be conceited.
He blames himself,	sich ta'deln, to blame one's self.
We unite together,	sich verei'nigen, to unite.
You forget yourselves,	sich verges'sen, to forget.
They assume to themselves,	sich an'massen, to assume.

*Imperfect.*

We rejoiced,	sich freu'en, to rejoice.
He betook himself,	sich bege'ben, to betake one's self.
We got leisure,	sich ab'mä'sigen, to get leisure.
You prepared yourselves,	sich an'schick'en, to prepare.
They helped themselves,	sich hel'fen, to help.

## Imperative.

Do not offend,	sich verge'hen, to offend, to fail in one's duty.
Grieve not,	sich grä'men, to grieve.
Do not complain,	sich beklä'gen, to complain.
Do not burn yourself,	sich verbren'nen, to burn.
Be not afraid,	sich fürch'ten, to be afraid.

*Observations on the Reflective Verbs.*

1. There are many reflective verbs in German, which are not so in English; as, sich erbar'men, to pity; sich freu'en, to rejoice; and many others, as in the above exercises. Some are employed only in the reflective form; as,

sich bege'ben, to repair to.	sich bedank'en, to thank.
sich bemäch'tigen, to get possession of.	sich grä'men, to be grieved.
sich freu'en, to rejoice.	sich brüh'men, to boast one's self, &c.
sich är'gern, to be vexed.	

Some are employed in both forms, as,

Ir'ren, to err, or sich ir'ren, to be mistaken.  
 Zank'en, to quarrel, or sich zank'en, to embroil one's self.  
 Scheu'en, to shun, or sich scheu'en, to be shy.



2. Most ~~reduplicative~~ verbs take the pronoun in the accusative; as, *ich erbar'me mich*, I pity; *ich besin'ne mich*, I reflect: but some few admit the pronoun in the dative; as, *ich ma'se mir nicht an*, I do not assume; *ich bil'de mir nicht ein*, I do not fancy.

#### § 4. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *impersonal* if, in those tenses which commonly have three persons, it is used, in its proper and peculiar sense, only in the third person singular. The impersonal verbs are regular or irregular, and are used, with the pronoun *es*, in the third person singular only; as in the following examples.

Conjugation of the Regular Impersonal Verb *reg'nen*, to rain.\*

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.*

*es reg'net*, it rains.

*es reg'ne*, it may rain.

*Imperfect.*

*es reg'nete*, it rained.

*es reg'nete*, it might rain.

*Obs.* There is no imperative nor participle.

The following verbs may be conjugated in a similar manner.

*Don'nern*, to thunder.

*Blit'zen*, to lighten.

*Schnei'en*, to snow.

*Thau'en*, to thaw.

*Reg'eln*, or *schlo'ssen*, to hail.

*Tag'en*, to dawn.

Conjugation of the Irregular Impersonal Verb *fr'ieren*,† to freeze.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.*

*es friert*, it freezes.

*es frie're*, it may freeze.

\* *Reg'nen*, to rain, is conjugated like the regular verb *lie'ben*, to love, in the third person singular.

† This verb is impersonal when applied to the weather; but in speaking of persons affected by the cold, it is conjugated like other neuter verbs; as, *ich frie're*, I am cold, &c.; *ich fror*, I was cold, &c.; *frie're du*, be thou cold, &c.

*Imperfect.*

es froz, it froze.

es frö're, it might freeze.

*Obs.* There is no imperative nor participle.

Some verbs are reflective as well as impersonal, as in the following example.

Conjugation of the Impersonal Reflective Verb *sich ärgern*,  
to be vexed.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.**Singular.*

es ärgert mich, I am vexed,  
or it vexes me, &c.  
es ärgert dich, thou art vex-  
ed, or it vexes thee.  
es ärgert ihn, or sie, he or  
she is vexed, or it vexes  
him or her.

*Singular.*

es ärgere mich, I may be vex-  
ed, or it may vex me.  
es ärgere dich, thou mayst be  
vexed, or it may vex thee.  
es ärgere ihn, he may be  
vexed, or it may vex him.

*Plural.*

es ärgert uns, we are vexed,  
or it vexes us.  
es ärgert euch, you are vex-  
ed, or it vexes you.  
es ärgert sie, they are vexed,  
or it vexes them.

*Plural.*

es ärgere uns, we may be  
vexed, or it may vex us.  
es ärgere euch, you may be  
vexed, or it may vex you.  
es ärgere sie, they may be  
vexed, or it may vex them.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

er ärgerte mich, I was vexed,  
or it vexed me, &c.

*Singular.*

es ärgerte mich, I might be  
vexed, or it might vex me,  
&c.

*Obs.* This verb has no imperative nor participle.

*Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs.*

## Indicative.

## Present.

I am hungry,	(sich*) hung'ern, to be hungry.
Thou art cold,	(sich) frie'ren, to freeze.
We are thirsty,	(sich) dur'sten, to be thirsty.
They are sleepy,	(sich) schlä'fern, to be sleepy.

## Imperfect.

It was understood,	(sich) verste'h'en, to be understood.
We were grieved,	(sich) grä'm'en, to grieve.
You were grieved,	(sich) verdrie's'en, to be chagrined.
They were chagrined.	

Es † sometimes answers to *there*; as, es ist, there is; es giebt, there is, (literally, it gives.)

They are conjugated as follows.

## Indicative.

## Present.

es ist, there is.	es giebt, there is, or there are.
-------------------	-----------------------------------

## Imperfect.

es war, there was.	es gab, there was.
--------------------	--------------------

And so on through the subjunctive.

\* The reciprocal pronoun *sich* is never used with the infinitive of impersonal verbs; it is given above with the verb merely to indicate, that in the indicative and subjunctive the appropriate reciprocal pronoun is required.

† Es is frequently put before the verb, and the nominative after; as, Es kennt ihn nie'mand, No one knows him, i. e. *there knows him no one*. Es fliegt ein Vo'gel, *There is a bird flying*.

## § 5. COMPOUND VERBS.

Simple verbs being regular or irregular, their compounds are the same.

Compound verbs are compounded either with separable, or inseparable particles.

The separable particles are separated from the verbs in the original tenses of the indicative and subjunctive, and in the imperative; but are joined to them in the infinitive and participle, as in the following example.

Conjugation of the Separable Compound Verb *aufhalten*, to detain or stop.

## Infinitive.

## Participle.

*aufhalten*, to detain.

*Present.* *aufhaltend*, detaining.

*Past.* *aufgehalten*, detained.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.**Singular.**Singular.*

*ich halte auf*, I detain, am detaining, or do detain.

*ich halte auf*, I may detain.

*du hältst auf*, thou detainest.

*du hältst auf*, thou mayst detain.

*er, sie, or es hält auf*, he, she, or it detains.

*er, sie, or es halte auf*, he, she, or it may detain.

*Plural.**Plural.*

*wir halten auf*, we detain.

*wir halten auf*, we may detain.

*ihr haltet auf*, you detain.

*ihr haltet auf*, you may detain.

*sie halten auf*, they detain.

*sie halten auf*, they may detain.

*Imperfect.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich hielt auf, I detained.

ich hielt<sup>e</sup> auf, I might detain.du hielt<sup>e</sup>st auf, thou detainest.du hielt<sup>e</sup>st auf, thou mightst detain.

er hielt auf, he detained.

er hielt<sup>e</sup> auf, he might detain.*Plural.**Plural.*wir hielt<sup>e</sup>n auf, we detained.wir hielt<sup>e</sup>n auf, we might, &c.ihr hielt<sup>e</sup>t auf, you detained.ihr hielt<sup>e</sup>t auf, you might, &c.sie hielt<sup>e</sup>n auf, they detained.sie hielt<sup>e</sup>n auf, they might, &c.*Imperative.**Singular.**Plural.*halt<sup>e</sup>n wir auf, let us detain.halt<sup>e</sup> (du) auf, detain (thou).halt<sup>e</sup>t (ihr) auf, detain<sup>e</sup> (you).halt<sup>e</sup> er auf, let him detain.halt<sup>e</sup>n sie auf, let them detain.

## So conjugate :

Auf<sup>e</sup>nehmen, to take up.Aus<sup>e</sup>sprechen, to pronounce.Weg<sup>e</sup>geben, to give away.Vor<sup>e</sup>kommen, to come before, to happen.Ab<sup>e</sup>holen, to fetch.Ein<sup>e</sup>bringen, to bring in.*Exercises on the Separable Compound Verbs.**Indicative.**Present.*

I take off,

ab<sup>e</sup>nehmen, to take off.

Thou acceptest,

an<sup>e</sup>nehmen, to accept.

It devolves,

an<sup>e</sup>heim<sup>e</sup>fallen, or heim<sup>e</sup>fallen, to devolve.

We give up,

auf<sup>e</sup>geben, to give up.

You except,

aus<sup>e</sup>nehmen, to except.

They assist,

bei<sup>e</sup>stehen, to stand by, to assist.

*Imperfect.*

I presented,	dar'reichen, to present.
Thou rannest off,	davon'laufen, to run off.
He took in,	ein'nehmen, to take in.
We pursued,	fort'setzen, to pursue.
You sent home,	heim'schicken, to send home.
They came hither,	her'kommen, to come hither.

*Imperative.*

Look ( <i>thou</i> ) to,	zu'sehen, to look to.
Keep ( <i>you</i> ) back,	zurück'haltē, to keep back.

*Infinitive.*

To keep back,	zurück'haltē, to keep back.
To have kept back,	. . . . . :

*Participles.*

Composing,	zusam'mensetzen, to compose. .
Composed,	. . . . . :

The inseparable particles in compound verbs, are always joined to the verbs, and the *ge* of the participles, is dropped.  
 Conjugation of the Inseparable Compound Verb *behal'ten*,  
 to retain.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
behal'ten, to retain.	<i>Present.</i> behal'tend, retaining.
	<i>Past.</i> behal'ten, retained.
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>

*Present.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
ich behal'te, I retain.	ich behal'te, I may retain.
du behältest, thou retainest.	du behältest, thou mayst retain.
er behält, he retains.	er behäl'te, he may retain.
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
wir behal'ten, we retain.	wir behal'ten, we may retain.
ihr behal'tet, you retain.	ihr behal'tet, you may retain.
sie behal'ten, they retain.	sie behal'ten, they may retain.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich behiel't, I retained.  
 du behiel'test, thou retainedst,  
 &c.

*Singular.*

ich behiel'te, I might retain.  
 du behiel'test, thou mightst  
 retain, &c.

*Imperative.**Singular.*

behal'te (du), retain (thou).  
 behal'te er, let him retain.

*Plural.*

behal'ten wir, let us retain.  
 behal'tet ihr, retain ye or you.  
 behal'ten sie, let them retain.

*Exercises on the Inseparable Compound Verbs.**Indicative.**Present.*

I remark,  
 Thou backbitest;  
 He escapes,  
 Do we not acquire?  
 Do you not light upon?  
 They leave behind,

bemer'ken, to remark.  
 afterreden, to backbite.  
 entge'hen, to escape.  
 erwer'ben, to acquire.  
 gera'then, to light upon.  
 hinterlas'sen, to leave behind.

*Imperfect.*

Did I mistrust?  
 Did he conceal?  
 We concerted,  
 You neglected,  
 They dishonored;

mistrau'en, to mistrust.  
 verber'gen, to conceal.  
 verab'reden, to concert.  
 vernach'lässigen, to neglect.  
 verun'ehren, to dishonor.

*Subjunctive, Imperative, and Participle.*

I may conceal. Thou mightest concert. We may not neglect. You might not dishonor. They might not acquire. Do not backbite. Distrust ye not. Escaping. Escaped. Acquired.

*Observations on the Compound Verbs.*

1. The compound verbs generally follow the conjugation of the simple verbs, some of which are regular, and others irregular; thus, an'reden, to address, and bere'den, to persuade,

from *reden*, to speak, are *regular*; *aufschreiben*, to write down, and *beschreiben*, to describe, from *schreiben*, to write, are *irregular*. But *schaffen*, to create, is *irregular*, and *verschaffen*, to procure, *regular*; *löschen*, to quench, *regular*, and *erlöschen*, to become extinct, *irregular*.

2. All separable particles have a distinct meaning, when taken by themselves, and are therefore easily distinguished when used in composition; as,

*ab*, off, or down.

*an*, on, or at.

*auf*, up, or upon.

*aus*, out of.

*bei*, at, by, near.

*dar*, there.

*ein*, in, or into.

*frei*, free.

*mit*, with.

*nach*, after.

### *Examples.*

*Absetzen*, to depose,

from *setzen*, to put, and *ab* down.

*Ansprechen*, to address,

*sprechen*, to speak, *an*, to.

*Aufstehen*, to arise,

*stehen*, to stand, *auf*, up.

*Aussetzen*, to expose,

*setzen*, to put, *aus*, out.

*Beistehen*, to assist, to stand by,

*stehen*, to stand, *bei*, by, or near.

*Ein-schließen*, to inclose,

*schließen*, to lock, *ein*, in.

*Freisprechen*, to acquit,

*sprechen*, to speak, *frei*, free.

*Mitgehen*, to accompany,

*gehen*, to go, *mit*, with.

*Nachfolgen*, to succeed,

*folgen*, to follow, *nach*, after.

*Sin*, *thither* or *there*, and *her*, *hither* or *here*, are oftener employed in German than in English. Both express motion toward an object; but *her* when used in opposition to *hin*, denotes a motion toward the place where the person who speaks actually is, and *hin* a motion toward another place. Thus, *hinkommen*, signifies to get or arrive there, in opposition to *herkommen*, to come hither; as, *Ich konnte nicht hinkommen*, I could not get there; *Kommen Sie her*, Come here.

3. The inseparable particles, as their name announces, are used only in composition. Of these, the following are the principal:



**Be**, (1.) in composition with verbs, denotes an expansion of the action over an object, or its influence upon it; as, *bewach'sen*, to overgrow; *bestreu'en*, to bestrew; *beräuchern*, to besmoke or smoke. By the use of this particle, many neuter verbs are changed into active; as, *ar'beiten*, to work, *ein Stück Holz bear'beiten*, to work on a piece of wood; *rei'ten*, to ride, *ein Pferd berei'ten*, to train a horse; *fol'gen*, to follow, *ei'nen Rath besol'gen*, to follow a counsel; *spre'chen*, to speak, *et'was bespre'chen*, to bespeak a thing, &c.

(2.) In composition with nouns, and other parts of speech, it denotes a communication of one object or quality to another; as, *beslü'geln*, to wing or provide with wings, from *Flü'gel*, a wing; *bebän'dern*, to adorn with ribbons, from *Band*, ribbon; *beaug'en*, to give an eye to, from *Au'ge*, eye; *belaub'en*, to cover with leaves, from *laub*, leaf; *berei'chern*, to enrich, from *reich*, rich, &c. In the application of this particle, there is but little difference between the two languages.

**Ent** denotes (1.) removal from a place, and nearly corresponds to the English *from* or *away*; as, *entslie'gen*, to fly away; *ent'fernen*, to remove; *entlas'sen*, to send away or dismiss.

(2.) Deprivation; as, *enteh'ren*, to dishonor; *entbin'den*, to unbind; *entset'seln*, to unsettle; *enthaup'ten*, to behead; *enthül'len*, to unveil.

(3.) It sometimes denotes the commencement of an action; as, *entbren'nen*, to kindle; *entzün'den*, to set on fire; *entschlä'sen*, to fall asleep; *entspring'en*, to spring; *entste'hen*, to arise.

**Emp** is sometimes substituted for *ent*, for the sake of euphony, before words beginning with *f*; as, *empfeh'len*, to recommend; but *emp* generally signifies *in* or *internally*; as, *empfin'den*, to feel, to be endowed with inward feeling, from *fin'den*, to find.

**Er** denotes (1.) elevation, in the sense of the particle *auf*, up; as, *erhe'ben*, to elevate, or lift up; *erbaue'n*, to build up; *erzie'hen*, to bring up; *erwach'sen*, to grow up.

(2.) Obtaining by means of exertion, or trouble; as, *erseh'ten*, to obtain by fighting; *erschmei'cheln*, to wheedle; *erfi'schen*, to fish out; *erar'beiten*, to work out; *erkauf'en*, to purchase; *erfah'ren*, to learn by experience; thus, *Er erfocht ei'nen*

**Sieg**, He obtained a victory; **Er hat sei'ne Gunst erschmei'chelt**, He has wheedled himself into his favor, &c. So likewise in regard to mental exertions; as, **ersin'nen**, to devise; **erdenk'en**, to contrive; **ersin'den**, to invent, &c.

(3.) Taking out, bringing out, coming out, in the sense of the particle **aus**, out; **erwäh'len**, to elect, or choose out of; **ernen'nen**, to nominate; **ergie'sen**, to flow out; **erlassen**, to issue; **erschöpf'en**, to exhaust; **erbre'chen**, to break open, or break out from.

(4.) A bringing or coming into a condition, which is indicated by the words with which it is compounded; as, **erwei'tern**, to enlarge, from **weit**, wide or large; **erwär'men**, to warm, from **warm**, warm; **ergrau'en**, to grow grey, from **grau**, grey; **erhar'ten**, to grow hard, from **hart**, hard; **erblei'chen**, to turn or grow pale, from **bleich**, pale; **erblin'den**, to grow blind, from **blind**, blind; **erkäl'ten**, to grow cold, from **kalt**, cold; **errö'then**, to redden, or blush, from **roth**, red; **erar'men**, to impoverish, from **arm**, poor; **erklä'ren**, to explain, or clear up, from **klar**, clear; **erfrie'ren**, to freeze, from **frie'ren**, to freeze; **erzür'nen**, to make angry, from **Zorn**, anger; **erster'b'en**, to expire, from **ster'b'en**, to die, &c.

**Ge** gives simply an extension to the primitive; as, **brau'chen**, to use, **gebrau'chen**, to employ; **denk'en**, to think, **gedenk'en**, to think of, or bear in mind; **frie'ren**, to freeze, **gefrie'ren**, to become frozen; **dul'den**, to bear, **sich gedul'den**, to endure, or have patience with; **lang'en**, to reach, **gelang'en**, to arrive at, or come to, &c.

**Ver** denotes (1.) removal, answering to the particle *away*; as, **verja'gen**, to drive away; **verschent'en**, to give away; **verrüc'ken**, to move away; **verpflanzen**, to transplant; **verset'zen**, to transpose; **verwech'seln**, to change; **verkau'fen**, to sell: or *away*, as implying waste, loss, or consumption; as, **vertrink'en**, to drink away, to spend by drinking; **verspie'len**, to game away; **verlie'ren**, to lose; **verar'beiten**, to work up; **verblü'hen**, to fade away; **verrau'chen**, to evaporate; **verschmach'ten**, to pine; **verblüt'en**, to bleed to death; **verwelk'en**, to wither away.

(2.) Putting out of order, or doing wrong, answering generally to *mis*; as, **verle'gen**, to mislay; **versüh'ren**, to seduce; **verschrei'ben**, to write wrong; **verdre'hen**, to pervert; **versäl'schen**, to adulterate; **versäl'zen**, to oversalt; **verges'sen**, to for-

get; *verschie'ben*, to dislocate; *vernach'lässigen*, to neglect; *verrech'uen*, to miscalculate.

(3.) Putting in the way of, obstructing; as, *verbie'ten*, to forbid; *versa'gen*, to deny; *verbi'ten*, to refuse; *verweh'ren*, to prohibit; *verhin'dern*, to prevent; as, *verschl'essen*, to lock up; *verdam'men*, to dam up; *versie'geln*, to seal up; *versper'ren*, to bar up or out; *vermau'ern*, to wall up, &c.

(4.) Putting into a condition; as, *veralt'en*, to grow obsolete, from *alt*, old; *verläng'ern*, to lengthen, from *lang*, long; *verkür'zen*, to shorten, from *kurz*, short; *verarm'en*, to impoverish, from *arm*, poor; *vered'eln*, to ennoble, from *edel*, noble; *vergöt'tern*, to deify, from *Gott*, God; *verbrü'dern*, to fraternize, from *Brü'der*, brother, &c. Sometimes it adds force to the primitive; as, *vereh'ren*, to venerate, from *eh'ren*, to honor; *verspot'ten*, to mock, from *spot'ten*, to jeer; *verla'chen*, to deride, from *la'chen*, to laugh; *verlei'hen*, to grant, from *lei'hen*, to lend, &c.

*Zer* denotes a thorough separation of the parts; as, *zerbre'chen*, to break in pieces; *zerschmet'tern*, to dash in pieces; *zerrüt'ten*, to shake in pieces; *zerstre'u'en*, to dissipate; *zerstö'ren*, to destroy; *zerschnei'den*, to cut in pieces.

The particles *wi'der*, against, and *hin'ter*, behind, though inseparable in composition, are employed as distinct words. Verbs compounded with *mis*, which answers to the English *mis* and *dis*, commonly take the augment *ge* and the preposition *zu* before the participle and infinitive; as, *misbil'ligen*, to disapprove, *gemisbil'liget*, disapproved, *zu misbil'ligen*, to disapprove; *misbrau'chen*, to misuse, *gemisbrau'cht*, misused, *zu misbrau'chen*, to misuse.

Some few neuter and active verbs drop the participial augment *ge*; as, *misfal'len*, to displease, *es hat mir misfal'len*, it has displeased me; *mislei'ten*, to mislead, *mislei'tet*, misled; *misling'en*, to fail, *es ist mislung'en*, it has failed; *misra'then*, to miscarry, *es ist misra'then*, it has miscarried; *mis'ver'stehen*, to misunderstand, *man hat es mis'ver'standen*, it has been misunderstood.

4. Some prepositions are both separable and inseparable, as, *durch*, through; *um*, about; *ü'ber*, over; to which may be added *wie'der*, again. The three first are separable in the intransitive, and inseparable in the transitive sense of the verb; as, *durch'brechen*, to break through, or make one's way

through; *er bricht durch*, (*separable*) he breaks through; *durch'gebrochen*, having broken through; but *er'was durchbre'chen*, to break through a thing; *er durchbricht' ei'ne Mau'er*, (*inseparable*) he breaks through a wall; *durchbro'chen*, being broken through: *um'laufen*, to go or run round; *er läuft um*, (*separable*) he runs round; *um'gelaufen*, having run round; but *er'was umlau'fen*, to run round a thing; *er umläuft'*, (*inseparable*) he runs round, *umlau'fen*, being run round: *ü'ber'setzen*, to leap or pass over; *er setzt ü'ber*, (*separable*) he leaps over; *ü'bergesetzt*, having passed over; but *überse'tzen*, to translate; *er überse't aus dem Deut'schen*, (*inseparable*) he translates from the German; *überse't*, translated.—*Wie'der* in composition is separable in the proper sense, but inseparable in the figurative sense; as, *wie'derholen*, to fetch back, (*separable*) *ich hol'te es wie'der*, I fetched it back; but *wiederho'len*, to repeat, (*inseparable*) *ich wiederhol'te die Wor'te*, I repeated the words.—In the above verbs the accent is laid upon the particle when it is separable, but upon the verb when it is inseparable.

5. Verbs compounded with nouns, or adverbs, are mostly inseparable; but take the augment *ge* in the participle; as,

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
<i>Rath'schlagen</i> , to consult.	<i>ich rath'schlage.</i>	<i>gerath'schlaget.</i>
<i>Ant'worten</i> , to answer.	<i>ich ant'worte.</i>	<i>geant'wortet.</i>

So the following :

<i>Arg'wöhnen</i> , to suspect.	<i>Quack'salbern</i> , to quack.
<i>Groh'locken</i> , to exult.	<i>Rad'brechen</i> , to break on the wheel.
<i>Früh'stücken</i> , to breakfast.	<i>Rech'tfertigen</i> , to justify.
<i>Fuchs'schwänzen</i> , to fawn.	<i>Ur'theilen</i> , to judge.
<i>Hand'haben</i> , to handle.	<i>Ur'kunden</i> , to testify.
<i>Hei'rathen</i> , to marry.	<i>Weissagen</i> , to prophesy.
<i>Hohn'lachen</i> , to laugh to scorn.	<i>Wett'eisern</i> , to emulate.
<i>Lieb'äugeln</i> , to ogle.	<i>Will'fah'zen</i> , to gratify.
<i>Lieb'kosen</i> , to caress.	
<i>Muth'masen</i> , to conjecture.	

Verbs compounded with *voll*, drop the augment *ge*; as *vollen'den*, to finish; *Imp. ich voll'en'dete*, I finished; *Part. voll'en'det*, finished; so, *vollbring'en*, to bring about; *vollzie'hen*, to execute; *vollstrec'ken*, to accomplish; *vollfüh'zen*, to consummate.

*List of the principal Particles with which Compound Verbs are formed.*

1. The following particles are generally inseparable from the verbs.

after	as, afterreden,	to backbite.
.be	bedenk'en,	reflect, consider.
.emp	empfang'en,	receive.
.ent	entste'hen,	arise.
.er	erfin'den,	invent.
.ge	gedei'hen,	prosper.
.hinter	hinterblei'ben,	remain behind.
.mis	misfal'len,	displease.
.ver	verzeh'ren,	consume.
.verab	verab'folgen,	deliver.
.vernach	vernach'lässigen,	neglect.
.verun	verun'ehren,	dishonor.
voll	vollbring'en,	complete.
ur	ur'theilen,	judge.
.zer	zerstöh'ren,	destroy.

2. The following are the principal particles, which in certain tenses before mentioned (page 105), are generally to be separated from the verbs.

ab	an	anheim'
auf	aus	bei, dabei'
davon'	dafür'	davor'
darun'ter	dawi'der	dazwi'schen
durch	ein	einher'
fort	für	gleich
heim	hin	her
herab'	herauf	heraus'
herbei'	herdurch'	herein'
hernach'	herü'ber	herum'
herun'ter	hervor'	herzu'
hinab'	hinan'	hinauf
hinaus'	hinü'ber	hinzu'
in'nen	mit	nach
nie'der	ob	n'ber
überein'	un'ter	voll
vor	voran'	vorans'
vorü'ber	vorbei'	weg
wie'der	zu	zuwü'der.

These particles have a meaning of themselves, independent of the verbs with which they are connected; some of their meanings may be seen in the following examples;

<b>Ab'schreiben</b> , to copy,	<i>from</i> <b>schrei'ben</b> , to write, <i>ab</i> , from.
<b>Aus'schreiben</b> , to extract,	<b>schrei'ben</b> , to write, <i>aus</i> , out of, or from.
<b>Aufbauen</b> , to erect,	<b>bau'en</b> , to build, <i>auf</i> , up.
<b>Nach'gehen</b> , to go after,	<b>ge'hen</b> , to go, <i>nach</i> , after.
<b>Mit'nehmen</b> , to take along with,	<b>neh'men</b> , to take, <i>mit</i> , with.
<b>Niederrennen</b> , to run down,	<b>ren'nen</b> , to run, <i>nie'der</i> , down.
<b>Her'bringen</b> , to bring hither or here,	<b>bring'en</b> , to bring, <i>her</i> , hither.
<b>Hervor'bringen</b> , to bring forth,	<b>bring'en</b> , to bring, <i>hervor'</i> , forth.
<b>Hin'helfen</b> , to forward,	<b>hel'fen</b> , to help; <i>hin</i> , forth.
<b>Hinü'berkommen</b> , to come over,	<b>kom'men</b> , to come, <i>hinü'ber</i> , over.
<b>Un'tersinken</b> , to go to the bottom,	<b>sink'en</b> , to sink, <i>un'ter</i> , under.
<b>Ü'berfließen</b> , to overflow,	<b>flie'sen</b> , to flow, <i>über</i> , over.
<b>Vor'kommen</b> , to occur,	<b>kom'men</b> , to come, <i>vor</i> , before.
<b>Voran'gehen</b> , to go before,	<b>ge'hen</b> , to go, <i>voran'</i> , before.
<b>Vorbei'gehen</b> , to pass by,	<b>ge'hen</b> , to go, <i>vorbei'</i> , by.
<b>Weg'nehmen</b> , to take away,	<b>neh'men</b> , to take, <i>weg</i> , away.
<b>Wie'derkommen</b> , to come again,	<b>kom'men</b> , to come, <i>wie'der</i> , again.
<b>Zu'beißen</b> , to bite eagerly,	<b>beiß'en</b> , to bite, <i>zu</i> , at.

#### § 6. AUXILIARY VERBS.

**Ha'ben**, to have, **sein** (*seyn*), to be, and **wer'den**, to become, are the three most important auxiliary verbs.

**Wer'den**, is used as an auxiliary with every verb; **ha'ben**, with all the active, and most of the neuter verbs; and **sein** with many neuter verbs.

These auxiliary verbs are used as such also with one another, to form the supplementary tenses of each of them; and their supplementary as well as their original tenses are used with other verbs. Thus the future of **ha'ben**, *ich wer'de ha'ben*, I shall have, is a simple supplementary tense, formed by joining the present *ich wer'de*, to the infinitive *ha'ben*; and

this future of *haben* used with *geliebt*, loved, the past participle of *lieben*, to love, forms a compound supplementary tense, the compound future of *lieben*, *ich werde geliebt haben*, I shall have loved.

By thus joining the auxiliary verbs to others, the following supplementary tenses are formed :

1. The two supplementary past tenses, viz. the perfect and the pluperfect.

2. The two future tenses, viz. the simple and the compound.

3. The two conditional tenses viz., the simple and the compound.

4. All the tenses of the passive voice.

The perfect is formed by joining the past participle of the verb to the present, and the pluperfect by joining the same to the imperfect, of the auxiliary *haben*, or the auxiliary *sein*; as, *ich habe geliebt*, I have loved; *ich hatte geliebt*, I had loved; and, *ich bin gereist*, I have travelled; *ich war gereist*, I had travelled. (The auxiliary *sein*, in all neuter verbs, is Englished to *have*.)

The simple future is formed of the present indicative or subjunctive of *werden*, joined to the present infinitive of the verb; as, *ich werde lieben*, I shall love: and the simple conditional is formed of the imperfect subjunctive of *werden*, joined to the present infinitive of the verb; as, *ich würde lieben*, I should love. The compound future is formed of the simple future of *haben*, or of *sein*, joined to the past participle of the verb; as, *ich werde geliebt haben*, I shall have loved; *ich werde gereist sein*, I shall have travelled: and the compound conditional is formed of the simple conditional of *haben*, or of *sein*, joined to the past participle of the verb; as, *ich würde geliebt haben*, I should have loved; *ich würde gereist sein*, I should have travelled.

The two conditional tenses belong, according to the manner in which they are used, either to the indicative or the subjunctive.

The different tenses of the passive are formed by joining the past participle of the verb to the original and the supplementary tenses of *werden*, which then is Englished to *be*; as, *ich werde geliebt*, I am loved; *ich würde geliebt*, I should be loved.

The following paradigms contain the original and the supplementary tenses of *haben*, *sein*, and *werden*.

*Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, Ha'ben, to have.**Infinitive.**Pres.* ha'ben, to have.*Perf.* gehabt ha'ben, to have  
had.*Participle.**Pres.* ha'bend, having.*Past.* gehabt, had.*Indicative.**Subjunctive.**Present.**Singular.*

ich ha'be, I have.

du hast, thou hast.

er, sie, es hat he, she, it  
has.*Singular.*

ich ha'be, I may have.

du ha'best, thou mayst have.

er, sie, es ha'be, he, she, it  
may have.*Plural.*

wir ha'ben, we have.

ihr habt, or ha'bet, you have.

sie ha'ben, they have.

*Plural.*

wir ha'ben, we may have.

ihr ha'bet, you may have.

sie ha'ben, they may have.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich ha'te, I had.

du ha'test, thou hadst.

er ha'te, he had.

*Singular.*

ich ha'te, I might have.

du ha'test, thou mightst  
have.

er ha'te, he might have.

*Plural.*

wir ha'ten, we had.

ihr ha'tet, you had.

sie ha'ten, they had.

*Plural.*

wir ha'ten, we might have.

ihr ha'tet, you might have.

sie ha'ten, they might have.

*Perfect.**Singular.*

ich ha'be gehabt, I have had.

du hast gehabt, thou hast had.

er hat gehabt, he has had.

*Singular.*ich ha'be gehabt, I may have  
had.du ha'best gehabt, thou mayst  
have had.er ha'be gehabt, he may have  
had.



*Plural.*

wir ha'ben gehabt, we have  
had.  
ihr habt (or ha'bet) gehabt, you  
have had.  
sie ha'ben gehabt, they have  
had.

*Plural.*

wir ha'ben gehabt, we may  
have had.  
ihr ha'bet gehabt, you may  
have had.  
sie ha'ben gehabt, they may  
have had.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

ich ha'te gehabt, I had had.  
du ha'test gehabt, thou hadst  
had.  
er ha'te gehabt, he had had.

*Singular.*

ich ha'te gehabt, I might  
have had.  
du ha'test gehabt, thou  
mightst have had.  
er ha'te gehabt, he might  
have had.

*Plural.*

wir ha'ten gehabt, we had  
had.  
ihr ha'tet gehabt, you had  
had.  
sie ha'ten gehabt, they had  
had.

*Plural.*

wir ha'ten gehabt, we might  
have had.  
ihr ha'tet gehabt, you might  
have had.  
sie ha'ten gehabt, they might  
have had.

*Simple Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de ha'ben, I shall or  
will have  
du wirfst ha'ben, thou wilt  
have.  
er wird ha'ben, he will have.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de ha'ben, I shall or  
will have.  
du wer'dest ha'ben, thou wilt  
have.  
er wer'de ha'ben, he will have.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den ha'ben, we shall  
or will have.  
ihr wer'det ha'ben, you will  
have.  
sie wer'den ha'ben, they will  
have.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den ha'ben, we shall  
or will have.  
ihr wer'det ha'ben, you will  
have.  
sie wer'den ha'ben, they will  
have.

† *Compound Future.*

*Singular.*

ich wer'de gehabt ha'ben, I  
shall or will have had  
du wirst gehabt ha'ben, thou  
wilt have had.  
er wird gehabt ha'ben, he  
will have had.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de gehabt ha'ben, I  
shall or will have had.  
du wer'dest gehabt ha'ben, thou  
wilt have had.  
er wer'de gehabt ha'ben, he  
will have had.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den gehabt haben, we  
shall or will have had.  
ihr wer'det gehabt ha'ben, you  
will have had.  
sie wer'den gehabt ha'ben,  
they will have had.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den gehabt ha'ben  
we shall or will have had.  
ihr wer'det gehabt ha'ben, you  
will have had.  
sie wer'den gehabt ha'ben, they  
will have had.

( *Conditional Tenses.* )

Indicative and Subjunctive.

*Simple Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de ha'ben, I should or  
would have.  
du wü'r'dest ha'ben, thou  
wouldst have.  
er wü'r'de ha'ben, he would  
have.

*Compound Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de gehabt ha'ben, I  
should or would have had.  
du wü'r'dest gehabt ha'ben,  
thou wouldst have had.  
er wü'r'de gehabt ha'ben, he  
would have had.

*Plural.*

wir wü'r'den ha'ben, we  
should or would have.  
ihr wü'r'det ha'ben, you would  
have.  
sie wü'r'den ha'ben, they would  
have.

*Plural.*

wir wü'r'den gehabt ha'ben,  
we should or would have  
had.  
ihr wü'r'det gehabt ha'ben,  
you would have had.  
sie wü'r'den gehabt ha'ben,  
they would have had.

## Imperative.

## Singular.

## Plural.

ha'be (du), have (thou.)

ha'be er, let him have.

ha'ben wir, let us have.

habet or ha'bet (ihr), have (you),  
or do (you) have.

Ha'ben sie, let them have.

*Exercises on the Auxiliary Verb, ha'ben, to have.*

This verb, as well as all others, may be conjugated in four forms; that is,

*Affirmatively*, ich ha'be, I have.

*Negatively*, ich ha'be nicht, I have not.

*Interrogatively*, ha'be ich? Have I?

*Negatively and interrogatively*, ha'be ich nicht? have I not?

So likewise through all the tenses, as in the following exercise.

*Pres. Ind.* Have I? Have I not? He has not. Hast thou? She has not. Have we? We have not. You have not. Have they? They have not. Have they not?

*Imp.* Had I? He had. Had she not? Had we not? Had you not? They had. Had they not?

*Perf.* Have I had? Hast thou not had? Has he not had? Have you not had? She has not had. Have they not had? We have not had. Have they had? They have not had.

*Pluperfect.* I had not had. Had I not had? Hadst thou had? She had not had. Had he not had? Had we had? They had not had. They had had. Had they not had.

*Simple Fut.* Shall I not have? Wilt thou have? I will not have. We shall not have. Will you not have? You will not have.

*Compound Fut.* He will have had. They will not have had. Will they not have had? We shall have had. Will you not have had?

*Simple Cond.* Should I have? Thou wouldst not have. Would he not have? We would not have. Should we have? Should we not have? You would not have. Would you not have? They would not have. Would they not have?

*Comp. Con.* I should not have had. Would he not have had? We should not have had. Would you have had? They would not have had.

*Pres. Subj.* I may have. I may not have. Thou mayst not have. We may have. We may not have. They may have. They may not have.

*Imp.* Thou mightst not have. Hadst\* thou not. Had we. Had we not. Had you not. Had they not. They might not have.

*Perf.* Thou mayst not have had. We may not have had. You may have had. They may not have had.

*Plup.* I might not have had. Thou mightst have had. He might have had. He might not have had. We might not have had. They might not have had.

*Imper.* Have (thou.) Let us have. Have (ye.) Let them not have.

*Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, Sein (Seyn), to be.*

*Infinitive.*

*Participle.*

*Pres.* sein, to be.

*Pres.* sei'end, being.

*Perf.* gewes'en sein, to have been.

*Past:* gewes'en, been.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

*Present.*

*Singular.*

*Singular.*

ich bin, I am.

ich sei, I may be.

du bist, thou art.

du sei'est, or seist, thou mayst be.

er, sie, es ist, he, she, it is.

er sei, he may be.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

wir sind, we are.

wir sei'en, or sein, we may be.

ihr seid, you are.

ihr sei'et, or seid, you may be.

sie sind, they are.

sie sei'en, or sein, they may be.

\* The phrases beginning with the verb, are not interrogative in the subjunctive mood, but have the same meaning as when preceded by *if*.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich war, I was.  
 du warst, or wa'rest, thou wast.  
 er war, he was.

*Plural.*

wir wa'ren, we were.  
 ihr wa'ret, you were.  
 sie wa'ren, they were.

*Singular.*

ich wa're, I might be.  
 du wa'rest, thou mightst be.  
 er wa're, he might be.

*Plural.*

wir wa'ren, we might be.  
 ihr wa'ret, you might be.  
 ie wa'ren, they might be.

*Perfect.**Singular.*

ich bin gewe'sen, I have been.  
 du bist gewe'sen, thou hast  
 been.  
 er ist gewe'sen, he has been.

*Plural.*

wir sind gewe'sen, we have  
 been.  
 ihr seid gewe'sen, you have  
 been.  
 sie sind gewe'sen, they have  
 been.

*Singular.*

ich sei gewe'sen, I may have  
 been.  
 du sei'est gewe'sen, thou mayst  
 have been.  
 er sei gewe'sen, he may have  
 been.

*Plural.*

wir sei'en gewe'sen, we may  
 have been.  
 ihr sei'et gewe'sen, you may  
 have been.  
 sie sei'en gewe'sen, they may  
 have been.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

ich war gewe'sen, I had been.  
 du warst gewe'sen, thou hadst  
 been.  
 er war gewe'sen, he had been.

*Singular.*

ich wa're gewe'sen, I might  
 have been.  
 du wa'rest gewe'sen, thou  
 mightst have been.  
 er wa're gewe'sen, he might  
 have been.

*Plural.*

wir wa'ren gewe'sen, we had  
been.

ihr wa'ret gewe'sen, you had  
been.

sie wa'ren gewe'sen, they had  
been.

*Plural.*

wir wa'ren gewe'sen, we might  
have been.

ihr wa'ret gewe'sen, you might  
have been.

sie wa'ren gewe'sen, they might  
have been.

*Simple Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de sein, I shall or will  
be.

du wirst sein, thou wilt be.

er wird sein, he will be.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de sein, I shall or will  
be.

du wer'dest sein, thou wilt be.

er wer'de sein, he will be.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den sein, we shall or  
will be.

ihr wer'det sein, you will be.

sie wer'den sein, they will be.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den sein, we shall or  
will be.

ihr wer'det sein, you will be.

sie wer'den sein, they will be.

*Compound Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de gewe'sen sein, I shall  
or will have been.

du wirst gewe'sen sein, thou  
wilt have been.

er wird gewe'sen sein, he will  
have been.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de gewe'sen sein, I shall  
or will have been.

du wer'dest gewe'sen sein, thou  
wilt have been.

er wer'de gewe'sen sein, he  
will have been.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den gewe'sen sein, we  
shall or will have been.

ihr wer'det gewe'sen sein, you  
will have been.

sie wer'den gewe'sen sein, they  
will have been.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den gewe'sen sein, we  
shall or will have been.

ihr wer'det gewe'sen sein, you  
will have been.

sie wer'den gewe'sen sein, they  
will have been.

## (Conditional Tenses.)

## Indicative and Subjunctive.

*Simple Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wûr'de sein, I should or  
would be.

du wûr'dest sein, thou wouldst  
be.

er wûr'de sein, he would be.

*Compound Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wûr'de gewesen sein, I  
should or would have been.

du wûr'dest gewesen sein, thou  
wouldst have been.

er wûr'de gewesen sein, he  
would have been.

*Plural.*

wir wûr'den sein, we should  
or would be.

ihr wûr'det sein, you would  
be.

sie wûr'den sein, they would  
be.

*Plural.*

wir wûr'den gewesen sein, we  
should or would have been.

ihr wûr'det gewesen sein, you  
would have been.

sie wûr'den gewesen sein, they  
would have been.

## Imperative.

*Singular.*

sei (du), be (thou).

sei er, let him be.

*Plural.*

sei'en or sein wir, let us be.

seid (ihr), be (you) or do (you)  
be.

• sein or sei'en sie, let them be.

*Exercises on the Auxiliary Verb, Sein, to be.*

*Pres. Ind.* Art thou? Is he not? We are not. Are they not? They are not. Are you not? You are. Are we not?

*Imp.* Was I? Thou wast not. It was not. She was. Were we? Were we not? Were you not? You were not. Were they?

*Perf.* I have been. Have I been? I have not been. Have I not been? Hast thou been? She has been. Has she not been? It has been. He has not been. Have we been? Have you not been? They have been. They have not been. Have they not been.

*Plup.* Had I been? I had not been. Thou hadst been. She had not been. Had he not been? Had he been? You had not been. They had not been. Had they been? Had they not been? We had not been. Had we not been?

*Simple Fut.* I shall not be. Wilt thou not be? He will be. Will she not be? It will not be. You will be. Will you not be? Shall we be? We shall not be. They will not be. Will they not be?

*Comp. Fut.* Shall I not have been? Wilt thou not have been? He will have been. Will she not have been? It not will have been. We shall have been. Shall we not have been? You will not have been. Will they not have been?

*Simple. Cond.* Should I be? Wouldst thou not be? It would be. Would she not be? He would not be. We should not be. Would you not be? You would not be. Would they not be? They would not be.

*Comp. Cond.* I should not have been. Would it not have been? Should we not have been? We should not have been. Would you not have been? They would not have been.

*Pres. Subj.* I may not be. Thou mayst be. It may not be. He may not be. We may be. You may not be. They may not be.

*Imp.* I might not be. She might be. It might not be. We might not be. You might be. They might not be.

*Perf.* I may not have been. Thou mayst have been. He may have been. It may have been. We may not have been. You may have been. They may not have been.

*Plup.* I might not have been. Thou mightst have been. She might not have been. We might have been. You might have been. They might not have been.

*Simple Fut.* I shall not be. Thou wilt be. He will not be. It will be. We shall not be. You will not be. They will not be.

*Comp. Fut.* I shall not have been. She will have been. We shall not have been. You will not have been. They will not have been.



*Imper.* Be (thou.) Let him be. Let him not be. Let us not be. Be, or do (you) be. Do (you) not be. Let them not be.

*Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, Wer'den, to become.*

*Infinitive.*

*Participle.*

*Pres.* wer'den, to become.

*Pres.* wer'dend, becoming.

*Perf.* gewor'den sein, to have become.

*Past.* gewor'den, become.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

*Present.*

*Singular.*

*Singular.*

ich wer'de, I become.

ich wer'de, I may become.

du wir'st, thou becomest.

du wer'dest, thou mayst become.

er, sie, es wird, he, she, it becomes.

er, sie, es wer'de, he, she, it may become.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

wir wer'den, we become.

wir wer'den, we may become.

ihr wer'det, you become.

ihr wer'det, you may become.

sie wer'den, they become.

sie wer'den, they may become.

*Imperfect.*

*Singular.*

*Singular.*

ich wur'de, or ward, I became.

ich wür'de, I might become.

du wur'dest, or wardst, thou becamest.

du wür'dest, thou mightst become.

er wur'de, or ward, he became.

er wür'de, he might become.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir wur'den, we became.

wir wür'den, we might become.

Ihr wur'det, you became.

ihr wür'det, you might become.

Sie wur'den, they became.

sie wür'den, they might become.

*Perfect.**Singular.*

ich bin gewor'den, I have be-  
come.

du bist gewor'den, &c.

*Singular.*

ich sei gewor'den, I may have  
become.

du seist gewor'den, &c.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

ich war gewor'den, I had be-  
come.

du wa'rest gewor'den, &c.

*Singular.*

ich wä're gewor'den, I might  
have become.

du wä'rest gewor'den, &c.

*First Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de wer'den, I shall be-  
come.

du wirst wer'den, &c.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de wer'den, I shall be-  
come.

du wer'dest wer'den, &c.

*Second Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de gewor'den sein, I  
shall have become.

du wirst gewor'den sein, &c.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de gewor'den sein, I  
shall have become.

du wer'dest gewor'den sein, &c.

*(Conditional Tenses.)**Indicative and Subjunctive.**Simple Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de wer'den, I should or  
would become.

du wü'r'dest wer'den, &c.

*Compound Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de gewor'den sein, I  
should have become.

du wü'r'dest gewor'den sein, &c.

## Imperative.

## Singular.

## Plural.

wer'de (du), become (thou).	wer'den wir, let us become.
wer'de er, let him become.	wer'det (ihr), become (you) or do (you) become.
	wer'den sie, let them become.

*Exercises on the Auxiliary, Wer'den, to become.*

*Pres. Ind.* Does he become? Does she not become? Thou dost not become. Do we become? Do you not become? They do not become.

*Imp.* I did not become. Did it not become? Did we become? She became. She did not become. Did we not become? Did you not become? They did not become.

*Perf.* I have become. Have I not become? Hast thou not become? She has not become. Have we not become? Have you not become? Have they become?

*Plup.* I had become. Had I become? Had I not become? I had not become. Hadst thou become? He had not become. Had she not become? Had we become? Had you not become? They had become. They had not become. Had they become? Had they not become?

*Simple Fut.* Shall I become? Shall we become? Wilt thou become? Wilt thou not become? He will become. She will not become. Will you become? They will not become.

*Comp. Fut* I shall have become. Will he have become? Shall we have become? You will not have become. Will they have become? They will not have become. Will they not have become?

*Simple Cond.* Should I become? Wouldst thou become? It would become. Should he not become? We should not become. Would you become? They would not become.

*Comp. Cond.* I should have become. Would it have become? Should we have become? We should not have be-

come. Would you not have become? You would have become. Would they have become?

*Pres. Subj.* I may not become. She may not become. Thou mayst become. He may not become. We may not become. They may become.

*Imp.* I might become. Thou mightst become. She might not become. We might not become. You might become. They might not become.

*Perf.* I may have become. He may not have become. You may have become. They may not have become.

*Plup.* Thou mightst have become. She might not have become. It might not have become. You might have become. They might not have become.

*Imper.* Become thou. Become (you) not. Let them become. Let them not become.

### A. *Supplementary Tenses of Active and Neuter Verbs.*

#### 1. Supplementary Tenses of a Verb, conjugated with *haben*.

*haben*, to love.

*Pres.* ich *liebe*. *Imp.* ich *lieb'te*. *Past Part.* *geliebt'.*

Infinitive.

*Perfect.*

*geliebt' haben*, to have loved.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Perfect.*

ich *ha'be geliebt'*, I have loved. ich *ha'be geliebt'*, I have loved.  
du *hast geliebt'*, &c. du *hast'est geliebt'*, &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich *hat'te geliebt'*, I had loved. ich *hat'te geliebt'*, I had loved.  
du *hast'est geliebt'*, &c. du *hast'est geliebt'*, &c.

*Simple Future.*

ich wer'de lie'ben, I shall love.  
du wirst lie'ben, &c.

ich wer'de lie'ben, I shall love.  
du wer'dest lie'ben, &c.

*Compound Future.*

ich wer'de geliebt' ha'ben, I  
shall have loved.  
du wirst geliebt' ha'ben, &c.

ich wer'de geliebt' ha'ben, I  
shall have loved.  
du wer'dest geliebt' ha'ben, &c.

*Simple Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de lie'ben, I should love.  
du wü'r'dest lie'ben, &c.

*Compound Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de geliebt' ha'ben, I should have loved.  
du wü'r'dest geliebt' ha'ben, &c.

*Exercises on Active and Neuter Verbs, conjugated with Ha'ben.*

I have hoped,  
Have I been zealous?  
I have not seen,  
Have I not trembled?  
Thou hast quaked,  
Thou hast not praised,  
Hast thou not finished?  
It has thundered,  
Has he not mentioned,  
Has she inquired?  
Has she not been penurious?  
We have adorned,  
Have we not slept?  
Have you not suffered?  
You have not lived,  
They have not blossomed,  
Had I not starved?  
Hast thou pined?  
Thou hadst not found,  
It had been worth,  
Had she known?  
He had not stood,  
Had he not sat?

hoffen, to hope.  
ei'fern, to be zealous.  
se'hen, to see.  
zit'tern, to tremble.  
be'ben, to quake.  
lo'ben, to praise.  
en'den, to finish.  
don'nern, to thunder.  
erwäh'nen, to mention.  
for'schen, to inquire.  
kar'gen, to be penurious.  
schmüc'ken, to adorn.  
schla'fen, to sleep.  
lei'den, to suffer.  
le'ben, to live.  
blü'hen, to blossom.  
dar'ben, to starve.  
schmach'ten, to pine.  
find'en, to find.  
tau'gen, to be worth.  
wis'sen, to know.  
ste'hen, to stand.  
sit'zen, to sit.

It had not frozen,  
 We had not dreamed,  
 They had been called,  
 They had not grown old,  
 Had they demanded?

fríe'ren, to freeze.  
 träu'men, to dream.  
 hei'sen, to be called.  
 al'tern, to grow old.  
 fo'dern, to demand.

## 2. The Supplementary Tenses of a Verb, conjugated with *Sein*.

*Rei'sen*, to travel.

*Pres.* ich rei'se.

*Imp.* ich rei'ste.

*Past Part.* gereist'.

*Infinitive.*

*Perfect.*

gereist' sein, to have travelled.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

*Perfect.*

ich bin gereist', I have travelled.

du bist gereist', &c.

ich sei gereist', I have travelled.

du seiest gereist', &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich war gereist', I had travelled.

du wärest gereist', &c.

ich wä're gereist', I had travelled.

du wä'rest gereist', &c.

*Simple Future.*

ich wer'de rei'sen, I shall travel.

du wirst rei'sen, &c.

ich wer'de rei'sen, I shall travel.

du wer'dest rei'sen, &c.

*Compound Future.*

ich wer'de gereist' sein, I shall have travelled.

du wirst gereist' sein, &c.

ich wer'de gereist' sein, I shall have travelled.

du wer'dest gereist' sein, &c.

*Simple Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de rei'sen, I should travel.  
 du wü'r'dest rei'sen, &c.

*Compound Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de gerei'st' sein, I should have travelled.  
 du wü'r'dest gerei'st' sein, &c.

*Exercises on Neuter Verbs, conjugated with Sein.*

I have staid,	blei'ben, to stay.
Have I not staid?	. . . . .
I have not staid,	. . . . .
Hast thou run?	ren'nen, to run.
Thou hast not climbed,	klim'men, to climb.
Thou hast travelled,	rei'sen, to travel.
He has stumbled,	stol'pern, to stumble.
Has he sailed?	se'geln, to sail.
He is not come,	kom'men, to come.
Is he not gone?	ge'hen, to go.
Has she followed?	fol'gen, to follow.
It has not burst,	ber'sten, to burst.
We have proceeded,	fort'fahren, to proceed.
Have we run?	lau'fen, to run.
We have not wandered,	wan'dern, to wander.
Have we not slid?	glei'ten, to slide.
You have swum,	schwim'men, to swim.
Have you swum?	. . . . .
You have not crept,	krie'chen, to creep.
Have you not embarked?	ein'schiffen, to embark.
They have ridden,	rei'ten, to ride on horseback.
Have they ridden?	. . . . .
They have not ridden,	. . . . .
Have they not ridden?	. . . . .
I had walked,	ge'hen, to walk.
Had I drawn near?	na'her rü'cken, to draw near.
I had not fled,	flie'hen, to flee.
Had I not fallen?	fal'len, to fall.
Thou hadst slipped,	schlüp'fen, to slip.
Hadst thou sunk?	sink'en, to sink.
Thou hadst not penetrated,	dring'en, to penetrate.
He had departed,	schei'den, to depart.
Had he not departed?	. . . . .

It had darted,  
Had it not slipped?  
We had not pressed,  
You had not recovered,  
They had not slunk,

schie'sen, to dart.  
schlüp'sen, to slip.  
dring'en, to press.  
gene'sen, to recover.  
schlei'chen, to slink.

### 3. List of the Neuter Verbs conjugated with *haben*.

#### *Regular Verbs.*

äch'zen, to groan.  
al'tern, to grow old.  
ang'eln, to angle.  
an'tern, to anchor.  
ath'men, to breathe.  
sich bal'gen, to fight.  
be'ten, to pray.  
bet'teln, to beg alms.  
blin'zen, to blink.  
blü'hen, to bloom.  
brum'men, to grumble.  
bür'gen, to bail.  
bü'sen, to suffer for.  
dau'ern, to last, to endure.  
don'nern, to thunder.  
dür'sten, to be thirsty, or to  
thirst.  
ei'fern, to be zealous.  
ei'sen, to hasten.  
ei'tern, to suppurate.  
entsa'gen, to renounce.  
er'ben, to inherit.  
fau'len, to putrefy.  
feh'len, to fail.  
flec'ken, to stain.  
flü'chen, to curse.  
for'schen, to inquire.  
funk'eln, to glimmer.  
gäh'nen, to yawn.  
gau'keln, to juggle.  
gei'zen, to covet.  
han'deln, to trade.

har'ren, to wait for.  
handthie'ren, to trade, to  
bustle.  
haus'i'ren, to hawk about.  
her'schen, to govern.  
hink'en, to limp.  
hor'chen, to listen.  
hung'ern, to hunger.  
hüp'sen, to leap.  
hü'sten, to cough.  
ir'ren, to err.  
jauch'zen, to shout.  
kal'ben, to calve.  
kämp'fen, to combat.  
kar'gen, to be penurious.  
kei'men, to shoot out, or bud.  
kir'ren, to creak, or coo.  
klaf'sen, to cleave.  
kla'gen, to complain.  
klat'schen, to clap, to applaud.  
kle'ben, to cleave, or stick.  
klü'geln, to refine.  
knac'ken, to crack.  
knar'ren, to creak.  
knic'kern, to haggle, to act  
niggardly.  
kni'en, to kneel.  
kol'lern, to be unruly, to roll.  
krä'hen, to crow.  
kra'men, to trade.  
krank'en, to be ill.  
kreb'sen, to catch crabs.



frie'gen, to wage war.	schnd'beln, to bill.
la'chen, to laugh.	schuar'chen, to snore.
lan'den, to land.	schuar'tern, to gabble.
lär'men, to make a noise.	schwär'men, to swarm.
lau'ern, to watch.	schwin'deln, to grow giddy.
lau'ten, to sound.	schwit'zen, to sweat.
le'ben, to live.	se'geln, to sail.
mang'eln, to want.	seuf'zen, to sigh.
mei'nen, to mean.	sor'gen, to care.
mur'meln, to grumble.	spazie'ren, to take a walk.
or'geln, to play the hand-organ.	spie'len, to play.
ra'sen, to be mad.	steu'ern, to steer a ship.
ras'ten, to rest.	studi'ren, to study.
rau'chen, to smoke.	stür'men, to storm.
räu'men, to remove.	stut'zen, to butt at.
rau'schen, to rush.	su'deln, to soil.
räu'spern, to clear the throat.	sum'men, to hum.
rech'nen, to reckon.	sün'digen, to sin.
rech'ten, to right, to go to law.	tap'pen, to grope.
re'den, to speak.	thro'nen, to be enthroned.
rei'sen, to ripen.	to'ben, to rage.
rei'men, to rhyme.	tö'nen, to sound.
ru'dern, to row.	trach'ten, to endeavour.
säu'men, to tarry.	trau'ern, to mourn.
sau'sen, to whiz.	triumphi'ren, to triumph.
scha'den, to hurt.	trö'deln, to deal in frippery.
sich schä'men, to be ashamed.	wa'chen, to wake, or to be awake.
schau'dern, to shiver.	wei'nen, to cry.
scher'zen, to joke.	willfah'ren, to comply.
schim'meln, to mould.	zä'gen, to despair, to despond.
schluc'ken, to swallow.	zant'en, to quarrel.
schmach'ten, to languish.	zie'len, to aim.
schmar'zen, to smack.	zot'teln, to stagger.
schmä'h'len, to scold.	zür'nen, to be angry.
schmau'sen, to feast.	
schmut'zen, to soil, to dirty.	

## Irregular Verbs.

sich befe'i'sen, to be studious.	Pei'sen, to scold.
fech'ten, to fight.	Fling'en, to sound.
gefal'len, to please.	lei'den, to suffer.
glei'chen, to resemble.	rei'ten, to ride.

ring'en, to wrestle.  
 saufen, to drink hard.  
 schei'nen, to appear.  
 schla'fen, to sleep.  
 schnau'ben, to snort.  
 schrei'en, to cry.  
 schwei'gen, to be silent.  
 schwim'men, to swim.

schwin'den, to be reduced, to  
 dwindle away.  
 schwö'ren, to swear.  
 sin'nen, to think, to meditate.  
 sit'zen, to sit.  
 strei'ten, to fight.  
 verbr'e'chen, to commit a crime.

#### 4. List of the Neuter Verbs conjugated with Sein.

##### *Regular Verbs.*

aus'arten, to degenerate.  
 begeg'nen, to meet.  
 behar'ren, to continue.  
 erblin'den, to grow blind.  
 ergrim'men, to grow angry.  
 erkäl'ten, to grow cold.  
 erstar'ren, to be chilled.  
 erstaun'en, to be astonished.  
 flat'tern, to flit, to flutter.  
 gelang'en, to get, to attain.  
 gewöh'nen, to be accustomed.  
 klet'tern, to climb.  
 rei'sen, to travel.  
 ren'nen, to run.  
 se'geln, to sail.  
 stol'pern, to stumble.

stran'den, to strand.  
 strau'cheln, to trip.  
 stut'zen, to start.  
 tra'b'en, to trot.  
 vera'l'ten, to grow old.  
 verar'men, to grow poor.  
 verkrum'men, to grow crooked.  
 verlah'men, to grow lame.  
 versäu'ern, to grow sour, to  
 sour.  
 verstum'men, to grow dumb.  
 verwe'sen, to decay.  
 verwil'dern, to grow wild.  
 verza'gen, to despond.  
 wan'deln, to walk.  
 wan'dern, to wander.

##### *Irregular Verbs.*

ab'fallen, to fall down.  
 ber'sten, to burst.  
 blei'b'en, to remain.  
 erfrie'ren, to freeze to death.  
 erschäl'ten, to resound.  
 erschrec'ken, to be terrified.  
 fah'ren, to fare, to ride in a  
 vehicle.  
 fal'len, to fall.  
 flie'gen, to fly.  
 flie'h'en, to flee.

flie'sen, to flow.  
 frie'ren, to freeze.  
 gedei'h'en, to prosper.  
 ge'h'en, to go.  
 gene'sen, to recover.  
 glei'ten, to slide, to slip.  
 klim'men, to climb.  
 kom'men, to come.  
 kri'e'chen, to creep.  
 lau'fen, to run.  
 rei'ten, to ride.

rin'nen, to leak, to run.	stei'gen, to mount.
schlei'chen, to sneak.	ster'ben, to die.
schrei'ten, to stride.	verblei'chen, to grow pale.
schwel'len, to swell.	verlö'schen, to become extin-
schwim'men, to swim.	guished.
schwin'den, to shrink, to dwindle away.	verschwin'den, to disappear.
sit'zen, to sit.	wach'sen, to grow.
spring'en, to jump.	wei'chen, to yield.
ste'hen, to stand.	wer'den, to become.

*Obs.* Those verbs which occur in both lists, are sometimes conjugated with *haben*, and sometimes with *sein*. (See under the next head.)

#### 5. Of Neuter Verbs conjugated with either *haben* or *sein*, according to their signification.

1. Some take *haben*, to denote the completion of an action or a state, and *sein* to denote the condition of a thing; as,

Das Feuer hat aus'gebrannt, the fire has burnt out.

Das Kamin' ist aus'gebrannt, the chimney is burnt out.

Die Koh'len ha'ben aus'gedampft, the coals have done smoking.

Die Feuch'tigkeit ist aus'gedampft, the damp is evaporated.

2. Verbs expressive of motion take *sein*, when the place, or the manner of the motion, is referred to; but take *haben*, when the simple action is designated; as,

Ich bin in die Stadt gerit'ten, I have ridden or rode into the city.

Ich bin lang'sam gerit'ten, I have ridden or rode slowly.

Ich bin den ganzen Tag gerit'ten, I have been riding the whole day.

Ich ha'be das Pferd gerit'ten, I have ridden the horse.

Der Feind ist in die Stadt gedrung'en, the enemy has penetrated into the city.

Er hat in mich gedrung'en, he has urged me.

Wir sind in die Stadt geei'let, we have hastened into the city.

Wir ha'ben mit der Sa'che geei'let, we have hastened with the affair.

Wir sind fort'gefahren, we have left or gone on in a vehicle.

Wir ha'ben fort'gefahren zu ar'beiten, we have continued to labor.

Der Vo'gel ist in das Feld geflat'tert, the bird has fluttered into the field.

Er hat lang'e geflat'tert, it has been long fluttering.

Er ist ihm gefolgt', he has followed him.

Er hat mei'nen Leh'ren gefolgt', he has followed my precepts.

Die Er'de ist gefro'ren, the earth is frozen.

Wir ha'ben gefro'ren, we have been frozen.

Es hat gefro'ren, it has frozen.

Die Rei'ter sind schon aufgeseffen, the horsemen are already seated.

Ich ha'be die gan'ze Nacht aufgeseffen, I have sat up the whole night.

Ich bin in das Haus gegangen', I have gone into the house.

Ich ha'be mich mü'de gegangen', I have tired myself with walking.

3. Some verbs expressive of motion require *sein* when taken in the proper sense, and *haben* in the figurative sense; as,

Wir sind gelaufen', we have run.

Das Fass hat gelaufen', the cask has leaked.

Wir sind nach dem Zie'le geron'nen, we have run towards the goal, or we have run a race.

Die Augen ha'ben geron'nen, the eyes have streamed.

Die Thrä'nen sind geflossen', the tears have flowed.

Die Röh're hat geflossen', the pipe has leaked.

## B. *Supplementary Tenses of Reflective Verbs.*

Sich lie'ben, to love one's self. (See page 100.)

*Infinitive.*

*Perfect.*

sich geliebt' ha'ben, to have loved one's self.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

*Perfect.*

ich ha'be mich geliebt', I have loved myself.

du hast dich geliebt', &c.

ich ha'be mich geliebt', I have loved myself.

du ha'best dich geliebt', &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich ha'te mich geliebt', I had ich ha'te mich geliebt', I had  
 loved myself. loved myself.  
 du ha'test dich geliebt', &c. du ha'test dich geliebt', &c.

*Simple Future.*

ich wer'de mich lie'ben, I shall ich wer'de mich lie'ben, I shall  
 love myself. love myself.  
 du wirst dich lie'ben, &c. du wer'dest dich lie'ben, &c.

*Compound Future.*

ich wer'de mich geliebt' ha'ben, ich wer'de mich geliebt' ha'ben,  
 I shall have loved myself. I shall have loved myself.  
 du wirst dich geliebt' ha'ben, du wer'dest dich geliebt' ha'ben,  
 &c. &c.

*Simple Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de mich lie'ben, I should love myself.  
 du wü'rdest dich lie'ben, &c.

*Compound Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de mich geliebt' ha'ben, I should have loved myself.  
 du wü'rdest dich geliebt' ha'ben, &c.

*C. Supplementary Tenses of Impersonal Verbs.*

The supplementary tenses of impersonal verbs are formed exactly like those of complete (active or reflective) verbs; as,

Reg'nen, to rain. (See page 102.)

*Indicative.* PERF. es hat gereg'net; PLUPERF. es ha'te gereg'net; SIMP. FUT. es wird reg'nen; COMP. FUT. es wird gereg'net ha'ben.

*Subjunctive.* PERF. es ha'be gereg'net; PLUPERF. es ha'te gereg'net; SIMP. FUT. es wer'de reg'nen; COMP. FUT. es wer'de gereg'net ha'ben.

SIMP. COND. es wü'r'de reg'nen; COMP. COND. es wü'r'de gereg'net ha'ben.

In the same manner are formed the reflective impersonal verbs; as,

**Sich är'gern**, to be vexed. (See page 103).

*Indicative.* PERF. es hat mich geär'gert; PLUPERF. es hat'te mich geär'gert; SIMP. FUT. es wird mich är'gern; COMP. FUT. es wird mich geär'gert ha'ben.

*Subjunctive.* PERF. es ha'be mich geär'gert; SIMP. FUT. es wer'de mich är'gern; COMP. FUT. es wer'de mich geär'gert ha'ben.

SIMP. COND. es wü'r'de mich är'gern; COMP. COND. es wü'r'de mich geär'gert ha'ben.

#### D. *Supplementary Tenses of Compound Verbs.*

The particle with which the simple verb is compounded, is never separated from it in any of the supplementary tenses.\* Accordingly there is no difference between separable and inseparable compound verbs, with respect to the supplementary tenses; they are formed exactly like those of simple verbs. Examples:

**Aufhalten**, to detain. (See page 105).

*Infinitive.* PERF. auf'gehalten ha'ben.

*Indicative.* PERF. ich ha'be auf'gehalten; PLUPERF. ich hat'te auf'gehalten; SIMP. FUT. ich wer'de auf'halten; COMP. FUT. ich wer'de auf'gehalten ha'ben.

*Subjunctive.* PERF. ich ha'be auf'gehalten; PLUPERF. ich hat'te auf'gehalten; SIMP. FUT. ich wer'de auf'halten; COMP. FUT. ich wer'de auf'gehalten ha'ben.

SIMP. COND. ich wü'r'de auf'halten; COMP. COND. ich wü'r'de auf'gehalten ha'ben.

**Behal'ten**, to retain. (See page 107.)

*Infinitive.* PERF. behal'ten ha'ben.

*Indicative.* PERF. ich ha'be behal'ten; PLUPERF. ich hat'te behal'ten; SIMP. FUT. ich wer'de behal'ten; COMP. FUT. ich wer'de behal'ten ha'ben.

*Subjunctive.* PERF. ich ha'be behal'ten; PLUPERF. ich hat'te be-

---

\* The reason is obvious; since all the supplementary tenses are formed by joining the auxiliary verb either to the infinitive mood or to the past participle; in neither of which does such a separation of the simple verb from the preposition take place.

hal'ten ; SIMP. FUT. ich wer'de behal'ten ; COMP. FUT. ich wer'de behal'ten ha'ben.

SIMP. COND. ich wü'r'de behal'ten ; COMP. COND. ich wü'r'de behal'ten ha'ben.

### § 7. PASSIVE VERBS.

The passive voice of active verbs is formed by joining the past participle of the verb, with the different moods and tenses of the auxiliary *wer'den* ; with this only difference, that the first syllable, *ge*, of the past participle *gewor'den*, is dropt in all its combinations with the verb. Thus we say, *ich bin geliebt' wor'den*, I have been loved, (instead of *ich bin geliebt geworden*.)

*Conjugation of the Passive Verb, Geliebt' wer'den, to be loved.*

#### Infinitive.

*Pres. geliebt' wer'den, to be loved.*

*Perf. geliebt' wor'den sein, to have been loved.*

#### Participle.

*geliebt', loved.*

#### Indicative.

##### Present.

##### Singular.

*ich wer'de geliebt', I am loved.*

*du wirßt geliebt', thou art loved.*

*er, sie, or es wird geliebt', he, she, or it is loved.*

##### Plural.

*wir wer'den geliebt', we are loved.*

*ihr wer'det geliebt', you are loved.*

*sie wer'den geliebt', they are loved.*

#### Imperfect.

##### Singular.

*ich wü'r'de or wärd geliebt', I was loved.*

*du wü'rdest or wärdst geliebt', thou wast loved.*

*er wü'r'de or wärd geliebt', he was loved.*

*Plural.*

wir wur'den geliebt', we were loved.  
ihr wur'det geliebt', you were loved.  
sie wur'den geliebt', they were loved.

*Perfect.**Singular.*

ich bin geliebt' wor'den, I have been loved.  
du bist geliebt' wor'den, thou hast been loved.  
er ist geliebt' wor'den, he has been loved.

*Plural.*

wir sind geliebt' wor'den, we have been loved.  
ihr seid geliebt' wor'den, you have been loved.  
sie sind geliebt' wor'den, they have been loved.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

ich war geliebt' wor'den, I had been loved.  
du warst geliebt' wor'den, thou hadst been loved.  
er war geliebt' wor'den, he had been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wa'ren geliebt' wor'den, we had been loved.  
ihr wa'ret geliebt' wor'den, you had been loved.  
sie wa'ren geliebt' wor'den, they had been loved.

*Simple Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt' wer'den, I shall or will be loved.  
du wirst geliebt' wer'den, thou wilt be loved.  
er wird geliebt' wer'den, he will be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt' wer'den, we shall or will be loved.  
ihr wer'det geliebt' wer'den, you will be loved.  
sie wer'den geliebt' wer'den, they will be loved.



*Compound Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt' wor'den sein, I shall have been loved.  
du wirst geliebt' wor'den sein, thou wilt have been loved.  
er wird geliebt' wor'den sein, he will have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt' wor'den sein, we shall have been loved.  
ihr wer'det geliebt' wor'den sein, you will have been loved.  
sie wer'den geliebt' wor'den sein, they will have been loved.

*Subjunctive.**Present.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt', I may be loved.  
du wer'dest geliebt', thou mayst be loved.  
er wer'de geliebt', he may be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt', we may be loved.  
ihr wer'det geliebt', you may be loved.  
sie wer'den geliebt', they may be loved.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich wär'de geliebt', I might be loved.  
du wär'dest geliebt', thou mightst be loved.  
er wär'de geliebt', he might be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wär'den geliebt', we might be loved.  
ihr wär'det geliebt', you might be loved.  
sie wär'den geliebt', they might be loved.

*Perfect.**Singular.*

ich sei geliebt' wor'den, I may have been loved.  
du seist geliebt' wor'den, thou mayst have been loved.  
er sei geliebt' wor'den, he may have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir sei'en geliebt' wor'den, we may have been loved.  
ihr sei'et geliebt' wor'den, you may have been loved.  
sie sei'en geliebt' wor'den, they may have been loved.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

ich wä're geliebt' wor'den, I might have been loved.  
du wä'rest geliebt' wor'den, thou mightst have been loved.  
er wä're geliebt' wor'den, he might have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wä'ren geliebt' wor'den, we might have been loved.  
ihr wä'ret geliebt' wor'den, you might have been loved.  
sie wä'ren geliebt' wor'den, they might have been loved.

*Simple Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt' wer'den, I shall or will be loved.  
du wer'dest geliebt' wer'den, thou wilt be loved.  
er wer'de geliebt' wer'den, he will be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt' wer'den, we shall or will be loved.  
ihr wer'det geliebt' wer'den, you will be loved.  
sie wer'den geliebt' wer'den, they will be loved.

*Compound Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt' wor'den sein, I shall have been loved.  
du wer'dest geliebt' wor'den sein, thou wilt have been loved.  
er wer'de geliebt' wor'den sein, he will have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt' wor'den sein, we shall have been loved.  
 ihr wer'det geliebt' wor'den sein, you will have been loved.  
 sie wer'den geliebt' wor'den sein, they will have been loved.

*Simple Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de geliebt' wer'den, I should or would be loved.  
 du wü'r'dest geliebt' wer'den, thou wouldst be loved.  
 er wü'r'de geliebt' wer'den, he would be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wü'r'den geliebt' wer'den, we should or would be loved.  
 ihr wü'r'det geliebt' wer'den, you would be loved.  
 sie wü'r'den geliebt' wer'den, they would be loved.

*Compound Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de geliebt' wor'den sein, I should have been loved.  
 du wü'r'dest geliebt' wor'den sein, thou wouldst have been loved.  
 er wü'r'de geliebt' wor'den sein, he would have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wü'r'den geliebt' wor'den sein, we should have been loved.  
 ihr wü'r'det geliebt' wor'den sein, you would have been loved.  
 sie wü'r'den geliebt' wor'den sein, they would have been loved.

*Imperative.**Singular.*

wer'de (du) geliebt', be (thou) loved.  
 wer'de er geliebt', let him be loved.

*Plural.*

wer'den wir geliebt' let us be loved.  
 wer'det (ihr) geliebt', be (ye or you) loved.  
 wer'den sie geliebt', let them be loved.

*Observation.* The past participle of the verb is preserved throughout the passive voice, whether that participle be regularly or irregularly formed. There is, accordingly, no difference between regular and irregular verbs in regard to the formation and declension of their passive voice. Thus the passive of the irregular verb *sehen*, to see, is formed in the same manner as that of the regular verb *lieben*, to love, by joining the past participle *gesehen*; seen, to the auxiliary verb *werden*; as; *gesehen werden* to be seen; *ich werde gesehen*, I am seen; *ich bin gesehen worden*, I have been seen; &c.

*Exercises on the Passive Verbs (regular and irregular).*

*Indicative.*

*Present.*

Am I not praised?	<i>loben</i> , to praise.
Is it not lost?	<i>verlieren</i> , irr. to lose.
Are they not rubbed?	<i>reiben</i> , irr. to rub.

*Imperfect.*

Was I not beaten?	<i>schlagen</i> , irr. to beat.
We were not taught,	<i>lehren</i> , to teach.
Were you not preferred?	<i>vorziehen</i> , irr. to prefer.
They were read,	<i>lesen</i> , irr. to read.

*Perfect.*

I have been chosen,	<i>wählen</i> , to choose.
Thou hast been blamed,	<i>schelten</i> , to blame.
He has been bitten,	<i>beißen</i> , irr. to bite.
We have been carried,	<i>tragen</i> , irr. to carry.
You have not been punished,	<i>strafen</i> , to punish.
Have they been loaded?	<i>laden</i> , irr. to load.

*Pluperfect.*

Had I not been absolved?	<i>losprechen</i> , irr. to absolve.
Had it been measured?	<i>meszen</i> , irr. to measure.
We had been hindered,	<i>hindern</i> , to hinder.
They had not been given,	<i>geben</i> , irr. to give.

## Futures.

I shall be weakened,	schwächen, to weaken.
Shall we not be seized?	greifen, irr. to seize.
Will they not be washed?	waschen, irr. to wash.
You will have been seen,	sehen, irr. to see.
Will they not have been rewarded?	belohnen, to reward.

## Conditional Tenses.

Should I not be shunned?	meiden, irr. to shun.
He would not be revenged.	rächen, irr. to revenge.
Would it not be stolen?	stehlen, irr. to steal.
Should we not have been caught?	fangen, irr. to catch.
You would not have been hidden,	bergen, irr. to hide.
They would not have begun,	beginnen, irr. to begin.

## Promiscuous Exercises.

La'citus erzählt von den alten Deutschen, "sie glauben, dass es der<sup>4</sup> Erhabenheit<sup>5</sup> himmlischer<sup>6</sup> Wesen<sup>7</sup> nicht<sup>2</sup> angemessen<sup>3</sup> sei<sup>1</sup>, die<sup>3</sup> Götter<sup>4</sup> in<sup>5</sup> Wände<sup>6</sup> ein<sup>2</sup> zu<sup>1</sup> schließen<sup>2</sup>, oder sie<sup>3</sup> in<sup>4</sup> menschenartiger<sup>5</sup> Gestalt<sup>6</sup> dar<sup>2</sup> zu<sup>1</sup> stellen<sup>2</sup>. Sie heiligen Wälder und Haine und mit Namen von Göttern bezeichnen<sup>2</sup> sie<sup>1</sup> das geheimnisvolle Wesen, welches sie nur in Andacht schauen."

Sie zeichneten sich aus durch Freiheitsliebe und Treue; die Frauen waren bei ihnen höher geachtet als bei den weit gebildeteren Griechen und Römern; die Ehen wurden heilig gehalten: und gute Sitten galten bei ihnen mehr als anderwärts gute Gesetze.

Anacharsis lachte als er sah wie Solon sich bemühte die<sup>3</sup> Ungerechtigkeit<sup>4</sup> und<sup>5</sup> Habsucht<sup>6</sup> seiner<sup>7</sup> Mitbürger<sup>8</sup> durch<sup>9</sup> geschriebene<sup>10</sup> Gesetze<sup>11</sup> zu<sup>1</sup> vertreiben<sup>2</sup>. Diese schienen ihm den<sup>4</sup> Spinnengeweben<sup>4</sup> ähnlich<sup>3</sup> zu<sup>1</sup> sein<sup>2</sup>, welche das<sup>2</sup> Schwache<sup>3</sup> und<sup>4</sup> Kleine<sup>5</sup> das<sup>6</sup> sich<sup>6</sup> in<sup>7</sup> ihnen<sup>8</sup> finge<sup>6</sup>, festhielten<sup>1</sup>, von<sup>4</sup> den<sup>5</sup> Starken<sup>6</sup> und<sup>7</sup> Großen<sup>8</sup> aber<sup>1</sup> zerrissen<sup>3</sup> würden.<sup>2</sup> Dar auf soll<sup>2</sup> Solon<sup>1</sup> geantwortet haben, die Wen-

sehen hießten ih<sup>re</sup> Bünd<sup>n</sup>isse, wenn es kei<sup>n</sup>em<sup>3</sup> von<sup>4</sup> bei<sup>d</sup>en<sup>5</sup>  
Thei<sup>l</sup>en<sup>6</sup> nüt<sup>z</sup>lich<sup>2</sup> sei<sup>1</sup> sie<sup>9</sup> zu<sup>7</sup> bre<sup>ch</sup>en<sup>8</sup>; und er wol<sup>l</sup>e sei<sup>n</sup>e<sup>2</sup>  
Ge<sup>h</sup>er<sup>z</sup>e<sup>3</sup> zu<sup>7</sup>träglich<sup>5</sup> für<sup>6</sup> ei<sup>n</sup>e<sup>7</sup> Bür<sup>g</sup>er<sup>8</sup> ma<sup>ch</sup>en<sup>1</sup>, daß  
es für<sup>4</sup> je<sup>d</sup>en<sup>5</sup> bes<sup>s</sup>er<sup>3</sup> sei<sup>n</sup> sol<sup>l</sup>e<sup>1</sup> sie<sup>1</sup> zu<sup>6</sup> hal<sup>t</sup>en<sup>7</sup>, als<sup>8</sup>  
zu<sup>9</sup> über<sup>t</sup>re<sup>t</sup>en<sup>10</sup>.

Wol<sup>l</sup>e was du kannst, so kannst du was du willst.

erählen, relate.

alt, ancient.

deutsch, German.

glauben, to believe.

angemessen, becoming.

Erhabenheit, dignity.

himmlisch, heavenly.

Wesen, being.

einschließen, to include.

Wand, wall.

oder, or.

darstellen, to represent.

menschenartig, human.

heiligen, to consecrate.

Bald, wood.

Hain, grove.

Malt, aby.

Nahme, name.

bezeichnen, to signify.

geheimnisvoll, mysterious.

erschauen, to contemplate.

nur, only.

Unmacht, dyspotion.

auszeichnen, to distinguish.

durch, through.

Freiheitsliebe, love of liberty.

Ereue, faithfulness.

Frau, woman.

bei, among.

achten, to esteem.

hoch, high.

weit, far.

gebildet, cultivated.

Ehe, marriage.

halten, to hold.

heilig, sacred.

Sitte, custom.

gelten, to have effect.

als, than.

Gesetz, law.

anderwärts, elsewhere.

lachen, to laugh.

als, when.

sehen, to see.

sich bemühen, to exert one's  
self.

vertreiben, to expel.

Ungerechtigkeit, injustice.

Gabsucht, avarice.

Mitbürger, fellow-citizen.

schreiben, to write.

scheinen, to appear.

ähnlich, similar.

Spinnengewebe, cobweb.

festhalten, to arrest.

schwach, weak.

klein, small.

sich fangen, to be caught.

zerreißen, to tear.

stark, strong.

groß, great.

darauf, thereupon.

soll (from sol<sup>l</sup>en), is said.

antworten, to answer.

halten, to keep.

Bündnis, bonds.

wenn, when.

nützlich, profitable.

Theil, party.

brechen, to break.

wollen, to will.

machen, to make.

zutraglich, advantageous.

Bürger, citizen.

es solle (from sollen), it shall  
also, than. können, to be able.  
übertreten, to transgress. so, thus.

It is reported<sup>4</sup> of<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> Sybarites<sup>3</sup>, that they killed<sup>4</sup> all<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> cocks<sup>3</sup>, that they might<sup>6</sup> dream<sup>7</sup> out<sup>6</sup> their morning-dreams<sup>3</sup> without<sup>4</sup> disturbance<sup>5</sup>.

The philosopher Bias being<sup>4</sup> asked, what animal he thought<sup>4</sup> (for<sup>1</sup>) the<sup>2</sup> most<sup>3</sup> hurtful<sup>3</sup>, replied, Of wild creatures, a tyrant; and of tame (ones), a flatterer.

The Duke of Ossuna, viceroy of Naples, having got leave to release some slaves, went on board the galley, near Barcelona; and passing<sup>6</sup> through<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> crew<sup>3</sup> of<sup>4</sup> slaves<sup>5</sup>, he<sup>3</sup> asked<sup>7</sup> several of them what their crimes were. They all excused themselves on different pretences; one saying that he had<sup>3</sup> been<sup>4</sup> sent<sup>2</sup> thither<sup>1</sup> by the malice of his enemies; another by the corruption of the judge; but all (of them) unjustly. Among the rest was a little sturdy black fellow, and the duke asking him what<sup>3</sup> he<sup>3</sup> had<sup>6</sup> been<sup>7</sup> sent<sup>5</sup> thither<sup>4</sup> for<sup>1</sup>, "My lord," said he, "I cannot deny but I am<sup>4</sup> justly<sup>1</sup> sent<sup>3</sup> hither<sup>2</sup>. For, wanting money, I<sup>2</sup> carried<sup>1</sup> off<sup>1</sup> a purse not far from Tarragona, in order to<sup>4</sup> keep<sup>5</sup> me<sup>3</sup> from<sup>2</sup> starving<sup>3</sup>." The duke, with<sup>3</sup> a<sup>4</sup> little<sup>5</sup> staff<sup>5</sup> which<sup>6</sup> he<sup>7</sup> had<sup>11</sup> in<sup>8</sup> his<sup>9</sup> hand<sup>10</sup>, gave<sup>1</sup> him<sup>2</sup> two or three taps on his shoulder, saying, "You rogue, what are you doing here among so many honest, innocent men? get you out of their company." Accordingly he<sup>3</sup> was<sup>1</sup> set<sup>4</sup> free<sup>3</sup>, and the rest were left (in order) to<sup>4</sup> tug<sup>5</sup> at<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> oar<sup>3</sup>.

of, von. (Dat.)  
the Sybarite, der Sybari'te.  
to report, erzäh'len.  
that, daß.  
cock, Hahn.  
to kill, tö'den.  
that, damit.  
morning dream, Mor'gen-  
traum.  
to dream out, aus'träumen.  
I may, ich kann.  
philosopher, Philosoph'.  
being asked, translate, when  
he was<sup>2</sup> asked<sup>1</sup>; when, da,

to ask, fra'gen.  
animal, Thier.  
for, für. (Accus.)  
hurtful, schäd'lich.  
to think, hal'ten.  
to reply, ant'worten.  
of, un'ter. (Dat.)  
wild, wild.  
creature, Geschöpf.  
tyrant, Tyrann'.  
tame, zahm.  
flatterer, Schmeich'ler.  
Duke, Herz'zog.  
of, von.

vi. boy, Bi'cet.  
 Naples, Nea'pel.  
 having got leave, da er Er-  
 laub'nis erhal'ten hat'te.  
 slave, Skla've.  
 to release, zu befrei'en.  
 to go, geh'n.  
 on board of, auf. (*Accus.*)  
 the galley, die Gale're.  
 near, bei.  
 passing, als er zing.  
 through, durch. (*Accus.*)  
 the crew, der Hau'se.  
 of, von.  
 crime, Verbre'chen.  
 to excuse, entschul'digen.  
 on, un'ter.  
 different, verschie'den.  
 pretence, Vorwand.  
 saying, indem' er sag'te.  
 hither, dahin'.  
 to send, sen'den.  
 by, durch.  
 malice, Bos'heit.  
 enemy, Feind.  
 another, ein an'drer.  
 corruption, Best'e'hung.  
 judge, Rich'ter.  
 but, a'ber.  
 unjustly, un'gerechter Wei'se.  
 among, un'ter. (*Dat.*)  
 the rest, die übrigen.  
 to be, sich befin'den.  
 little, klein.  
 sturdy, verb.  
 black, schwarz.  
 fellow, Bur'sche.  
 asking him, als—ihn frag'te.  
 for what, warum'.  
 lord, Herr.  
 to say, sa gen.  
 to deny, leug'nen.  
 but, daß.

justly, gerech'ter Wei'se.  
 am sent, ge'sandt wor'den bin.  
 for, denn.  
 wanting money, da mir Geld  
 fehl'te.  
 to carry off, entwen'den.  
 purse, Bör'se.  
 far, weit.  
 from, von.  
 in order to, um.  
 from, vom (von dem).  
 starving, Verhung'ern.  
 to keep, zu bewah'ren.  
 to give, ge'ben.  
 with, mit. (*Dat.*)  
 little staff, Stab'chen.  
 in, in. (*Dat.*)  
 his, translate, the.  
 hand, Hand.  
 or, o'der.  
 tap, Streich.  
 saying, indem' er sag'te.  
 you, translate, thou.  
 rogue, Schelm.  
 to do, ma'chen.  
 here, hier.  
 among, un'ter. (*Dat.*)  
 so, so.  
 many, viele.  
 honest, ehr'lich.  
 innocent, un'schuldig.  
 men, Leute.  
 to get one's self out, sich fort-  
 machen aus. (*Dat.*)  
 company, Gesell'schaft.  
 accordingly, somit'.  
 to set free, in Frei'heit set'zen.  
 the rest, die übrigen.  
 to leave, zurück'lassen.  
 in order, um.  
 at, an. (*Dat.*)  
 oar, Ru'der.  
 to tug, sich ab zu ar'beiten.



## CHAPTER VII.

## ADVERBS.

EVERY adjective, in its simple form, may be used as an adverb; *as, dieser Mann ist ehrlich, this man is honest; and dieser Mann han'dest' ehrlich, this man acts honestly.*

The following are the adverbs which most frequently occur in writing and conversation.

## § 1. DIFFERENT KINDS OF ADVERBS.

## A. Adverbs of Place.

wo, where?  
woher, whence?  
wohin, whither?  
hier, allhier, here.  
hieher, hither.  
da, dort, dastibst, there.  
da'her, dort'her, thence.  
dahin, dort'hin, thither.  
ir'gends, ir'gendwo, some-  
where.  
nir'gends, nir'gendwo, no-  
where.  
an'derswo, or an'derwärts,  
elsewhere.  
allenthal'ben, all'wo'gen, or  
all'wo'gen, everywhere.  
in'nen, darin'nen, or in'nen,  
within.  
au'sen, drau'sen, without.  
in'wendig, internally.  
aus'wendig, externally, out-  
ward.

o'ben; dro'ben, above.  
darauf, or drauf, upon it,  
thereon.  
ab, off, down.  
auf und nie'der, or auf und  
ab, up and down.  
ein und aus, in and out.  
hin und her, to and from.  
hier und da (dort), here and  
there.  
fort, forth.  
hin'ter, behind.  
vorn, before, fronting.  
von wau'nen, from whence?  
von hin'nen, from hence.  
nah, nah'e, near.  
fern, fer'ne, far.  
weit ab, far off.  
na'he bei, hard by.  
an'wesend, or ge'genwa'rtig,  
present.  
ab'wesend, absent.

## B. Adverbs of Time.

wann, when?  
dann, alsdann, then.

nun, jetzt, now.  
bald, soon.

so gleich, un verzüglih, immed-  
iately.

schon, already.

früh, early.

spät, late.

je, je mals, ever.

nie mals, never.

noch, still, yet.

noch nicht, not yet.

beizeiten, betimes.

allzeit, always.

zuzeiten, zuweilen, or bis-

weilen, sometimes.

einst, einstens, once.

neulich, lately, newly.

lestens, spätesten, leasthin,

lastly, lately.

zuweilen, at same times.

vor mals, or ehemals, for-

merly.

nach mals, or nachher, after-

wards.

wie der, wiederum, again.

seither, seit, since.

heute, to-day.

gestern, yesteday.

vor gestern, the day before

yesterday.

morgen, tomorrow.

übermorgen, the day after

tomorrow.

mit tags, at noon.

vor mittags, before noon.

nach mittags, afternoon.

jimmer, always.

stets, continually, always,

ever.

so eben, just now.

lange, schon lange, or längst,

long ago, a long time since.

vorlängst, long ago, &c.

unlängst, or ohnlängst, not long

ago.

bisher, hitherto.

damals, at that time, &c.

### C. Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation.

ja, yes.

nein, no.

nicht, not.

wahrlich, truly, verily.

freilich, ja freilich, or ja

wahl, yes to be sure, sure-

ly, to be sure, yes.

allerdings, entirely, by all

means.

gar nicht, not at all.

keineswegs, mit nichten, by

no means.

kaum, hardly.

in der That, indeed.

unfehlbar, doubtless.

schlechterdings, absolutely.

wirklich, really.

immermehr, ever.

nimmermehr, never.

glaublich, credibly.

vielleicht, perhaps.

vermuthlich, probably.

durchaus nicht, absolutely not.

unglaublich, incredibly.

### D. Adverbs of Various Use.

meist, fast, schier, almost.

beinahe, nearly.

genug, genug, enough.

voll, völlig, completely.

obenhin', superficially.	böse, badly.
vollends, fully.	also, thus.
theils, partly.	ungemein', uncommonly.
un'gefähr, or ohn'gefähr, about.	kurz, in short.
als, wie, as.	überaus', exceedingly.
wie, how?	zugleich', at the same time.
warum', why?	zusammen, together.
da'rum, therefore.	sämm'tlich, all together.
gleich, directly, equally.	sach'te, softly.
an'ders, otherwise.	son'derlich, beson'ders, espe-
glei'cherweise, likewise.	cially.
gleichwie', gleich als, like as.	hauptsäch'lich, chiefly.
so, so.	mit Fleis, on purpose.
sehr, gar, very, much.	vielmehr', rather.
zu, all zu, too.	red'lich, sincerely.
ganz, gän'zlich, whole, wholly.	recht, right.
wohl, gut, well.	un'recht, wrong.
n'bel, schlecht, ill.	end'lich, lastly.

## § 2. OF THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are either original words, as, ja, yes; nein, no; wo, where; wie, how; or adjectives used as adverbs; or they are formed from nouns or adjectives. To this end either the letter *s* (the ancient universal characteristic of the genitive case) or the syllable *lich* is added to the noun or adjective. The additional *s* always makes the word an adverb, without making it an adjective; while most of the words formed by adding *lich* are properly adjectives, which may be used also as adverbs.

1. The following substantives, denoting parts of the natural day, are changed into adverbs by an additional *s*.

### Substantives.

der Tag, the day;  
die Nacht, the night;  
der Mor'gen, the morning;

der A'bend, the evening;

der Vor'mittag, the forenoon;

### Adverbs.

tags, des Tags, in the day-time.  
nachts, des Nachts, in the night.  
mor'gens, des Mor'gens, in the morning.

a'bends, des A'bends, in the evening.

vor'mittags, des Vor'mittags, in the forenoon.

der Nach'mittag, the afternoon; nach'mittags, des Nach'mittags,  
in the afternoon.

der Mit'tag, the noon; mit'tags, des Mit'tags, at noon.

So, also, some adjectives become adverbs, by means of an additional *s*; *as*, *bereits*, already, from *bereit*, ready; *stets*, constantly, from *stet*, constant; *beson'ders*, particularly, from *beson'der*, particular; *an'ders*, otherwise, from *an'der*, other; *rechts*, to the right hand, from *recht*, right; *links*, to the left, from *linf*, left, &c. Numerals become adverbs by the addition of *ens* or *tens*; *as*, *er'stens*, in the first place, or first; *zwei'tens*, secondly; *drit'tens*, thirdly, &c. And the following words; *bes'tens*, in the best manner; *mei'stens*, mostly; *e'hestens*, by the first opportunity; *höch'stens*, at the most; *ü'brigens*, as for the rest.

2. There are some adverbs formed by the addition of *sich*, which cannot be used as adjectives; *as*, *frei'sich*, indeed, from *frei*, free; *wahr'sich*, truly, from *wahr*, true; *güt'sich*, goodly, from *gut*, good.

### § 3. THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are invariable, except that some admit the degrees of comparison; *as*,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
gut, or wohl, well;	be'sser, better;	am (zum) bes'ten, best.
ü'bel, ill;	schlim'mer, worse;	schlimm'sten, worst.
viel, much;	mehr, more;	mei'sten, most.
wen'ig, little, few.	wen'iger, less;	wen'igsten, least.
na'he, near;	na'h'er, nearer;	na'ch'sten, nearest.
hoch, high;	hö'h'er, higher;	hö'ch'sten, highest.
e'he, before;	e'her, sooner;	e'hesten, soonest.
gern, readily, or willing- ly;	lie'b'er, more readily, or rather;	lieb'sten, most readily, or most willingly.

*Observation.* The syllable *un* changes the adverbs from af-

firmative to negative, in the same manner as *in*, *un*, or *un*, in English; as, *gläublich*, credibly; *ungläublich*, incredibly; *rechtlich*, justly; *unrechtlich*, unjustly.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### PREPOSITIONS.

WITH respect to prepositions, their government, composition, and abbreviation are to be considered.

#### § 1. THE GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

Some prepositions govern a genitive, some a dative, some either a genitive or dative, some an accusative, and some either a dative or an accusative.

#### 1. Prepositions governing the Genitive.

*anstatt*, instead; as, *anstatt des Vaters*, instead of the father. *Statt* is sometimes separated from *an*, as, *an Kin'des statt*, instead of a child; in which case, this last word may also be considered as a substantive, and written with a capital letter, *Statt*, place.

*(halb)* is only used in compounds: particularly, *außerhalb*, out of; as, *außerhalb des Hauses*, out of doors; *in'nerhalb*, in, within; as, *in'nerhalb dreier Tage*, within three days; *o'berhalb*, above; as, *o'berhalb der Stadt*, above the town; *un'terhalb*, below; as, *un'terhalb der Stadt*, below the town.

*haben*, or *halber* (when the noun has no article or pronoun before it), on account of, for the sake of; as, *des Friedens haben*, for the sake of the peace; *Alters halber*, on account of age; *deiner Laster haben*, on account of your vices. *Halben* is often joined with the genitive of the personal pronouns, *ich*, *I*, *du*, *thou*, *wir*, *we*, &c.; *gen. meiner*, of me, *deiner*, of thee, *un'ser*, of us, &c.; in which case the final *r* of these genitives is either changed into *t*, or a *t* is added; as, *meinethalben*, for my sake; *dei-*

nethalben, for thy sake; sei'nethalben, for his or its sake; un'rethalben, for our sake; eu'rethalben, for your sake; ih'rethalben, for her or their sake. It is also joined with *deß*, of, that, and *wesß*, of what or which; as, *deß'halb*, on account of that; *wesß'halb*, on account of which or what. *dies'seits*, on this side of; as, *dies'seits des Flus'ses*, on this side of the river.

*jen'seits*, beyond, on the other side; as, *jen'seits des Gan'ges*, on the other side of the Ganges.

*kraft*, by virtue of; as, *kraft mei'nes Am'tes*, by virtue of my office.

*laut*, according to, conformably; as, *laut des o'brigkeitlichen Befehls*, according to the command of the government.

*mit'telst* or *vermit'telst*, by, by means of; as, *mit'telst or vermit'telst dei'nes Bei'standes*, by means of your assistance.

*un'geachtet* or *ohn'geachtet*, notwithstanding, sometimes precedes and sometimes follows the noun; as, *un'geachtet aller Sin'dernisse*, notwithstanding all impediments; *sei'nes Flei'sses un'geachtet*, notwithstanding his industry.

*un'weit* or *ohn'weis*, not far from; as, *un'weit des Dor'fes*, not far from the village.

*vermö'ge*, by reason or virtue of, by dint of, by means of; as, *vermö'ge sei'ner Gebürt*, by reason of his birth; *vermö'ge der ü'bung*, by dint of practice; *vermö'ge des Flei'sses*, by means of diligence.

*wäh'rend*, during; as, *wäh'rend der Zeit*, during the time; *wäh'rend des Krie'ges*, during the war.

*wegen*, on account of, because of. It may stand before or after the noun; *ich that es mei'nes Va'ters wegen*, I did it because of or on account of my father; *wegen sei'nes Flei'sses*, on account of his diligence. *Wegen* is often joined with the genitive of pronouns, like *hal'ben*; as, *mei'netwegen*, for my'sake; *deß'wegen*, on account of that; *wesß'wegen*, on account of which or what; &c.

## 2. Prepositions governing the Dative.

*aus*, out of; as, *aus dem Bet'te*, out of bed.

*außer*, out of, without, besides; as, *außer Ord'nung*, out of or without order; *außer der Stadt*, out of the city or town; *außer dem Hau'se*, out of the house; *außer mir*, besides me.

bei, by, near; as, bei dem Hause, near the house; bei der Hand, by the hand.

entgegen, against, towards; as, dem Winde entgegen, against the wind; wir wollen unserm Freunde entgegen gehen, we will go to meet our friend.

gegenüber, opposite to; as, dem Hause gegenüber, opposite to the house. It may be separated; as, gegen mir über, opposite to me.

mit, with; as, mit dem Vater, with the father.

nach, 1. after, behind; 2. to or towards, with names of places, and verbs expressing motion; 3. according to, following; as, nach mir, after or behind me; wann gehen Sie nach der Stadt? when do you go to town? seiner Geburt nach, according to his birth; dem Stro'me nach, following the stream.

nebst or sammt, together with; as, nebst or sammt dem Vater, together with the father.

seit, since; as, seit der Zeit, since the time.

von, from, of, by; as, von mir, from me, of me; das Gedicht ist von ihm, that poem is by him.

vor, before; as, vor mir, before me.

zu, to, at, by, on, in; as, zu mir, to me; zu London, at or in London; zu Hause, at home; zu Wasser, by water; zu Lande, on land; zu Fuße, on foot.

zunächst, next to; as, er saß mir zunächst, he sat next to me.

zuwider, contrary to, against; as, mir zuwider, against me.

### 3. Prepositions governing the Accusative.

durch, through; as, durch den Wald, through the wood; durch dich, through you.

für, for; as, für mich, for me; für den Preis, for the price.

gegen, against, opposite; as, gegen den Wind, against the wind; gegen mich, against me or toward me.

gen (contraction of gegen), towards, is applied to a few objects; as, gen Himmel, towards heaven. It is also used as a nautical phrase; as, Nord gen Ost, north by east.

ohne, } without; as, ohne or son'der mich, without me.  
son'der, }

um, about; as, um die Stadt, about the city; um mich, about me.

*wider*, against, in opposition to ; as, *wider mich*, *enck*, *ihu*,  
*sie*, *es*, *sie*, against me, you, him, her, it, them.

#### 4. Prepositions governing the Genitive, or Dative ; and the Genitive, or Accusative.

*zufolge*, according to, before the substantive, with the genitive ; as, *zufolge Ih'res Befehls*, according to your command : but after the substantive, with the dative ; as, *Ihrem Befehl zufolge*, according to your command.

*laugs*, along, generally with the dative, sometimes with the genitive ; as, *laugs dem Wege*, along the way ; and sometimes, *laugs des Weges*, along the way.

*ohne*, without, generally with the accusative ; as, *ohne mich*, without me ; but in some phrases, after the substantive, with the genitive ; as, *Zweifels ohne*, without doubt.

#### 5. Prepositions governing the Dative, or Accusative.\*

*an*, at, in, on, with the dative ; as, *an ei'nem Orte*, in or at a place ; as, *er ist an allen Orten*, he is at or in every place : but, *an*, to, with the accusative ; as, *er gehet an alle Orte*, he goes to every place.

*auf*, in, upon, with the dative ; as, *das Buch liegt auf dem Tische*, the book lies upon the table : but, *auf*, into, on, with the accusative ; as, *lege das Buch auf den Tisch*, lay the book on the table.

*hin'ter*, behind, with the dative ; as, *er ist hin'ter mir*, he is behind me : but, with the accusative, *in er stellt sich hin'ter mich*, he places himself behind me.

*in*, in, with the dative ; as, *er ist in dem Zimmer*, he is in the room : *in*, into, with the accusative ; as, *er gehet in das Zimmer*, he goes into the room.

*ne'ben*, next to, with the dative ; as, *er wohnt ne'ben mei'nem Hause*, he lives next to my house : but with the accusative, *in er ziehet ne'ben mein Haus*, he moves next to my house, *i. e.* he moves into the house next to mine.

---

\* If they signify motion or rest in a place, the dative is used ; but when motion to a place is expressed, the accusative is used.



**ü'ber**, above, with the dative ; as, *er wohnt ü'ber mir*, he lives over or above me : but *ü'ber*, over, with the accusative, in *er spring'et ü'ber mich*, he jumps over me.

**un'ter**, among, under, below, with the dative ; as, *er ist un'ter den leu'ten*, he is among the people ; *er ist un'ter mir*, he is below me ; *es liegt un'ter dem Tische*, it lies under the table : but with the accusative, in *er ge'het un'ter die leu'te*, he goes among the people ; *er stellt sich un'ter mich*, he places himself below me ; *ich wer'fe es un'ter den Tisch*, I throw it under the table.

**vor**, before, with the dative ; as, *vor der Zeit*, before the time ; *vor mir stand ein Baum*, before me stood a tree : but with the accusative, in *er geht vor die Thür*, he goes before the door ; *er tritt vor den Rich'ter*, he steps before the judge.

**zwi'schen**, between, with the dative ; as, *er ging zwi'schen dir und mir*, he walked between you and me : but with the accusative, in *er dräng'te sich zwi'schen dich und mich*, he forced himself between you and me.

## § 2. THE COMPOSITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

Some prepositions are often compounded with *hie*, *hier*, here, *da*, there, *wo*, where ; and form adverbs. If the preposition begin with a vowel or *n*, an *t* is often added to the adverbs *da* and *wo*.

### 1. With *da*, *dar*, instead of *der*, *die'ser*, *dersel'be*.

**dabei'**, by it, with it, thereby.

**daran'**, on it or that, thereon.

**darauf**, upon it or that, thereupon.

**daraus'**, from thence, it, that.

**darein'**, thereinto, into it or that.

**darin'**, therein, in it, within.

**darnach'**, after it, thereafter.

**darum'**, for it or that, therefore.

**dami'der**, against that or it.

**dazu'**, for that or it, thereto.

**davor'**, before that or it.

**dari'ber**, on that account, at it.

**darun'ter**, under it or that.

**dafür'**, for that.

**dage'gen**, against it or that.

**damit'**, with that or it, by it, therewith.

**dane'ben**, near that or it, next to it.

**davon'**, of that or it, thereof, therefrom.

**dazwi'schen**, between, amidst that.

2. With *hier*, are compounded the same prepositions as above.

*hieran'*, on this *or* it, &c.

*hierauf*, upon this *or* it, &c.

3. With *wo*, *wor*, instead of *welcher*, was.

*woran'*, on which, whereon.

*wovor'*, before which.

*worauf*, upon which, where-upon.

*wozu'*, to which, whereto.

*worin'*, in which, wherein.

*wonach'*, according to which.

*womit'*, with which, where-with.

*wone'ben*, next to which.

*wodurch'*, by *or* through which.

*worü'ber*, upon which, where-upon.

*warum'*, for which, why, wherefore.

*wofür'*, for which, wherefore.

*woge'gen*, against which.

*worun'ter*, under which, among which, &c.

4. With *her* and *hin*, as adverbs.

*herab'*, *hinab'*, *herun'ter*, down.

*heraus'*, out, &c.

*herauf*, *hinauf*, up.

5. Some prepositions are always separated ; as,

*um-wil'len*, for the sake of ; as, *um Got'tes wil'len*, for God's sake.

*von-we'gen*, in the name of ; as, *von Gerichts' we'gen*, in the name of the court.

6. Some are separated or not, according to the construction ; as,

*um-her'*, round about ; as, *ich ging um das Schloss her*, I walked about the castle ; and *ich ging umher'*, I walked about.

*hinter-her'*, *hinter-drein'*, behind ; as, *ich ging hin'ter dem Man'ne her or drein*, I walked after the man, I followed the man ; and *ich ging hinterher' or hinderdrein'*, I walked behind.

## § 3. THE ABBREVIATION OF PREPOSITIONS.

In the familiar or colloquial style, the definite article and the preposition are generally contracted into one word; as, am, for an dem.

## Examples.

am,	for an dem,	as, am Fen'ster, at the window.
ans,	an das,	ans licht, into the light.
aufs,	auf das,	aufs Haus, upon the house.
beim,	bei dem,	beim Va'ter, by the father.
durchs,	durch das,	durchs Feu'er, through the fire.
fürs,	für das,	fürs Geld, for money.
im,	in dem,	im Him'mel, in heaven.
ins,	in das,	ins Was'ser, in the water.
vom,	von dem,	vom Übel, from evil.
vors,	vor das,	vors Fen'ster, before the window.
vorm,	vor dem,	vorm Thor, before the door.
ü'berm,	ü'ber dem,	ü'berm Feu'er, upon the fire.
ü'bers,	ü'ber das,	ü'bers Meer, by sea.
un'term,	un'ter dem,	un'term Kop'fe, under the head.
zum,	zu dem,	zum Ba'che, to the rivulet.
zur,	zu der,	zur Eh're, for the honor.

Some of these abbreviations occur not only in the familiar but in every kind of style; as, am, im, vom, zum, zur.

## CHAPTER IX.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

*Observation.* Some conjunctions regulate the place of the verb.

1. The following conjunctions join words and sentences, without changing the position of the verb.

und, and; as, Feu'er, Luft, Er'de, und Was'ser sind die vier Elemen'te, fire, air, earth, and water, are the four elements; wir ge'hen und re'den mit einan'der, we walk and talk with one another.

**auch**, also, too; **as**, *wir sind froh, und sie auch*, we are glad, and they too; *ich glaube es auch*, I think so too; *haben Sie auch gehört?* have you heard also?

**a'ber**, *allein'*, *son'dern*, but; **as**, *wir sind betrübt', a'ber der Herr tröstet uns*, we are afflicted, but the Lord comforts us; *wir fragen, allein' (a'ber) niemand antwortet*, we ask, but nobody answers; *wir hö'ren nichts Gutes, a'ber auch nichts Bö'ses*, we hear no good, but nothing bad; *nicht er, son'dern ich*, not he, but I; *ich ha'be es nicht nur gese'hen, son'dern auch gehört'*, I have not only seen it, but heard it also.

**doch**, *jedoch'*, but, nevertheless, although, yet; **as**, *sie droh'ten ihm, doch er blieb stand'haft*, they threatened him, but he remained constant; *er blei'bet doch mein Freund*, he remains nevertheless my friend; *er gestat'tete es, jedoch' (doch) un'gerne*, he granted it, although reluctantly.

**denn**, for, because; **as**, *sie wiss'en es, denn ich sag'te es ih'nen*, they know it, for or because I told (it to) them.

**ent'weder**, either, o'der, or; **as**, *ent'weder sie sind (or sind sie) falsche Freun'de, o'der offenba're Fein'de*, either they are false friends, or open enemies.

**we'der**, neither, noch, nor; **as**, *sie sind we'der hung'rig noch dur'stig*, they are neither hungry nor thirsty.

**zwar**, however, indeed; **as**, *sie ha'ben es zwar, a'ber nicht mit Recht*, they have it indeed, but not with justice.

2. The following conjunctions, when taken relatively, require the verb to be placed at the end of the sentence; but their use will be best understood by examples, as they are not always used as relatives.

<b>als</b> , † as, when, than, like, but.	<b>dennach'</b> , <i>sin'temal</i> , whereas.
<b>bevor'</b> , before.	<b>e'he</b> , before.
<b>bis</b> , till.	<b>falls</b> or <b>im Fall</b> , in case.
<b>da</b> , when.	<b>in so fern</b> , in so much, if.
<b>da</b> , <i>indem'</i> , as, since, whilst.	<b>nachdem'</b> , after, after that.
<b>dass</b> , that.	<b>weil</b> , <i>dieweil'</i> , because.
<b>auf dass</b> , <i>damit'</i> , in order that.	<b>ob</b> , whether.

† **Als** has sometimes a comparative signification.

als ob, as if.	wiewohl',	} though, although.
wenn, if, when.	obwohl',	
wo, so, if.	obgleich',	
wofern', sofern', dafern', if.	obschon',	
wo nicht, if not.	wenngleich',	
un'geachtet, or ohn'geachtet, notwithstanding.		

3. The following conjunctions require the verb to be placed at the end of the sentence, if used relatively ; but otherwise the verb is put before the nominative.

daher', hence.	woher', whence.	} wherefore, for which reason.
deshalb' or	weshalb' or	
deshalb'en,	weshalb'en,	
deswe'gen,	weswe'gen,	
um des'willen,	um wes'willen,	
darum',	warum',	

4. The following conjunctions require certain others after them, which frequently cause the nominative to be placed after the verb.

ent'weder, either,	requires o'der, or.	
we'der, neither,	noch, nor.	
weil, because,	so.	
da, when,	so.	
je, the,	je, or des'to, the.	
sowohl', as well, }	als, as.	
sobald', as soon, }		
zwar, indeed,	{ a'ber, allein', but.	
	{ doch, den'noch, or jedoch',	
	{ however, yet.	
	{ gleich'wohl, yet, for all that,	
	{ notwithstanding.	
	{ hinge'gen, on the contrary.	
	{ nichts des'to we'niger, never-	
	{ theless.	
wenn, if,	so.*	

---

\* Observe, the word so is sometimes a conjunction, sometimes an adverb, and sometimes used as a relative pronoun. Ex. 1. As a conjunction ; sowohl als, as well as ; so

wie, gleichwie', as,  
so, so,  
nicht, not,

nicht allein', } not only,  
nicht nur, }

obgleich', }  
obschon', } although,  
obwohl', }  
wenn schon, }  
wenn auch, }  
wiewohl', }

requires so.

so.  
son'dern, but.  
{ son'dern, but.  
son'dern auch, but  
also.

so, so.  
so doch, den'noch, how-  
ever, nevertheless.  
so, nichts des'to weni'-  
ger, nevertheless.

As the application of conjunctions may be better learned by examples than by rules, the following sentences are subjoined to exemplify their use.

Als wir zu Abend gegessen  
hat'en, (so) ging'en wir spa-  
zie'ren.

So roth als ei'ne Ro'se.

Er ist äl'ter als ich.

Er han'delt als ein rech'-  
schaffener Mann.

Als er den Aufruhr in der  
Stadt bemerk'te.

Er ist zwar mein Feind nicht,  
a'ber doch auch nicht mein  
Freund.

Als ich in Lon'don an'kam.

Bis die Son'ne die erstarr'-  
ten Fel'der auflösen wird.

Da der Kö'nig in Lon'don  
an'kam.

Vom Mor'gen bis zum A'-  
bend.

When we had supped, we  
took a walk; or having sup-  
ped, &c.

As red as a rose.

He is older than I.

He acts like an honest man.

When he perceived the tu-  
mult in the city.

He is not my enemy in-  
deed, but yet he is not my  
friend.

When I arrived in London.

Till the sun shall loosen  
the congealed fields.

When the king arrived in  
London.

From morning till evening.

---

bald als, as soon as. 2. As an adverb; Es ist so, wie ich ge-  
sagt ha'be, it is so, as I said; Wie so? how so? 3. As a re-  
lative pronoun; Das Buch, so (wel'ches) ich gekauft ha'be, the  
book, which I have bought.

\* So is frequently omitted and understood after als  
and da.

Da ich den Mann, welcher  
so e'del gehan'delt, eh're und  
lie'be; or,

Da ich den Mann eh're und  
lie'be, welcher so e'del gehan-  
delt hat.

Wenn er das Buch le'sen  
will.

Ich sah es; da'her weis ich  
es.

Woher' wissen sie es?

Er wuss'te es nicht, da'rum  
ha'be ich es ihm gesagt'.

Bevor' ich den Wald er-  
reicht' ha'te.

Als ich die'sen Mor'gen an  
dem Fen'ster stand, (da\*) sah  
ich die Solda'ten in die Stadt  
kom'men.

Indem' or weil ich an dem  
Fen'ster stand, sah ich, &c.

Wie ich an dem Fen'ster  
stand, &c.

Da ich an dem Fen'ster  
stand, &c.

Wiewohl' er sehr krank  
ist, so ist doch noch Hoff-  
nung vorhan'den, dass er wie-  
der auf'kommen wer'de, or wird.

Ich verma'che dir nicht al-  
lein' mein Haus, son'dern auch  
Ha'be und Gut.

Ich erwartete Ih're An-  
kunft nicht, des'to grö'ser ist  
mei'ne Freu'de.

Je ruhiger das le'ben ist,  
des'to geschick'ter ist es zum  
Nach'denken.

Ent'weder bist du toll, o'der  
du wirfst es wer'den.

Since I honor and love the  
man, who acted so nobly.

If he will read that book.

I saw it; thence, or for that  
reason, I know it.

Whence do they know it?

He did not know it, there-  
fore I have told (it) him.

Before I had reached the  
wood.

When, or as, I stood at the  
window this morning, or stand-  
ing at the window this morn-  
ing, I saw the soldiers coming  
into town.

Whilst I was standing at the  
window, I saw, &c.

As I happened to stand, or  
as I stood at the window, &c.

When, or since, I stood at  
the window, &c.

Although he is very ill,  
yet there is room to hope  
that he will recover.

I leave to thee not only my  
house, but also my goods and  
chattels.

I did not expect your arri-  
val, the greater therefore is  
my joy.

The more quiet life is, the  
more fit it is for reflection.

Either thou art mad, or  
thou wilt become so.

\* Da, in such cases, is frequently omitted and understood.

Er scheu'et we'der Gott noch  
Men'schen, we'der Tod noch  
Le'ben.

Ob ihr gleich gelehrt seid, so  
giebt es doch (or gleichwohl)  
noch viel, das ihr nicht wis'set.

Ob sie gleich reich sind, so  
könn'en sie doch nicht all'en  
Leu'ten hel'fen.

Obwohl' es unmög'lich schien,  
nichts des'to we'niger versuch-  
ten wir es.

Indem' ich davon' sprach.

Ob er gleich mein Bet'ter ist,  
so kömmt er doch nicht zu mir.

Er hat es entwe'der gethan',  
o'der wird es noch thun.

Sie hat mir un'recht gethan',  
denoch will ich ihr verge'ben.

So leichtgläubig er ist, so  
treu'los ist er.

So lange er sich in den  
Schränken der Beschei'denheit  
hielt, war' ich sein aufrichtig-  
ster Freund.

Ob er gleich alt ist, so hat  
er doch den vö'l'ligen Gebrauch'  
seiner Geisteskräfte.

Ein Kind muss nicht nur  
den Vater, sondern auch die  
Mutter eh'ren.

Sobald' (als) es vier geschla-  
gen hat.

Nachdem' wir Al'les wohl  
untersucht' hat'en.

Ehe die Gloc'ke aus'geschla-  
gen hat.

Je mehr ich trink'e, des'to  
mehr ha'be ich Durst.

Je läng'er, je lie'ber.

He fears neither God nor  
men, neither death nor life.

Although you are learned,  
yet there is still much that  
you do not know.

Although they are rich, yet  
they cannot help every body.

Although it seemed impos-  
sible, we nevertheless at-  
tempted it.

Whilst I was speaking of  
it.

Although he is my cousin,  
yet he does not come to (see)  
me.

Either he has done it, or  
he will do it yet.

She has done me wrong,  
yet I will forgive her.

He is equally credulous and  
treacherous.

Whilst he kept himself  
within the bounds of modesty,  
I was his most sincere friend.

Although he is old, he still  
has the perfect use of his  
mental faculties.

A child must not only hon-  
or his father, but also his  
mother.

As soon as it has struck  
four.

After having well examined  
every thing.

Before the clock has done  
striking.

The more I drink, the more  
thirsty I am.

The longer, the dearer.



## CHAPTER X.

## OF INTERJECTIONS.

The following is a list of some of the interjections used in German.

ach! ah! ah! ah!	willkom'men! welcome!
lei'der! alas!	sie'he! lo! behold!
oh! o! oh!	sie'he da! behold here!
wah! we'he! woe!	pfui! fie!
ei! hui! heigh!	lie'ber! pray!
wohlan'! well then!	behü'te Gott! God forbid!
hilf Gott! God help!	hol'la! he! holla!
hilf Him'mel! heaven help!	st! still! hush! hist!
halt! halt! or stop!	

## CHAPTER XI.

## ADDITIONAL REMARKS, ON THE MODE OF FORMING NEW WORDS.

*General Remarks.*

The number of German words has been and may still be increased in two ways:

1. The language admits of being enriched out of its own substance.

a. One part of speech may be used for another. Thus the infinitive of the verb *le'ben*, to live, is used as a substantive, *das le'ben*, the life; and the neuter gender of the adjective *erha'ben*, sublime, may be used as a noun, *das Erha'bene*, the sublime.

b. A word may be derived from another; as, *gü'tig*, kind, from *gut*, good.

c. Several words may be compounded into one; as, *Sil'berbergwerk*, silver-mine, composed of *Sil'ber*, silver, *Berg*, mountain, and *Werk*, work.

2. A number of foreign words have been introduced into the German language, and have become more or less naturalized; as, *Natur*, nature; *Sympathie* (*Mit'gefühl*), sympathy.

## § 1. OF THE MOST IMPORTANT MODES OF ENRICHING THE LANGUAGE FROM WITHIN ITSELF.

*A. Of the Infinitive Mood and Adjectives, used as Nouns.*

Among the various modes in which a word may be changed from one part of speech to another, there is none of so much practical importance as the use of infinitives and adjectives as nouns.

1. The Germans use the infinitive of every verb as a noun, in the same manner as the English do the present participle; as, *das Fühlen*, the feeling; *das Hören*, the hearing; *das Forschen*, the searching, &c.

2. An adjective may be used as a noun, in each of its three genders, and ought then to have a capital letter for its initial.

*a.* When the adjective in its *masculine* or *feminine* gender is used as a noun, it denotes most generally a man or a woman of such description as the adjective imports; as, *der Güt'e*, the good man; *die Güt'e*, the good woman; *ein From'mer*, a pious man; *ei'ne From'me*, a pious woman.

The noun should always be preceded by the definite or indefinite article, except in the vocative case; as, *Best'er*, best man; *Best'e*, best woman.

Sometimes the adjective stands without the noun to which it refers, this noun being understood. In this case the adjective is not changed into a noun, but remains an adjective; as, *Es giebt zweierlei Menschen, gü'te und bö'se. Die bö'sen ge'ben sich oft das An'sehn der gü'ten.* There are two sorts of men, good and bad. The bad oftentimes give themselves the appearance of the good.

*b.* When the *neuter* of the adjective is used as a noun, if it is preceded by the definite article, it denotes the whole class of things to which the quality expressed by the adjective is ascribed; or it designates the quality itself; as, *das Schö'ne*, the beautiful; *das Erhä'bene*, the sublime.

If the neuter adjective which is used as a noun, is not preceded by the article, it means *anything* having that quality which the adjective expresses; as, *Schö'nes*, anything beautiful; *Zär'tes*, anything tender.

While in English (at least in prose) only a few adjectives are used as nouns, the German language allows every adjective to be used in that manner; as, *das Zär'te*, that which is ten-

der; das Star'ke, that which is strong; das Natür'liche, that which is natural; das Künst'liche, that which is artificial.\*

Sometimes the *simple* form of the adjective is used instead of the neuter; as, das Gelb und das Roth, the yellow and the red; or without the article, Gelb und Roth sind zwei Grundfarben, yellow and red are two primary colors.

In a few instances the indefinite article is used before the simple form or the neuter of the adjective; as, ein Roth, a red (color); ein Meh'eres, something further.

### B. Of the Derivation of Words from Others.

Among the various modes in which derivative words may be formed, we notice two, as particularly important,

1. The formation of *nouns*, by adding to adjectives, numerals, nouns, or radical syllables of verbs, the syllables, *ei* (en), *heit*, *keit*, *ung*, *thum*, *schaft*, *niss*; as, Fische'ri', fishery, (Fischer, fisherman); Vollkom'menheit, perfection, (vollkom'men, perfect); Ein'heit, unity, (ein, one); Bie'derkeit, righteousness, (bie'der, righteous); Nei'gung, inclination, (sich nei'gen, to incline); Rit'terthum, chivalry, (Ritter, knight); Wissenschaft, science, (wissen, to know); Land'schaft, landscape, (land, land); Besorg'niss, apprehension, (besor'gen, to apprehend).

2. The formation of *adjectives*, by the addition of the syllables *bar*, *sam*, *en*, *ern*, *ig*, *icht*, *isch*, *lich*, *haft*; as, ehr'bar, decent, (Ehre, honor); ar'beitsam, industrious, (Ar'beit, labor); gol'den, golden, (Gold, gold); stei'nern, of stone, (Stein, stone); feu'rig, fiery, Feuer, fire); thö'richt, foolish, (Thor, fool); dich'terisch, poetical, (Dich'ter, poet); säch'sisch, Saxon, (der Sach'se, the Saxon); kin'disch, childish, (Kind, child); kind'lich, childlike; münd'lich, oral, (Mund, mouth); herz'haft, hearty, (Herz, heart).

### C. Of the Composition of Words.

A compound word is produced by uniting two or more terms into one. Such expressions, therefore, as *newspaper*, *seaport*, *vainglory*, belong to this class.

The rules for composition, which are tacitly acknowledged in German, and ought to be uniformly observed, are these two :

---

\* The great advantage which arises from this mode of using every adjective as a noun, to designate certain classes of things or certain qualities, is evident, particularly in philosophy.

**Rule I.**—The several terms which enter into the composition should suggest so many distinct ideas; and these ought to be so perspicuous, that, when combined, they shall render the word intelligible at the first glance.

**Rule II.**—The prior term of the compound should define and limit the other. Hence the first component may be called the *particular term*; and the second, the *general*. For example: *Mond'licht*, moonlight; the general term *licht*, light, being defined by the more particular term, *Mond*, moon: *kummervoll*, sorrowful; the general term *voll*, full, being defined by the particular term, *Kummer*, sorrow.

To these two rules of composition, are to be added the following observations.

1. In compound substantives, the second component, or general term, furnishes the gender; as, *das Rath'haus*, the council-house, from *der Rath*, the council, and *das Haus*, the house; *der Arbeitslohn*, wages for work, from *die Arbeit*, labor, and *der Lohn*, the reward; *Menschenliebe*, love of man, from *der Mensch*, man, and *die Liebe*, love.

2. The compound should be neither too long, nor harsh to the ear.

3. Though one of the terms be a compound word, yet, when it enters into a new composition, it is supposed to convey only a single idea. For example, *das Silberbergwerk*, the silver mine, consisting of *Silber*, silver, and *Bergwerk*, a mine, has for its second term, a compound word, *Bergwerk*. This may be resolved into *Berg*, a mountain, and *Werk*, work; yet, the idea which it suggests as a component of *Silberbergwerk*, is only one. Consequently, words may be twice or oftener compounded, without being disqualified from serving in a new composition according to the second rule; care being taken not to make the compound too long. But whenever such words are admitted, a hyphen (—) is resorted to, in order to break their extended appearance; as, *General'-Feldzeug'-meister*, Master General of the Ordnance; *Reichs'-General'-Feldmar'schall*, Field-marshal General of the Empire.

4. A hyphen is, moreover, employed, when either one or both of the components are foreign words; as, *das Reichs'-Collegium*, the council of the Empire; *das Criminal'-Gericht*, the criminal court of justice; *der Justiz'-Rath*, a council, or counsellor, of justice; *das Intelligenz'-Blatt*, a paper for ad-

vertisements; das Intelligenz'-Comptoir, the advertising office; das Justiz'-Collegium, the court of justice. The foreign words are written either in their own type, as is done in these examples, or in the German character; as, Intelligenz'-Blatt. But if the words are not too long, it is rather more usual to write them without the hyphen, as one word; as, Intelligenz'blatt.

5. By the process of composition are produced, in the following manner,

(1) SUBSTANTIVES.

a. *Both terms being Substantives.* Examples: Die Abend'-stunde, the evening-hour—from der Abend, the evening, and die Stun'de, the hour; der Ap'felbaum, the apple-tree—der Ap'fel, and der Baum; der Sonn'tag, Sunday—die Son'ne, der Tag; der Got'tesdienst, divine service—Gott, God, der Dienst, the service; der Hel'denmuth, heroic courage—der Held, the hero, der Muth, courage; die Her'zensgüte, goodness of heart—das Herz, die Gü'te.

b. *The first term being an Adjective.* Die Gros'muth, magnanimity—gros, great, der Muth, spirit; die Schwer'muth, heaviness of spirit, melancholy—schwer, heavy, der Muth,\* spirit; die Ei'genliebe, self-love—ei'gen, own, and die Lie'be.

c. *A Numeral the first term.* Der Drei'fuß, the tripod—drei, three, der Fuß, the foot; das Vier'eck, the square—vier, four, die Ec'ke, † the corner; das Ach'teck, the octagon—acht, eight.

d. *The Pronoun selbst the first term.* Das Selbst'vertrauen, self confidence—das Vertrau'en; die Selbst'prüfung, self-examination—die Prü'fung; der Selbst'betrug, self-delusion—der Betrug'.

e. *A Verb the first term.* Der Fech'tboden, the fencing school—fech'ten, to fence, der Bo'den, the floor; die Reit'bahn,

\* It will be noticed, that in these two last examples, there is a deviation from the first observation, relative to the gender of compound substantives.

† See the foregoing note.

the riding schol—*rei'ten*, to ride, *die Bahn*, the course, the ground; *das Wart'geld*, pay for waiting, for attendance—*war'ten*, to wait, *das Geld*, money.

f. *A Particle the first term*, such as *ab*, *an*, *ein*, &c. *Die Ab'reise*, the departure; *die An'kunft*, the arrival; *der Ein'gang*, the entrance.

## (2) ADJECTIVES.

a. *A Substantive being the first term.* *Tu'gendreich*, rich in virtue—*die Tu'gend*, virtue, *reich*, rich; *kraft'voll*, full of strength or power—*die Kraft*, *voll*; *eis'kalt*, cold as ice—*das Eis*, *kalt*; *gold'gelb*, yellow as gold—*das Gold*, *gelb*; *pech'schwarz*, black as pitch—*das Pech*, *schwarz*; *got'tesfürch'tig*, pious, fearing God—*Gott*, God, and *fürch'tig* (an adjective, unusual except in composition); *hülfs'bedürftig*, destitute, wanting help—*die Hül'fe*, *bedürftig*.

b. *An Adjective the first term.* *leicht'fertig*, thoughtless, flighty; *hell'blau*, light blue; *frei'willig*, voluntary; *alt'klug*, wise as an old man.

c. *A Numeral the first term.* *Drei'edig*, three cornered, triangular; *vier'edig*, quadrangular, square; *sechs'füßig*, six-footed; *acht'seitig*, having eight sides.

d. *A Particle the first term.* *Ab'hängig*, dependent; *an'ständig*, becoming; *ü'bermüthig*, overbearing, insolent; *zu'künftig*, future; *un'gläubig*, unbelieving; *un'gerecht*, unjust.

e. *A Verb the first term.* *Denk'würdig*, memorable—*denk'en*, to think of, and *wür'dig*, worthy; *hab'süchtig*, avaricious—*ha'ben*, to have, and *die Sucht*, eager desire; *lie'benswürdig*, lovely, amiable—*lie'ben*, to love, *wür'dig*, worthy; *lo'benswerth*, praiseworthy—*lo'ben*, to praise, *werth*, deserving.

## (3) VERBS.

a. *A Substantive being the first term.* *Brand'schagen*, to raise contributions, by the menace of fire—*der Brand*, fire, *schat'zen*, to raise contributions; *lust'wandeln*, to walk for pleasure, to take a walk—*die lust*, pleasure, *wandeln*, to walk; *wett'eisern*, to emulate—*die Wet'te*, the wager, competition, *eis'ern*, to be eager or zealous; *wet'terleuchten*, to lighten without thunder—*das Wet'ter*, the weather, the tempest, *leuch'ten*, to shine; *hand'haben*, to handle—*die Hand*, the hand, *ha'ben*, to have.

b. *An Adjective the first term.* Frohlocken, to exult—froh; vollbringen, to accomplish—voll; vollziehen, to execute.

c. *A Particle the first term.* This species of composition has been treated of at large, from page 108 to page 115.

#### (4) PARTICIPLES.

*A Substantive being the first term.* (a.) The Present participle: ehrlichend, loving honour, generous—die Ehre, honour, liebend, loving; gesetzgebend, legislative—das Gesetz, the law, gebend, giving; wachhabend, having the guard, being on duty, as an officer—die Wache, the guard, habend, having. (b.) The Past participle: blumenbefrängt, crowned with flowers—die Blume, the flower, befrängt, crowned; schneebedeckt, covered with snow—der Schnee, bedeckt, covered; seegebohren, born of the sea—die See, the sea, gebohren, born.

#### (5) PARTICLES.

*Compounded with Particles.* Vorwärts, forward, zurück, back; hinein, into; heraus, out of; mithin, therefore; daher, thence; nunmehr, now.

6. The components often remain unaltered: as, Apfelbaum, apple-tree; Uhrmacher, watch-maker; tugendreich, rich in virtue: but in many instances, the first term undergoes some change, either by letters being added, or omitted.

#### (1) LETTERS ADDED.

es: as, der Gottesdienst, divine service—from Gott; die Geisteskraft, power of mind—der Geist; die Todesnoth, agony of death—der Tod.

s: as, das Himmlslicht, the light of heaven—der Himmel; das Eßelohr, an ass's ear, the corner of a leaf of a book turned down—der Eßel; das Arbeitshaus, the work-house—die Arbeit; der Geburts-tag, the birth-day—die Geburt; das Hülfsmittel, means of assistance, resource—die Hülfe.

ns, ens: as, die Friedensfeier, the celebration of peace—der Friede; die Herzensgüte, goodness of heart—das Herz.

The above additional letters mark the genitive case, in the first component.

e: as, *das Her'zeleid*, affliction of heart—*das Herz*; *der Pf'er'deus*, the horse's foot—*das Pferd*; *der Gân'sebraten*, the roasted goose—*die Gans*, the goose.

In some of these examples, the inserted *e* may be considered as the characteristic letter of the plural number.

n, or en: as, *das Freu'denfest*, the festival of joy, the jubilee—*die Freu'de*; *das Dra'chenblut*, dragon's blood—*der Dra'che*; *der Hel'denmuth*, heroic courage—*der Held*, the hero; *das Hir'tenleben*, pastoral life—*der Hirt*, the herdsman; *der Bau'ernstolz*, vulgar pride—*der Bauer*, the rustic, the clown.

The additional *n*, or *en*, may, in some instances, indicate the genitive case, in others the plural number.

er: as, *der Ei'erkuchen*, the omelet—*das Ei*, the egg, and *der Ku'chen*, the cake; *die Bil'derschrift*, hieroglyphic writing—*das Bild*, the image, figure, and *die Schrift*, the writing; *die Wei'berlist*, craft of women—*das Weib*, the woman, and *die list*, cunning.

The letters *er* correspond, in these words, with the termination of the plural.

i: this occurs only in two very ancient compounds; *die Nach'tigall*, the nightingale, and *der Bräu'tigam*, the bridegroom.

## (2) LETTERS OMITTED.

e, in substantives: as, *die End'silbe*, the final syllable—*das Ende*, the end; *die Erb'folge*, the succession—*das Er'be*, the inheritance, *die Fol'ge*, the act of following or succeeding; *der Sonn'tag*, Sunday—*die Son'ne*; *der Kir'sch'baum*, the cherry-tree—*die Kir'sche*.

en, in infinitives: as, *der Fech'tboden*, the fencing-school—*fech'ten*, to fence; *die Reit'bahn*, the riding-school—*rei'ten*, to ride; *denk'würdig*, memorable—*denk'en*, to think of, and *wür'dig*, worthy; *hab'süchtig*, avaricious—*ha'b'en*, to have.

These omissions take place because only the radical syllable of the first component is employed in the composition.

7. It is not settled by rule when and how these changes in the first component are to be made. Analogy and euphony alone determine the question. Sometimes a diversity occurs in the state of the first component, as it is combined with different words: as, *der Bau'ernhof*, the farm, and *der Bau'ernkrieg*, the war of the peasants—both from *der Bauer*, the husbandman, the peasant; *die Ehr'furcht*, reverence,



and der Eh'renräuber, the reviler—from die Eh're; der Feuerherd, the hearth, and die Feuerbrunst, a great fire—from das Feuer; das Herzeleid, affliction of heart, and die Herzensangst, anxiety of heart—from das Herz. But even in regard to the same compounds, an uncertainty occasionally prevails: for example, der Eichenbaum, or der Eichbaum, the oak-tree—from die Eiche, the oak; der Erdflos, or Erdenflos, the clod of earth—from die Erde.

8. There are a few instances in which a change of signification is produced by the mode of composition; as, der Landmann, the husbandman, the peasant, and der Landsmann, the compatriot; Heilmittel, medicine, and Heilsmittel, means of salvation; Feldwirthschaft, agriculture, and Fel'derwirthschaft, rotation of crops.

9. The more ancient compounds cannot always be reduced to that analogy, by which the composition of words is now regulated.

10. When it happens that two or more compound words occur in a sentence, having the second component the same, this component is frequently omitted in the first word, or words, and only expressed in the word that is last: as, Pfaffen- und Weiberlist, craft of priests and of women; Kriegs- und Friedenszeiten, times of war and peace; Bet-, Bus- und Fasttag, day of prayer, repentance, and fasting. The hyphen is then put after the first word, or words.

## § 2. OF THE INTRODUCTION OF FOREIGN WORDS INTO THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

The German language is sufficiently copious and productive, to furnish native words for any idea that is worth expressing. Moreover, it is so old, that none of the known languages of the earth can be considered as its parent; and the radical words as well as, the manner of forming new terms, are so peculiar, that the German cannot borrow expressions from foreign languages without violating its own idiom. This being the character of the language, the best German scholars have laid down the general rule, that in speaking and writing, all those terms which are not of genuine German growth, but imported from foreign lan-

guages, should be avoided. It was by disregarding this principle, that, particularly from the last half of the sixteenth, until the last half of the eighteenth century, a considerable number of Latin and French terms were introduced into the language; many of which are still in common use. But a sounder taste and a better knowledge of the native riches and powers of the language, have already cleared it of many of those heterogeneous ingredients; and there is reason to hope, that this purifying principle will by degrees succeed in removing all these inconsistencies, without indulging in the blind zeal of a overhasty and extravagant "purism."

According to this principle, we ought to be directed by the following rules.

1. No foreign word should be used, if the same idea may be conveyed by a native term, equally expressive and usual. It is absurd, for example, to say *excusiren*, instead of *entschuldigen*, to excuse; or *Medicament*, instead of *Heilmittel*, medicine; or *Nationalmiliz*, instead of *Landwehr*, national militia.

2. A genuine German word should be preferred to a foreign one, if the former, although less usual, is equally expressive, and not yet wholly obsolete. Thus, *Vorhut*, advanced guard, is better than *Avantgarde*; *Nachhut*, rear guard, is better than *Arriergarde*; and *Mittelestreifen*, centre of the army, is better than *Centrum*.

3. If we find no word already formed to express a particular idea, we should, instead of resorting to foreign languages, rather try to form a new word, in the true German style, either by *derivation*, or *composition*, which have been treated of in the preceding section.

a. By *derivation*, for example, the words *Volks'thum*, nationality, *volks'thümlich*, national, and *Volks'thümlichkeit*, national peculiarity, have lately been formed from the radical word *Volk*, people or nation; and those words have already in a great measure displaced the foreign terms, *Nationalität*, national, and *National-Eigenthümlichkeit*.

b. In the way of *composition*, a foreign word may be rendered in German, by resolving its meaning into the component ideas.

Take for example the French word *courier*, which means

a messenger who is to proceed with speed. In this instance, the more general idea of a *messenger*, is defined by the particular idea of *speed*. Messenger, in German, is *Bo'te*, and speed, *Ei'le*; and these two words being put together according to Rule II. of the preceding section, form the word *Ei'lbote*. This is preferable to *Courier'*, which ought not to be considered a German word, as it is needlessly borrowed from a foreign language.—In the same manner the French word *diligence*, which is frequently used in Germany to denote a carriage which is to travel with despatch, may be rendered by *Ei'lwagen*; from *Wa'gen*, carriage, and *Ei'le*, despatch; and this German word has already displaced in a great measure the barbarous term *Diligence*.

But in seeking native for foreign words, we ought to guard against mere literal translations. It is the *sense* of the foreign words which is to be rendered in German, and not the manner in which this sense is expressed in the language to which they belong. Thus the French word *allée* which is sometimes used in Germany as signifying a walk planted with trees, cannot be rendered simply by *Gang*, walk; but by *Baum'gang*, from *Gang*, walk, and *Baum*, tree.

4. The general language which is at present spoken by all well-bred persons in Germany, may be recruited by antiquated German words, and by local or provincial expressions. But they cannot be considered as parts of the general and living language, until good German writers have obtained for them the sanction of public opinion.

a. The word *tur'nen*, to perform gymnastic exercises, is an example of an antiquated term which has been restored to the living language. This word, having lately been revived by Jahn, is now, with all the derivative and compound words which have been formed from it, a legitimate German term.

b. "Provincial terms," says Jahn, "are the militia, which take the field when the standing army of book-words is defeated." Thus the Swiss word *lawi'ne*, avalanche, has become a classical German word.

5. A number of foreign words which have taken a German termination, and of which many derivative and compound words have been formed, may now be considered as naturalized; as, the word *Natur'*, nature, which has been employed in forming the derivative expressions *Un'natur*, unnatural state; *natur'lich*, natural, *Natur'lichheit*, natural appearance

and the compound words, *Natur'stand*, state of nature ; *Natur'recht*, natural right ; and many others. The words, *Re'gel*, rule, and *Fami'lie*, family, are similar instances of naturalized words.

6. There are some expressions, borrowed from foreign languages, which may be considered almost in the light of proper names, peculiarly and exclusively belonging to the objects which they designate. Of this kind are *Thee*, tea ; *Kaffe*, coffee ; *Scho'kola'de*, chocolate ; *Taba'k*, tobacco. To attempt to Germanize such terms, would be an absurdity.

7. There are some foreign terms, which, according to their general and permanent signification, might be rendered in German, but are nevertheless preserved by good writers, because they have a reference to peculiar circumstances and times. Thus the native words, *Volk*, people, and *Heer*, army, are in general to be preferred to the foreign terms *Nation'* and *Armee'* ; but in the time of Napoleon, the expressions, *die gro'sse Armee'*, the Grand Army, and *die gro'sse Nation'*, the Great Nation, had a special and transitory meaning, for which the foreign appellatives were better suited than the true German expressions.

8. As the process of purifying the language from improper mixtures must be a gradual one, it is particularly desirable that they should be most carefully avoided in works which are likely to be of lasting importance. From works of this character, the changes may and will proceed, by degrees, to lighter kinds of literature, and to conversation ; while a precipitate or preposterous attempt at purification, which would obstruct the natural flow of thought and expression, is as much averse to the genius of the language, as those very impurities which it is intended to remove.

## BOOK II.

### SYNTAX.

---

#### PART I.

##### AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT OF WORDS.

The *agreement* of words consists in their being put in the same gender, number, case, and person.

One word is said to *govern* another, when, by the power of the former, the latter is made to assume a particular form, for example a certain case in declension, or mood in conjugation.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE ARTICLE.

###### RULE I.

THE articles *ein* and *der* are generally used in German, as *a* and *the* in English. In German, moreover, they must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case, whether the noun be preceded by an adjective or not; as, *ein Mann*, a man; *ei'nem gu'ten Man'ne*, to a good man; *ei'ner treff'lichen Frau*, to an excellent woman; *das theu're An'denken ei'nes gelieb'ten Kin'des*, the dear remembrance of a beloved child.

*Obs. 1.* The article is never placed between the noun and its adjective, but always before the adjective; as, *ein hal'ber Bo'gen*, half a sheet; *ei'ne hal'be Stun'de*, half an hour; *ein hal'bes Jahr*, half a year; *die bei'den Län'der*, both the countries; *das gan'ze Jahr*, all the year; *der hal'be Tag*, half the day.

*Obs. 2.* In compounds the article agrees with the gender of the last word; as, *der Liebesbrief*, the love letter; *die Wetterfahne*, the weathercock; *das Stadthaus*, the town-house.

*Obs. 3.* The article agrees with its noun, although the latter be not expressed, but understood; as, *der Hase ist eines der furchtsamsten Thiere*, the hare is one of the most timid animals.

### Exercises.

Give me the book. Bring me a knife. Here is a pen. Lend him the penknife. He has the ink. I see the friends. Write an answer. The elm is one of the finest trees.

to give, <i>geben</i> .	ink, <i>Die Tinte</i> , <i>f. 1. c.</i>
book, <i>Buch</i> , <i>n. 3. b. c.</i>	to write, <i>schreiben</i> .
to bring, <i>bringen</i> .	answer, <i>Antwort</i> , <i>f. 1. d.</i>
pen, <i>Fe der</i> , <i>f. 1. c.</i>	elm, <i>Ulme</i> , <i>f. 1. c.</i>
knife, <i>Messer</i> , <i>n. 3. a. a.</i>	fine, <i>schön</i> .
to lend, <i>leihen</i> .	tree, <i>*Baum</i> , <i>m. 3. b. b.</i>
penknife, <i>Fe dermesser</i> , <i>n. 3. a. a.</i>	

### RULE II.

The article *der* is used in German, though not in English, before most nouns in a universal sense, and before all common nouns in the oblique cases; as, *das Leben*, life; *das Alter*, age; *der Mensch*, man; *die Menschen*, men or mankind; *das Kind des Bruders*, the brother's child.

Also before most adjectives taken substantively, and before the names of the seasons; as, *das Gute*, good or goodness; *ein Gelehrter*, a learned man; *der Gelehrte*, the learned; *der Frühling*, spring; *der Sommer*, summer.

### RULE III.

Before proper names the article is generally omitted.

1. Before the proper names of *places*, the article is most commonly omitted, particularly in the nominative; as, *London*, *Petersburg*, *Europa*, *England*. But the following nouns are exceptions to this rule:

die Türkei', Turkey.	der Haag, the Hague.
die Lombardei', Lombardy.	die Schweiz, Switzerland.
die Niederlande, the Netherlands.	die Levante, the Levant.
	die Pfalz, the Palatinate.

Also the Germans say, die Stadt Lon'don, the city of London; das K nigreich Frankreich, the kingdom of France, &c.

2. The proper names of *persons* generally take no article in the nominative, nor, when they have a change of termination, in the oblique cases; as, Cicero's Rede, Cicero's orations. In the oblique cases, when there is no change of termination, the article may be used; as, Brutus t dete den C sar, Brutus killed C sar.

In speaking familiarly of well known persons, the definite article is sometimes used, even in the nominative case; as, der Karl, Charles; die Luise, Louisa.

A proper name when used as a common noun, requires the article before it; as, der Plato seines Zeitalters, the Plato of his age.

### Exercises.

Death itself is not so dreadful.  
 Man is rational, man is mortal.  
 He has a house in town.  
 We are going to church.  
 They come from church.  
 Neptune was the god of the seas.  
 I am going to London.  
 I come from Holland.  
 Cicero was an excellent orator.  
 The temple of Solomon was magnificent.

Death, Tod, *m. 3. b. b.*  
 itself, selbst.  
 so, so.  
 dreadful, f rch'terlich.  
 man, Mensch, *m. 2. b.*  
 rational, vern nftig.  
 mortal, ster'blich.  
 town, Stadt, *f. 1. b.*  
 to go, gehen, followed by  
 in, (*Acc.*)  
 church, Kir'che, *f. 1. c.*  
 to come, kom'men.  
 from, von (*Dat.*)  
 Neptune, Neptun'.

was, war.  
 god, Gott, *m. 3. b. c.*  
 sea, Meer, *n. 3. b. b.*  
 to go, gehen.  
 to, nach.  
 to come, kom'men.  
 from, von.  
 Cicero, C cero.  
 excellent, trefflich.  
 orator, Red'ner, *m. 3. a. a.*  
 temple, Temp'el, *m. 3. a. a.*  
 Solomon, Salomo.  
 magnificent, pr ch'tig.

## RULE IV.

The article is repeated before nouns of different genders ; as, *der Va'ter, die Mu'ter und das Kind*, the father, mother, and child : but nouns of the same gender or number require it only before the first ; as, *der Rock und Hut*, the coat and hat.

Sometimes, however, the article is repeated before each of several nouns of the same gender, for the purpose of expressing the importance of each one of them : for example, when different subjects are enumerated in a title, or superscription ; as in that of the fable, *Der Fuchs und der Ra'be*, The fox and the raven.

## Exercises.

The man, woman, and child are gone out.

The hare and pigeon.

The father, mother, son, and daughter are in the country.

The sheep, cow, and dog.

I left the book and ruler upon the table.

Give me the pen and penknife.

The father and the son (*do*) not<sup>3</sup> resemble<sup>1</sup> each<sup>2</sup> other<sup>2</sup>.

man, \**Mann*, *m.* 3. *b. c.*

woman, *Frau*, *f.* 1. *b.*

child, *Kind*, *n.* 3. *b. c.*

to go out, *aus'gehen*.

hare, *Ha'se*, *m.* 2. *a.*

pigeon, *Tau'be*, *f.* 1. *c.*

in, *auf.* (*dat.*)

country, *Land*, *n.* 3. *b. c.*

sheep, *Schaf*, *n.* 3. *b. b.*

cow, *Kuh*, *f.* 1. *b.*

dog, *Hund*, *m.* 3. *b. b.*

book, *Buch*, *n.* 3. *b. c.*

ruler, *lineal'*, *n.* 3. *b. b.* (*acc.*)

upon, *auf.* (*dat.*)

to leave, *lassen*.

pen, *Fe'der*, *f.* 1. *c.*

penknife, *Fe'dermesser*, *n.* 3. *a. a.*

father, \**Va'ter*, *m.* 3. *a. a.*

son, *Sohn*, *m.* 3. *b. b.*

to resemble, *glei'chen*.

each other, *sich*.

## RULE V.

In an emphatic manner of speaking, the article is frequently omitted where it ought to be used, according to Rule II, and Rule IV, particularly in the plural number ; as, *Gerech'te und*



Un'gerechte, Men'schen und Thie're fan'den in den Wel'sen ihr Grab, The just and the unjust, men and beasts found their grave in the waves.

## RULE VI.

The article is omitted, whenever the substantive expresses a part of a thing, which in English is denoted by the word *some*, (answering to the French *du, de la, de l', des*); as, *Bringen Sie mir Brod*, Bring me some bread; *Ha'ben Sie Papier', Din'te, &c.*? Have you some paper, ink, &c.?

## Exercises.

Have you eaten<sup>3</sup> bread<sup>1</sup>, and drunk<sup>2</sup> water<sup>1</sup>?

Bring me some wine and water.

I have bought<sup>3</sup> some<sup>2</sup> silk<sup>2</sup> to-day<sup>1</sup>.

Give me some paper, ink, and pens.

to eat, *es'sen*.

water, *Wass'er, n. 3. a. a.*

to drink, *trin'ken*.

wine, *Wein, m. 3. b. b.*

to-day, *heu'te*.

silk, *Sei'de, f. 1.*

to buy, *kau'fen*.

to give, *ge'ben*.

## RULE VII.

In some phrases the article is commonly omitted in German, where it is in English either expressed, or has a pronoun put in its place; as, *Überbring'er die'ses*, the bearer of this; *in bes'ter Ord'nung*, in the best order; *vor En'digung des Schau'spiels*, before the conclusion of the drama; *ich ha'be es in Hän'den*, I have it in my hands; *ich ha'be es vor Au'gen*, I have it before my eyes.—The same peculiarity is to be observed in regard to some adjectives and participles; as, *er'sterer*, the former; *let'sterer*, the latter; *besag'ter*, the aforesaid; *erwäh'n'ter*, or *gedach'ter*, the above mentioned; *genann'ter*, the above named; *fol'gender*, the following: also, with respect to some proper names; as, *Ost'in'dien*, the East Indies; *West'in'dien*, the West Indies.

## CHAPTER II.

## NOUNS.

## RULE I.

Two or more nouns are put in the same case,

1. When they are brought together only to show their common relation to another object; as, *Gerech'tigkeit, Wohlthätigkeit, und Frömmigkeit sind die Merkmale eines Christen*, Justice, charity, and piety, are the characteristics of a Christian.

2. When they are put together to denote the same object, so that one of them either completes or explains\* the other; as, *der Mo'nat Mai*, the month of May; *das K'önigreich Frank'reich*, the kingdom of France; *der Rath de'ines Br'uders, des Rechts'gelehrten*, the advice of thy brother, the lawyer.

## RULE II.

When one noun is qualified by another, the latter is generally put in the genitive case; as, *die Freu'den der Ju'gend*, the pleasures of youth; *die Frucht der Erkennt'niß des G'uten und Bö'sen*, the fruit of the knowledge of good and evil.

An exception is made when the noun which qualifies another, denotes the object, of which the other is a part, only in a general manner; especially, if the qualifying noun expresses an object which may be measured, weighed, or numbered. In such instances the qualifying noun remains in the nominative, singular or plural; as, *zehn El'len Tuch* (instead of *Tu'ches*), ten yards of cloth; *ein St'ück Brod* (instead of *Bro'des*), a piece of bread; *ein Glas Wein* (instead of *Wei'nes*), a glass of wine; *ein Dutz'end Licht'er*, a dozen candles.

But the genitive is required if the qualifying noun is more exactly designated by a pronoun, or an adjective; as, *zehn El'len die'ses Tu'ches*, ten yards of this cloth; *zwei Fä'sser gu'ten Wei'nes*, two casks of good wine.

---

\* When the preceding is explained by the subsequent noun, the latter is said to be *in apposition* with the former.

*Observation.* Some nouns expressing measure, weight, or number, remain after numerals, in the nominative singular; as, *zwan'zig Fuß* (instead of *Füße*) *lång'e*, twenty feet in length; *drei Zoll* (instead of *Zölle*) *breit*, three inches in breadth; *zwei Paar* (instead of *Paare*) *Strümpfe*, three pairs of stockings.

### RULE III.

The genitive case is, frequently, supplied by the preposition *von*, of, with the dative. This is done,

1. When the article is excluded; as, *der nörd'liche Theil von Eng'land*, the northern part of England; *die Gren'zen von Frank'reich*, the boundaries of France. And, therefore,

2. When quality, condition, or proportion, is implied; as, *ein Mann von Verstan'de*, a man of sense; *ein Herr von ed'ler Den'kungsart*, a gentleman of a noble character; *ei'ne Rei'se von zehn Mei'len*, a journey of ten miles; *ein Schiff von zwei hun'dert Ton'nen*, a ship of two hundred tons; *ei'ne Sum'me von zwan'zig Pfun'den und fünf Schil'lingen*, a sum of twenty pounds and five shillings; *ein Mann von acht'zig Jah'ren*, a man of eighty years.

3. When the material is mentioned, of which any thing is made; as, *ei'ne Uhr von Gol'de*, the same as, *ei'ne gold'ene Uhr*, a gold watch; *ein Be'cher von Sil'ber*, a silver cup; *ein Stuhl von El'senbein*, an ivory chair.

4. Before the indefinite article, to denote character; as, *ein Ab'scheu von ei'nem Men'schen*, a horrible villain, (literally, a horror of a man); *ein Aus'bund von ei'nem ehr'lichen Man'ne*, a pattern of an honest man.

5. To prevent an inelegant repetition of the same endings; as, *die Ur'sache von dem son'derbaren Beträ'gen des Man'nes*, the reason of the singular conduct of the man—instead of, *die Ur'sache des son'derbaren Beträ'gens des Man'nes*.

Sometimes it is indifferent, whether *von* be made use of, or the genitive case: for example, *den Schein von Red'lichkeit ha'ben*, or, *den Schein der Red'lichkeit ha'ben*, to have the appearance of honesty; *der nörd'liche Theil von Eng'land*, or, *der nörd'liche Theil Eng'lands*, the northern part of England;

ei'ner von mei'nen Freun'den, or ei'ner mei'ner Freun'de, one of my friends. But where the genitive is not distinguished by the article, or the termination, *von* must be employed. Before the article, it is often superfluous; as, *Den Schein von der Zu'gend ha'ben*, to have the show of virtue. *Der Zu'gend*, as the genitive case, would be sufficient, without that preposition.

## RULE IV.

The genitive is commonly placed after the word, by which it is governed.

Sometimes it precedes the governing word, in which circumstance the latter loses its article; for example, *des Le'bens Freu'de*, life's joy; for, *die Freu'de des Le'bens*, the joy of life. It may happen, that the governing word, though put after the genitive, keeps the article; but then the genitive is deprived of it; as, *Volls die Meng'e*, a multitude of people; *Freu'de die Fül'le*, abundance of joy. This, however, is not to be extended beyond the phrases established by custom.

The position of the genitive, before the governing word, should be easy and unaffected; otherwise it is better to leave that case in its natural place. Thus two, or more, genitive cases, when transposed, produce a heavy and unharmonious sound, as in this example; *des gro'sen Philoso'phen Kant Le'ben*; better thus, *das Le'ben des gro'sen Philoso'phen Kant*, the life of the great philosopher Kant. And it is worse, when of two genitives, before a third word, one governs the other; as, *des Ko'nigs der Frank'en Ko'rd'nung*, instead of *die Ko'rd'nung des Ko'nigs der Frank'en*, the coronation of the king of the Franks.

*Exercises.*

The friends of right and order are contending against the passions and prejudices of the oppressors and the oppressed.

The town of Schwytz is the capital of the canton of Schwytz.

You confound John the Baptist, with John the Evangelist.

The merits of the first president of the United States.

What is the price of a hundred weight of lead?

I see a great number of children.

I want three cords of that wood.

He gave me a canister of genuine imperial tea.

I bought ten pounds of meat.

Natives of Europe displaced the aborigines of America.

He is a man of high rank and great pretensions, but no merit.

A helmet of steel, with ornaments of silver.

Is he not a model of a good son ?

friend, *Freund*, *m.* 3. b. b.

right, *Recht*, *m.* 3. b. b.

order, *Ordnung*, *f.* 1. d.

to contend, *kämpfen*.

against, *ge'gen*. (*acc.*)

passion, *Leidenschaft*, *f.* 1. d.

and, *und*.

prejudice, *Vor'urtheil*, *n.* 3. b. b.

oppressor, *Unterdrücker*, *m.* 3. a. a.

oppressed, *unterdrückt*.

town, *Stec'ken*, *m.* 3. a. a.

capital, *Haupt'ort*, *m.* 3. b. b.

canton, *Canton'*, *m.* 3. b. b.

to confound, *verwech'seln*.

John, *Johan'nes*.

Baptist, *Läu'fer*, *m.* 3. a. a.

with, *mit*. (*dat.*)

Evangelist, *Evangelist'*, *m.* 2. b.

merit, *Verdienst'*, *n.* 3. b. b.

the first, *der erste*.

president, *Präsident'*, *m.* 2. b.

united, *verei'nigt*.

state, *Staat*, *m.* 3. b. d.

price, *Preis*, *m.* 3. b. b.

hundred weight, *Cent'ner*, *m.* 3. a. a.

lead, *Blei*, *n.* 3. b. b.

to see, *se'hen*.

great, *groß*.

number, *Meng'e*, *f.* 1. c.

child, *Kind*, *n.* 3. b. e.

to want, *brau'chen*.

cord, *Klafter*, *f.* 1. a.

wood, *Holz*, *n.* 3. b. e.

to give, *ge'ben*.

canister, *Büch'se*, *f.* 1. c.

genuine, *ächt*.

imperial tea, *Kai'serthee*, *m.* 3. a.

to buy, *kau'fen*.

pound, *Pfund*, *n.* 3. b. b.

meat, *Fleisch*, *n.* 3. b. b.

native, *ein'geboren*.

Europe, *Euro'pa*.

to displace, *verdräng'en*.

aborigines, *Ur'bewohner*, *m.* 3. a. a.

man, *Mann*, *m.* 3. b. e.

high, *hoch*.

rank, *Rang*, *m.* 3. b.

pretension, *An'spruch*, *m.* 3. b. b.

but, *a'ber*.

no, *kein*.

helmet, *Helm*, *m.* 3. b. b.

steel, *Stahl*, *m.* 3. b. b.

with, *mit*. (*dat.*)

ornament, *Zie'rath*, *f.* 1. d.

silver, *Sil'ber*, *n.* 3. a. a.

not, *nicht*.

model, *Mus'ter*, *n.* 3. a. a.

good, *gut*.

son, *Sohn*, *m.* 3. b. b.

#### RULE V.

The genitive case often occurs, where there is apparently no word to govern it. Thus it expresses :

1. Relation of time. *Des Abends*, in the evening; *des Morgens*,\* in the morning; *des Mittags*, at noon; *des Nachts*,† in the night; *Sonn'abends*, on Saturday; *Montags*, on Monday; *eines Tages*, one day, on a certain day; *heutiges Tages*, this day; *einmal des Monats*, once in a month; *viermal des Jahres*, four times in a year.

2. Relation of place. *Dieses Ortes*, in this place; *gehörigen Ortes*, in or at a proper place; *aller Orte*, in all places, every where.

3. Way and manner. *Gera'des* (or *gera'den*) *We'ges*, straightways; *stehenden Fußes*, immediately; *dieser Gestalt*, in this manner; *folgender Gestalt*, in the following manner; *meines Theils*, on my part; *unsern Theils*, on our part; *meines Wissens*, to my knowledge; *meines Bedünkens*, in my opinion; *einiger Ma'sen*, in some measure; *gewisser Ma'sen*, in a certain degree; *unverrichteter Sa'che*, not having effected one's purpose. Also the following phrases: *Hungers sterben*, to die of hunger; *eines schmerzlichen Todes sterben*, to die a painful death; *der Hoff'nung leben*, to live in hope; *des Vertrauens leben*, to live with confidence, *that is*, to place confidence in a thing, to entertain a confident opinion. With the verb *sein*: as, *Willens sein*, to intend; *der Meinung sein*, to be of opinion; *des Todes sein*, to perish.

#### RULE VI.

The accusative case is employed to denote time, both as to date, and duration.—*Date*: *den zehnten Tag nach der Schlacht*, the tenth day after the battle; *so war es das erste Jahr*, thus it was (in) the first year; *den neunten Juli*, the ninth of July; *vorigen Dienstag*, last Tuesday; *drei mal die Woche* (acc.), three times a week.—*Duration*: *ich bin den ganzen Tag zu Hause gewesen*, I have been at home the whole day; *ich wer'de noch ei'nen Monat in der Stadt bleiben*, I shall remain yet a month in town; *verweilen Sie ei'nen Augenblick*,

---

\* The same idiom prevails in the Greek language; as, *ὄρθρον*, early in the morning; *νυκτός*, in the night.

† Here the article corresponds with the termination, and not with the gender, of the substantive; the addition of *s* (to *Nacht*, f. 1. b.) being formerly the characteristic of the genitive singular in all declensions.

stay one moment. The adverb lang, long, is frequently subjoined to mark the duration; as, zehn Jah're lang, for ten years.

After certain adjectives and verbs, signifying weight, measure, extent, age, price, value, such as, groß, great, breit, broad, schwer, heavy, wiegen, to weigh, kosten, to cost, the accusative follows. Ei-nen Fuß breit, a foot broad; ei-nen Monat alt, a month old; es wiegt ei-nen Zent'ner, it weighs a hundred weight.

Space and motion are indicated by the accusative. Ei-nen langen Weg gehen, to go a long way; den Berg hinun-ter laufen, to run down the mountain; er geht ei-nen guten Schritt, he walks a good pace.

#### RULE VII.

The gender is deviated from, when the meaning of the word is more regarded, than its grammatical nature. Dieses Frauenzimmer ist am schön-sten, wenn sie sich nicht schminkt, This lady is most handsome when she does not paint herself. Frauenzimmer is of the neuter gender, but the pronoun sie, she, is feminine, because this is the gender which the subject naturally has. Er liebt sein Weib nicht, son-der-n misshandelt sie, He does not love his wife, but treats her ill. Weib is neuter, and the feminine sie answers to it.

#### RULE VIII.

The English often admits a different number, in the verb, from what its subject, according to strict grammar, would require; as, "all the company *were* present;" "the army of martyrs *praise* thee." The German, however, does not allow *this* deviation, but always requires the verb to agree in number with its subject; as, die gan-ze Gesellschaft war zuge-gen.

On the other hand, in German the singular number is sometimes used collectively, in reference to more than one subject, where in English the plural would be employed. For example: zehn Men-schen ha-ben ihr Le-ben ein-ge-büßt, ten persons have lost their *life*; according to the English, *lives*. Mehr als hun-dert Bür-ger ha-ben ih-ren Na-men unterzeich-net, more than a hundred citizens have subscribed their *name*,—in English, *names*. Die ro-the, blau'e, und gel-be

*Far'be*, the red, blue, and yellow color—in English, *colors*. *Die Französ'sche und Italiä'nische Spra'che*, the French and Italian language,—in English, *languages*. In these two last examples, the German idiom may be accounted for by the figure ellipsis, thus; *die ro'the (Far'be)*, *blau'e (Far'be)*, und *gel'be Far'be*, the red (color), the blue (color), and the yellow color. *Die Französ'sche (Spra'che) und Italiä'nische Spra'che*, the French (language), and Italian language.

## CHAPTER III.

## ADJECTIVES.

## RULE I.

The adjective must agree with its substantive, in gender, number, and case.

This rule applies to the adjective not only in its first, or positive, state, but also in the degrees of comparison. The substantive is sometimes understood, yet the agreement remains: for example, *der gu'te Mann*, und *der bö'se (Mann)* understood) the good man, and the bad (man); *den zwöl'ften die'ses Mo'nates*, the twelfth of this month (*Tag*, day, understood).

## RULE II.

The place of the adjective is before the substantive; as, *der schö'ne Tag*, the fine day.

Except:

1. When it is joined to a proper name, as a title of distinction: as, *Karl der Küh'ne*, Charles the Bold; *Alexan'der der Gro'se*, Alexander the Great.

2. When the adjective stands as it were in apposition to the noun; for example, *der Held, mä'chtig im Fel'de, und wei'se im Ra'the*, the hero, powerful in the field, and wise in the council. This stands for *wel'cher mä'chtig im Fel'de, und wei'se im Ra'the ist*, who is powerful in the field, and wise in the council.

3. Adjectives derived from names of places and countries are, in certain phrases, put after substantives; as, *zehn*



Pfund Eng'lisch, ten pounds English; zwanzig Mark Lübeckisch, twenty marks of Lubeck; hundert Fuß Rhein'ländisch, one hundred feet Rhenish.

### RULE III.

Some adjectives govern cases.

1. The following govern the genitive: bedürftig, in want of; benö'thigt, in need of; bewußt, conscious, (with the reciprocal dative, and the genitive of the object; as, ich bin mir der Sache nicht bewußt, I am not conscious of that thing); ein'gedenk, mindful; fähig, capable of, (it is also joined with the preposition zu); froh, glad, satisfied, (also with the prep. ü'ber, and the accusative); gewahr', informed of, aware of, (also with the accusative: it generally occurs with the verb wer'den, to become; as, er ward der Gefahr' [genitive], or, die Gefahr' [accusative], gewahr', he perceived the danger); gewärtig, expecting; gewiß, certain; gewohnt, accustomed to, (also with the accusative); kundig, skilled in, experienced in; los, free from, rid of; mächtig, in possession of; mü'de, tired of; quitt, rid of; satt, tired of; schuldig, guilty; theil'haft, partaking of; ü'berdrüssig, tired with; verdächt'ig, suspected; verlust'ig, having forfeited or lost; voll, full of, (also with von);\* werth, worth, deserving; würdig, worthy; and the negatives corresponding to these adjectives, as, un'würdig, un'kundig, unbewußt, un'gewohnt, un'fähig, &c.

2. The following govern the dative case: äh'nlich, like, resembling; an'gemessen, adapted, suitable; an'genehm, agreeable; bekannt, known to; bequem, convenient; bang'e, anxious, fearful, (as, mir ist bang'e, I am fearful); beschwerlich, troublesome; dienlich, serviceable; furcht'bar, formidable; gehor'sam, obedient; gemäß', suited to; getreu, faithful; gewogen, inclined to, favorable; gleich, like; na'he, near; verwandt, related to; nö'thig, necessary; nützlich, useful; schädlich, hurtful; zu'träglich, conducive, useful; and others, signifying advantage, or disadvantage.—In many instances, the above adjectives take after them prepositions governing their appropriate cases; such as für, for; ge'gen, towards, against; zu, to, &c.

---

\* Sometimes it seems, as if the substantive, dependent on voll, remains in the nominative, after it; as, voll Dank'barkeit, full of gratitude, and voll Muth, instead of Muthes, full of courage.

3. Those which imply measure, weight, age, value, generally with a numeral preceding, require the accusative, and are put after the noun in their simple (indeclinable) form. Of this kind are *lang*, long; *breit*, broad; *hoch*, high; *tief*, deep; *groß*, great; *schwer*, heavy; *alt*, old; *werth*, worth; *schul'dig*, indebted, owing. For example: *zehn Fuß lang*, ten feet long; *zwölf Pfund schwer*, weighing twelve pounds; *fünfzig Jahr alt*, fifty years old; *drei Thaler werth*, worth three dollars; *er ist viel Geld schul'dig*, he owes a great deal of money. *lang*, joined in this manner to words denoting time, expresses duration: as, *zehn Jahr lang*, for ten years; *eine Zeit lang*, for a time.

*Observations.* (1.) The cardinal numbers, and the words *viel*, much or many, and *wenig*, little or few, govern the genitive; and are always put after it. They are frequently combined with the personal pronouns: as, *un'ser zwölf*, twelve of us; *euer zwanzig*, twenty of you; *ihrer dreißig*, thirty of them; *un'ser viele*, many of us; *ihrer wenig*, few of them.

(2.) The word *all*, in English, commonly has the definite article after it; as, *all the world*.—*Alle*, in German, is commonly without the article; as, *alle Welt*, all the world; *alles Geld*, all the money. There is only one construction in which this word requires the article, namely, before possessive pronouns, when used substantively; as, *alle die Meinigen*, all my friends; *alles das Un'srige*, all we possess. The article may also stand before adjectives, which are employed as substantives; as, *alle die Guten*, all the good people; *alles das Böse*, all the evil. Otherwise it is not necessary, except when a relative follows, nor even then always; as, *alle die nach'theiligen Folgen, welche daraus' entstan'den*, all the disadvantageous consequences, which arose from it. The truth is that in the instances first adduced, the article should not be considered as belonging to *alle*, but to the possessive pronouns.—*Alle* sometimes follows the word to which it belongs: for example, *die Beispiele alle*, all the examples; *die Thrä'nen alle*, all the tears; *von den übrigen allen*, of all the rest; *dieses alles*, all this, for *alles dieses*; *das alles*, for *alles das*, all that. It is always put after the personal and relative pronouns; as, *wir alle*, all of us; *sie alle*, all of them; *die Leute, welche alle zugegen wa'ren*, the people who all were present.

## Exercises.

After Alfred the Great succeeded his son, Edward the elder.  
 The Romans, brave in war, and wise in their legislation.  
 Ten dollars Saxon money are eighteen florins Rhenish.  
 Although conscious<sup>3</sup> of<sup>1</sup> his<sup>1</sup> guilt<sup>2</sup>, he<sup>3</sup> was<sup>4</sup> incapable of  
 remorse.

It is pleasant to the eye, but dangerous to the soul.

Three good leagues off.

He pleased all of us.

after, nach. (dat.)	florin, Gul'den.
great, groß.	although, wiewohl <sup>1</sup> .
to succeed, fol'gen.	guilt, Schuld, f. 1. d.
son, Sohn, m. 3. b. b.	conscious, bewusst <sup>1</sup> .
old, alt.	incapable, un'fähig.
the Roman, der Rö'mer.	remorse, Reu'e, f. 1.
brave, tap'fer.	pleasant, an'genehm.
in, in. (dat.)	but, a'ber.
war, Krieg, m. 3. b. b.	dangerous, gefähr'lich.
wise, weis'e.	good, gut.
in, in. (dat.)	league, Stun'de, f. 1. c.
legislation, Gesetz'gebung, f. 1. d.	off, weit.
dollar, Tha'ler, m. 3. a. a.	to please, gefal'len. (dat.)
Saxon, Säch'sisch.	

## CHAPTER IV.

## PRONOUNS.

## RULE 1.

Pronouns agree with the substantives to which they are prefixed, in gender, number, and case; and the relative corresponds with the antecedent substantive to which it belongs, in gender and number, the case depending upon other circumstances; as, *Glaubet uns eu'ren Freun'den, de'ren Aufrichtigkeit ihr kennt*, Believe us your friends, whose sincerity you know. Here, the genitive *de'ren*, whose, depends upon *Aufrichtigkeit*, sincerity.

## RULE II.

The pronouns are put before the substantives with which they are joined, never after them; as, *Dieses Wort ist mein Trost*, This word is my consolation. This applies particularly to pronouns *possessive* and *demonstrative*. In *Vater unser*, our father, which is the beginning of the Lord's Prayer, it might seem, as if the possessive were put after the substantive, *Vater*; but *unser*, is there the genitive plural of the pronoun of the first person, in imitation of the Greek. The *personal* pronouns are not combined with substantives, as the others are, but only bear a reference to them, and, in that reference, they agree with them in number, and the third also in gender; as, *ich will euch und ihm gleich wohl*, (*literally*, I will to you and to him equally well), I am equally a friend to you and to him. This is likewise to be observed of pronouns demonstrative and interrogative, when they stand by themselves; and the connexion between the *relative*, and its antecedent, is of a similar description; as, *Welcher von beiden hat es gesagt?* Which one of the two has said it? *Derjenige, welcher dir gegenüber sitzt*, The one who sits opposite to you.

*Observations.*—1. Speaking of any inanimate object, the English use the neuter of the pronoun of the third person *it*, all such objects being considered as of the neuter gender; the Germans, having three distinct genders, even for lifeless things, apply the pronouns accordingly. *Hier ist ein neuer Hut*, here is a new hat; *er ist sehr fein*, (he) it is very fine; *wo haben Sie ihn gekauft?* where did you buy (him) it? *Hut* is of the masculine gender; therefore, the masculine pronoun appertains to it. So, *Wie gefällt Ihnen diese Witterung?* How do you like this weather? *Sie ist sehr unangenehm*, (she) it is very unpleasant. The personal pronoun is in the feminine gender, on account of the substantive. *Das Pferd geht recht gut, aber es ist zu hitzig*, the horse goes very well, but it is too fiery. The neuter, *es*, *it*, is used because *das Pferd* is of that gender.

2. The reciprocal pronoun, in the dative case, with the definite article after it, frequently supplies the office of a possessive pronoun; as, *Ich habe mir das Bein verrenkt*, I have sprained *my* leg; *er hat sich den Hals abgeschnitten*, he has cut *his* throat.

3. A demonstrative pronoun or an equivalent adjective, is sometimes preferred to the pronoun of the third person, espe-

cially in the oblique cases, both for the sake of distinction, and of sound. When a nearer object is alluded to, *dieſer*, or *der erſtere*, the former is used; when a distant one, *je'ner*, or *der letztere*, the latter: or the whole sentence is changed. Examples: *Luise war bei Karoli'ne auf Beſuch', als ſie die Nachricht erhielt'*, Louisa was on a visit to Caroline, when she received the news. In this case, *ſie* may refer either to Louisa, or to Caroline; and therefore, if we mean the former, it is better to use *je'ne*; and if the latter, *dieſe*; instead of the ambiguous *ſie*. *Die Nachſicht die er ihm zeig'te, war ſein Verderben*, the indulgence he showed him was his ruin. If in this instance we mean the ruin of the person to whom indulgence was shown, it would be better, instead of *ſein Verderben*, to say *das Verderben des letzteren*, the ruin of the latter; but if we refer to the one who showed indulgence, we say, *das Verderben des erſteren*, the ruin of the former.

*Derſel'be* is frequently substituted for a personal pronoun; as, *Wenn man die Salzauflösung noch mehr erhitzt', ſo verdunstet dieſel'be*, or *ſie*, If we heat the solution of salt still more, it evaporates.\*

4. The genitive case of the demonstrative pronoun, *der*, *die*, *das*, viz. *deſſen*, *de'ren*, *deſſen*, in the singular, and *de'rer* or *de'ren*, in the plural, is put instead of the possessive, to avoid confusion: for example, *Cicero lies die Mitverſchworenen des Catili'na in deſſen Hauſe ergreiſen*. Cicero ordered the accomplices of Catiline to be seized in his (Catiline's) house. Here *deſſen*, stands for *ſei'nem*, and prevents, at once, all misconception; but *ſei'nem*, his, might be referred to Cicero. *Der Conſul wand'te ſich an den Senat, weil er auf deſſen Muth traute*, The consul applied to the senate, because he trusted to its (the senate's) courage. If it were *ſei'nen*, his, (*Senat* being of the masculine gender) it would be uncertain, whether the courage of the consul, or that of the senate, was intended.

---

\* In the ceremonial style which is used in speaking of persons of high rank, the pronouns *dieſel'ben*, *hoch'dieſelben*, *höchſt'dieſelben*, and *allerhöchſt'dieſelben*, with the verb in the plural after them, are used instead of the personal pronouns. The words *hoch*, high; *höchſt*, highest; and *allerhöchſt*, highest of all, with which *dieſel'ben* is compounded, mark the degree of nobility belonging to the person addressed, or spoken of.

5. It has been observed, already, that the neuter of the pronoun of the third person often begins a sentence, in connexion with a noun of a different gender and number : for example, *Es ist ein Mann*, It is a man ; *Es ist eine Frau*, It is a woman. *Es* here corresponds with a masculine, and a feminine. However, the English language admits the same mode of expression, in these instances. The peculiarity of the German appears in the following : *Es sind viele Menschen da*, There are many people ; *Es ruft der Vater*, The father is calling ; *Es kommen Leute*, People are coming. This frequently answers to the English *there* ; as, *There is a quarrel in the house*, *Es ist ein Streit im Hause* ; *There is a doubt among the learned*, *Es ist ein Zweifel unter den Gelehrten*. Sometimes this way of opening a sentence is calculated to give it more effect, than if the subject itself were placed at the beginning ; for, the attention of the hearer is excited by the expectation of the word, which is to follow. It is, therefore, often used with the subjunctive mood, to convey a forcible sentiment : for example, *Es lebe das Vaterland !* (Long) live (*the*) our country ! *Es komme mir keiner zu nahe !* Let no one approach me ! The neuters of the demonstrative pronouns are used in a similar manner ; as, *Dies* (instead of *dieses*) *ist mein Freund*, This is my friend ; *Jeines mein Feind*, That is my enemy ; *Das sind Soldaten*, Those are soldiers.

6. In regard to the manner, in which the two relative pronouns, *welcher* and *der*, are used, it may here be remarked, that the genitive of *der* is, in general, preferred to that of *welcher* ; as, *Der Mann, dessen ich gedachte*, The man I mentioned ; *Die Ehre, deren er so würdig ist*, The honor of which he is so deserving ; *Die Männer, deren Verdienste so gros sind*, Those men, whose merits are so great.—*Der* must be made use of, when a vocative case precedes ; as, *O Gott, der du alles mit Weisheit verwaltest*, O God, who governest all things with wisdom. The repetition of the personal pronoun, which, in such instances, is necessary, after the relative *der*, gives force to the sentence.—The particle *als* is sometimes found before *welcher*, as a mere expletive : *Die Fremden, als welche erst kürzlich hier angekommen sind*, The strangers, who have but lately arrived here. Now and then it may have an explanatory force, similar to the Latin *quippe qui*, but, generally speaking, it is superfluous and improper.

7. *The Dative Singular of the Pronouns of the first and second person*, *mir*, *dir*, is, in familiar language, often inserted, merely as an expletive : *Du bist mir ein schön'er gesell'e*, Thou art a fine fellow ! *Ich lö'be mir den Rhein'wein*, I give the preference to Rhenish wine ; *Das mag dir ei'ne Freu'de gewe'sen sein*, That must have been a (great) joy ! The plural is also thus found, especially in the second person : *Das war euch ei'ne Lust*, That was a pleasure ! *Das war euch ein Fest*, That was a festivity ! Or, in speaking to a person with whom we are not familiar, *Das war Ih'nen ein Fest*, That was a festivity. The third person likewise is to be met with in another connexion ; as, *Ein Krank'er der ihm starb*, One of his patients who died : here the personal *ihm*, to him, represents, in fact, the possessive *his*.

8. *The Possessive Pronoun* is, sometimes, put after the genitive case ; as, *des Vaters sein Bruder*, the father's *his* brother ; *des Knaben sei'ne Mut'ter*, the boy's *his* mother ; *der Frau ihr Kind*, the woman's *her* child, instead of, the father's brother, the boy's mother, the woman's child. In these cases the addition of *sein*, *sei'ne*, *ihr*, is in most cases useless and inelegant, and ought to be avoided.

When, in English, an individual object of possession is to be indicated, out of a greater number of the same kind, the possessive pronoun absolute, with *of* before it, is placed after the substantive ; as, *a friend of mine*, *a servant of yours*, *an acquaintance of ours*, *a book of his*. In German this must be differently expressed ; as, *ein Freund von mir*, a friend of me, or *ei'ner von mei'nen Freun'den*, one of my friends ; *ein Bedien'ter von uns*, a servant of us, or *ei'ner von un'sern Bedien'ten*, one of our servants ; *ei'nes von sei'nen Bü'chern*, one of his books ; or *ei'ner mei'ner Freun'de* ; *ei'ner un'serer Bedien'ten* ; *ei'nes mei'ner Bü'cher*.

9. *The Demonstrative* *dieser*, *die'se*, *die'ses*, may relate to what is past, present, or future. *Die'se Nacht* may signify *this night*, that is to say, the night which is now present, or which is to come, and also *last night*.

10. *The Relative Pronoun* is, in English sometimes omitted, and understood : in German it must always be expressed ; as, *The man I love*, *Der Mann den (or wel'chen) ich lö'be*. With *auch* or *auch im'mer*, following, it signifies *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whatever*, *whatsoever* ; as, *Wer auch der*

Mann sein mag, Whoever may be the man; Was auch immer die Folge sein mag, Whatever may be the consequence.

11. *Einige*, and *etliche*, some, joined with numerals, denote an undetermined excess of the number mentioned; as, *einige* or *etliche* *zwanzig Pfund*, some twenty pounds, that is, twenty odd pounds. When prefixed to a hundred, or a higher number, they intimate a repetition of the same; as, *einige hundert Menschen*, some hundreds of men; *etliche tausend Thaler*, some thousands of dollars.

12. *Alle*, in familiar language, signifies, sometimes, that a thing is consumed, finished, that nothing of it is left; as, *der Wein ist alle*, the wine is finished (all gone); *die Erdbeeren sind alle*, the strawberries are eaten.

### *Exercises.*

She, the youngest of the three sisters whom we saw<sup>2</sup> yesterday<sup>1</sup>, deserves all the praise that was<sup>6</sup> bestowed<sup>5</sup> on<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> two<sup>3</sup> others<sup>4</sup>.

Here are the portraits; which of them (do) you<sup>2</sup> like<sup>1</sup> best?

The man who does<sup>3</sup> his<sup>1</sup> duty<sup>2</sup>, despises the dangers which surround<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup>.

This painting is better than that which you have<sup>7</sup> honored<sup>6</sup> with<sup>1</sup> such<sup>3</sup> a<sup>2</sup> rich<sup>4</sup> frame<sup>5</sup>.

Which of the two suppositions appears to you most probable, this or that?

How (do) you<sup>2</sup> find<sup>1</sup> this pen? It is not sufficiently<sup>2</sup> pointed<sup>1</sup>.

He beckoned him hither with his hand.

He told him that his bills of exchange had<sup>2</sup> arrived<sup>1</sup>.

After they had<sup>4</sup> found<sup>3</sup> the<sup>1</sup> place<sup>2</sup>, they<sup>6</sup> searched<sup>5</sup> it thoroughly.

Is this or that one the gentleman you mentioned? It is neither of the two.

It is a difficult task.

These are his own words.

This is the man whose works we all so much admire.

Is he a relation of yours? He is not a relation, but a friend of mine.

Last night I<sup>2</sup> dreamt<sup>1</sup> I was walking through fifty odd rooms which contained<sup>4</sup> some<sup>1</sup> millions of<sup>2</sup> books<sup>3</sup>.

Whatever be<sup>4</sup> the<sup>1</sup> cause<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> it<sup>3</sup>, I shall know<sup>4</sup> it<sup>3</sup> this night<sup>2</sup>.



young, jung.

sister, Schwes'ter, *f.* 1. *c.*

yesterday, ges'tern.

to see, se'hen, *ir.*

to deserve, verdie'nen.

praise, lob, *n.* 3. *b.*

on, *Dat.*

the other, der an'dere.

to bestow, erthei'len.

here, hier.

portrait, Bild'niss, *n.* 3. *b.* *b.*

I like, mir gefällt' (from ge-  
fäll'en, to please).

best, am bes'ten.

man, Mann, *m.* 3. *b.* *e.*

duty, Pflicht, *f.* 1. *d.*

to do, thun.

to despise, verach'ten.

danger, Gefahr', *f.* 1. *d.*

to surround, umring'en.

painting, Gemähl'de, *n.* 3. *a.* *a.*

better, bes'ser.

than, als.

with, mit. (*Dat.*)

rich, köst'bar.

frame, Rah'men, *m.* 3. *a.* *a.*

to honor, beeh'ren.

supposition, Voraus'setzung,  
*f.* 1. *d.*

to appear, schei'nen.

most, am mei'sten.

probable, wahr'scheinlich.

or, o'der.

how, wie.

to find, fin'den.

pen, Fe'der, *f.* 1. *c.*

not, nicht.

pointed, spitz'.

sufficiently, genug'.

to beckon, wink'en. (*Dat.*)

hither, hieher'.

with, mit. (*Dat.*)

hand, Hand, *f.* 1. *b.*

to tell, sa'gen. (*Dat.*)

that, dass.

bill of exchange, Wech'sel, *m.*

3. *a.* *a.*

to arrive, an'kommen, *ir.* (with  
sein).

after, nachdem'.

place, Platz, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.*

to search, durchsu'chen.

thoroughly, gründ'lich.

gentleman, Herr, *m.* 2. *b.*

to mention, erwäh'nen.

none, kei'ner.

difficult, schwie'rig.

task, Ar'beit, *f.* 1. *d.*

own, ei'gene.

word, Wort, *n.* 3. *b.* *b.*

work, Werk, *n.* 3. *b.* *b.*

to admire, bewun'dern.

relation, Verwand'ter.

but, a'ber.

night, Nacht, *f.* 1. *b.*

I dream, es träumt mir.

to be walking, ge'hen, *ir.*

through, durch.

room, Gemach', *n.* 3. *b.* *e.*

book, Buch, *n.* 3. *b.* *e.*

to contain, enthal'ten.

cause, Ur'sache, *f.* 1. *c.*

of it, davon'.

to know, erfah'ren.

## CHAPTER V.

## VERB.

§ 1. *Persons and Numbers.*

## RULE I.

The verb must agree with its subject in number and person; as, *Wir lieben ihn wie er uns geliebt hat*, We love him as he has loved us.

*Observations.*—1. When the verb belongs to two, or more substantives of the singular number, it is commonly put in the plural; as, *liebe, Hass und Eifersucht sind heftige Leidenschaften*, Love, hatred, and jealousy, are violent passions. Sometimes, the verb stands in the singular after two or more substantives: for example, *Mord und Verwüstung herrschen im Lande*, Murder and destruction reign in the land. It is a sort of elliptical form, which should be thus supplied, *Mord herrscht im Lande, und Verwüstung herrscht im Lande*.

2. When the subjects are of different persons, the first person is preferred to the second; and the second to the third: consequently, the verb will be in the first person plural, when one of the subjects is of the first person, and in the second, if there is a second and no first person: for example, *Ich, du und dein Bruder, or du, dein Bruder und ich wollen spazieren gehen*, You, your brother, and I will take a walk. *Wollen* is in the first person plural, because one of the subjects (*du, dein Bruder und ich*) happens to be in the first person, namely, *ich*. *Du, dein Bruder, und deine Schwester seid heute eingeladen worden*, You, your brother, and your sister, have been invited to-day. *Seid*, is the second person of the verb, on account of *du*, the second person, which takes the lead in the absence of the first.

3. The verb is put in the plural number, with a subject in the singular, in titles of address; as, *Eure Excellenz haben befohlen*, Your Excellency has ordered; *Eure Majestät* (or abbreviated *Em. Majestät*) *geruhen*, your Majesty is graciously pleased; *Ihre* (or, according to an antiquated form, *Ihro*) *Gnaden bemerken*, Your Lordship observes. In the above, *haben*, *geruhen*, *bemerken*, are in the plural number. Persons of title, or rank, are sometimes

spoken of in this form, even when absent; as, *Der Herr Baron' sind hier gewesen*, My Lord Baron has been here. But persons of good taste always say, *Der Herr Baron' ist hier gewesen*.

#### RULE II.

The personal pronouns are always to be expressed, unless some other word is substituted for them; as, when a substantive governs the verb: for example, *Der Mann schreibt*, The man writes; where it would be wrong to say, *Der Mann er schreibt*, The man *he* writes; one nominative being sufficient.

*Observations.*—1. The imperative mood takes no pronoun in the second person, except for the sake of emphasis and distinction. But the third person singular and plural, and the first person plural, cannot be used without the pronoun. See the Conjugation of Verbs.

2. When two or more verbs, of the same person, come together, one pronoun or substantive may serve for them all: for example, *Ich lese und schreibe*, I read and write; *Er kam zu mir, ging a'ber bald wie'der weg*, He came to me, but soon went away again; *Wir haben Ihre Ein'ladung erhalten, dank'en für Ihre Gü'te, und werden uns das Vergnü'gen machen, Sie zu besu'chen*, We have received your invitation, thank you for your kindness, and will do ourselves the pleasure of calling upon you; *Der Feind kam, und verheer'te das Land*, The enemy came, and desolated the country.

3. The pronoun of the first person is sometimes omitted in antiquated and formal language, particularly in addressing persons of superior rank; as, *Eu're Gnaden kann hiermit versichern*, I can herewith assure your Lordship; *De'ro Schreiben habe erhalten*, I have received your letter. This notion seems to have sprung from an imaginary kind of reverence, by which he that spoke, or wrote, was too modest to mention his own person, at the same time with the person spoken to. But this awkward form of affected modesty is now abandoned.

4. In familiar language, and in poetry, the pronouns of the first and the second person are sometimes omitted; as, *Bin (instead of ich bin) so ganz verlassen hier*, I am so entirely forsaken here; *Bist (instead of bist du) mir gut?* Are you kindly disposed toward me

## Exercises.

Exorbitant riches and extreme poverty beget ambition and servility, and undermine the freedom and order of society.

Your father, you, and I, have accepted<sup>3</sup> the<sup>1</sup> invitation<sup>2</sup>.

You and her youngest brother were classmates.

Urge me no further.

Stand thou at his right hand, and let him stand<sup>4</sup> at<sup>1</sup> his<sup>2</sup> left<sup>3</sup>.

Let us go<sup>2</sup> hence<sup>1</sup>.

Be so kind as to hand me that book.

exorbitant, *ü'bermäßig.*

riches, *Reich'thümer.*

extreme, *äußerste.*

poverty, *Ar'muth.*

to beget, *erzeugen.*

ambition, *Ehr'geiz.*

servility, *Unterthänigkeit.*

to undermine, *untergraben.*

freedom, *Freiheit, f.*

order, *Ord'nung, f.*

society, *Gesellschaft, f.*

father, *Vater.*

invitation, *Einladung, f.*

to accept, *an'nehmen, ir.*

young, *jung.*

brother, *Bru'der.*

class-mate, *Schul'freund, m.*

3. b. b.

to urge, *drängen.*

no, *nicht.*

further, *weiter.*

to stand, *stehen.*

at, *zu. (dat.)*

the right hand, *die Rech'te, (an adjective used as a noun, Hand, hand, being understood.)*

to let, *lassen.*

the left hand, *die Link'e.*

to go, *gehen.*

hence, *von hin'nen.*

so, *so.*

kind, *gütig.*

as to, *und.*

to hand, *rei'chen. (imperat.)*

book, *Buch, n.*

§ 2. *Tenses.*

1. To signify past time, the German language has one absolute tense, the Perfect; and two relative tenses, the Imperfect and the Pluperfect.

The *Perfect* tense is commonly employed to express an action past, without any particular reference to other events; as, *Er hat sich gebessert*, He has become better; *Die Schiffe von Indien sind an'gekommen*, The vessels from India have arrived.

The two relative tenses are used to denote an event in reference to another.

The *Pluperfect* indicates an event in its relation to another successive event; as, *Ich war kaum an'gekommen (pluperfect), als der Krieg' erklärt' wurde*, I had scarcely arrived when war was declared.

The *Imperfect* designates an event in its relation to another, which is either past, or cotemporary, or correlative (i. e. connected by the relation of cause and effect). Accordingly, with respect to *past* events, we cannot say, *Ich war kaum angekommen als der Krieg erklärt worden ist* (perfect), but we must say, *erklärt wurde*.—If those two events, my arrival, and the declaration of war, are to be represented as *contemporaneous*, we ought to say, *Ich kam gerade an, als der Krieg erklärt wurde*, I just arrived when war was declared. *Correlative* events also are to be expressed in the same manner; as, *Da ich seine Gesinnung kannte, traute ich ihm nicht*, As I knew his character, I did not trust him. Sometimes the choice of the perfect or imperfect depends on euphony.

2. In the historical style, the present tense, is frequently substituted for the imperfect, to enliven the representation. This is sometimes done in English, but more seldom than in German.

3. The present tense is occasionally applied to a future action. *Ich reise morgen ab*, I (shall) set off to-morrow; *In drei Wochen sehen Sie mich wieder hier*, In three weeks time you (will) see me here again; *Ich komme gleich wieder*, I (shall) come back immediately.

4. The imperfect subjunctive is frequently used for the simple conditional; as, *Ich wünschte, er schreibe mir*, (instead of, *Er würde mir schreiben*,) I wished he would write to me.

5. The pluperfect subjunctive is frequently used instead of the compound conditional; as, *Wenn er angekommen wäre, so hätte man mir es ohne Zweifel geschrieben*, (instead of, *So würde man mir es ohne Zweifel geschrieben haben*,) If he had arrived, they would without doubt have written it to me.

6. The perfect is often used for the compound future; as, *Sobald ich seinen Gegner gehört habe* (instead of *gehört haben werde*), *werde ich meinen Entschluss fassen*, As soon as I have heard (*shall have heard*) his adversary, I shall form my resolution.

### Exercises.

He has begun<sup>4</sup> his<sup>1</sup> great<sup>2</sup> work<sup>3</sup>, but not<sup>2</sup> yet<sup>1</sup> finished.

He had packed<sup>4</sup> all<sup>1</sup> his<sup>2</sup> things<sup>3</sup>, and was about to depart, when he received<sup>3</sup> this<sup>1</sup> news<sup>2</sup>.

Had you learned<sup>3</sup> our<sup>1</sup> language<sup>2</sup> before you came<sup>4</sup> to<sup>1</sup> this<sup>2</sup> country<sup>3</sup>?

When he saw<sup>5</sup> the<sup>1</sup> consequences<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> his<sup>3</sup> conduct<sup>4</sup>, he<sup>7</sup> repented<sup>6</sup>, and endeavoured to<sup>7</sup> repair<sup>8</sup> the<sup>1</sup> injury<sup>2</sup> which<sup>3</sup> he<sup>4</sup> had<sup>6</sup> done<sup>5</sup>.

When he arrived, she<sup>1</sup> had<sup>1</sup> already died.

As their whole business was<sup>4</sup> carried<sup>3</sup> on<sup>3</sup> upon<sup>1</sup> credit<sup>2</sup>, (so) they must fail when the political affairs of the country were changed.

If he had<sup>3</sup> known<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>, he<sup>5</sup> would<sup>4</sup> have<sup>4</sup> come<sup>8</sup> with<sup>6</sup> me<sup>7</sup>.

When I shall<sup>4</sup> have<sup>4</sup> learned<sup>3</sup> his<sup>1</sup> decision<sup>2</sup>, I<sup>6</sup> will<sup>5</sup> communicate<sup>9</sup> it<sup>7</sup> to<sup>8</sup> you<sup>8</sup>.

great, groß.  
work, Werk, n. 3. b. b.  
to begin, begin'nen, ir.  
but, a'ber.  
yet, noch.  
not, nicht.  
to finish, en'digen.  
all, al'le.  
thing, Sa'che, f. 1. c.  
to pack, pac'ken.  
about, im Begriff'e.  
to depart, ab zu rei'sen.  
when, als.  
news, Nach'richt.  
language, Spra'che, f.  
to learn, erler'nen.  
before, e'he.  
to, in. (acc.)  
country, Land.  
to come, kom'men, ir.  
consequence, Fol'ge, f. 1. c.  
conduct, Betra'gen, n. 3. a.  
to see, se'hen, ir.  
to repent, reu'ig wer'den.  
to endeavour, sich bemü'hen.

injury, Scha'den, m. 3. a. a.  
to do, thun, ir.  
to repair, gut ma'chen.  
to arrive, an'langen.  
already, bereits.  
to die, ster'ben, ir.  
as, da.  
whole, ganz.  
business, Geschäft, n.  
upon, auf.  
credit, Credit.  
to carry on, füh'ren.  
so, so.  
they must, muff'ten sie.  
to fail, zahl'unfähig wer'den.  
political, öff'entlich.  
affair, Un'gelegenheit, f. 1. d.  
to be changed, sich än'dern.  
if, wenn.  
to know, wis'sen, ir.  
with, mit. (dat.)  
when, sobald.  
decision, Entschei'dung, f.  
to learn, erfah'ren.  
to communicate, mit'theilen.

### § 3. *The Moods.*

The *Indicative* and *Imperative* require no elucidation.

#### RULE I.

The *Subjunctive* is to be used; 1. When a state of uncertainty is implied. It is, therefore, to be found after some

conjunctions, which convey that idea. Such are, in many cases, *wenn*, if; *als wenn*, as if; *ob*, whether; *damit*, in order that; *dass*, that. But the subjunctive mood must not be supposed to be governed by those conjunctions. It solely depends upon the uncertainty, or doubtfulness, with which the action of the verb is conceived. Thus the subjunctive occurs after *dass*, when any one of these verbs precedes: *bit'ten*, to beg; *ra'then*, to advise; *ermah'nen*, to exhort; *besor'gen*, to apprehend; *fürch'ten*, to fear; *schei'nen*, to appear, to seem; *beding'en*, to make conditions; *wün'schen*, to wish; *woll'en*, to desire; *zwei'feln*, to doubt, &c. For, when we *beg, advise, exhort, apprehend, fear, wish, desire*, that a thing be done, a degree of uncertainty exists, as to the event. This is farther manifest from the verb *sa'gen*, to say, and similar ones; as, *ant'worten*, to answer; *behaup'ten*, to maintain, &c. When that which is said or maintained, remains, in our opinion, liable to doubt, the subjunctive should follow after *dass*: for example, *Man sagt mir, dass es gedon'kert ha'be*, They tell me that there has been thunder; *Un'ser Freund behaup'tet, dass dies ein frucht'bares Jahr sein wer'de*, Our friend maintains, that this will be a fruitful year. When, on the other hand, the idea is considered as positive, and unquestionable, the indicative must be made use of: for instance, when a person speaks of himself; as, *Ich behaup'te, dass es wahr ist*, I maintain that it is true. Here, the subjunctive would be wrong, because the notion is strongly affirmative. If what a person maintains be not certain, in his own conception, he should look for another expression, such as, *ich glau'be, ich den'ke*, I believe, I think. *Ich weis, dass er das Geld bekom'men hat*, I know that he has received the money; the indicative, for the same reason.—The conjunction, *wenn*, if, does not require the subjunctive mood after it, except when the sentence to which it belongs is connected with one that contains a conditional future; as, *Ich wü'r'de es thun, wenn es mög'lich wä're*, I should do it, if it were possible. Here *wä're*, the verb belonging to *wenn*, is in the subjunctive mood, because the preceding sentence contains a conditional future, *I should do it*. It is evident, that the subjunctive rests upon the opinion that is formed of the certainty or uncertainty in the action of the verb. It is a natural consequence of this, that, in some circumstances, it may be questioned, whether the indicative or the subjunctive be more proper; the decision will be according to the point of view, in which the sentence is contemplated.

2. The subjunctive mood is used when *dass* or *wenn* is to be supplied; as, *er glaubt, es sei nicht möglich*, he thinks (*that*) it is not possible; *man sagt, der Kaiser habe Frieden gemacht*, they say (*that*) the Emperor has made peace. In these examples, the indicative might also pass, without censure. But not so, when the verb, before which *wenn*, *if*, is to be supplied, stands at the beginning of the sentence; as in the following, *wäre ich an Ihrer Stelle*, were I in your place, instead of, *wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre*, if I were in your place; *hätte er die Schätze des Croesus*, had he the treasures of Croesus, for *wenn er die Schätze des Croesus hätte*, if he had the treasures of Croesus. Thus, *sollte sich das ereignen*, should that happen; *sollte er nicht kommen*, should he not come, for, *if that should happen*, *if* he should not come.—Sometimes the conjunction *wenn*, *if*, is to be understood before the present tense, though this tense cannot, under those circumstances, be put in the subjunctive, but must be in the indicative mood. Examples: *bist du reich, so gib viel*; *bist du arm, so gib dein Weniges gerne*, *if thou art rich*, give much; *if thou art poor*, give thy little cheerfully. *Hörst du was böses, das sage nicht nach*, *if thou hearest anything bad*, do not repeat it.

3. It frequently has a potential signification, expressing, either a wish; as, *der Himmel gebe es*, may Heaven grant it; *Gott behüte*, God forbid:—or a permission, and concession; as, *er gehe wohin er wolle*, let him go where he pleases:—or a supposition; as, *es wäre besser, wenn wir Ihren Rath befolgt hätten*, it would be better, if we had followed your advice; as, *die Franzosen hätten die Schlacht nicht gewonnen, wenn sie nicht eine so große Uebermacht an Leuten gehabt hätten*, the French would not have gained the battle, if they had not had such superior numbers:—or surprise, or wonder; as, *hätte ichs doch nicht geglaubt*! I should not have thought it!

## RULE II.

*The Infinitive Mood* occurs either *without* the preposition *zu*, or *with* it.

a. Without *zu*.

1. When it stands by itself and unconnected, for example, in a vocabulary; as, *lieben*, to love; *sehen*, to see.

2. When it is in the room of a substantive, either as the subject, or as the object; as, *versprechen und erfüllen sind*



*zwei verschiedene Sachen*, to promise and to fulfil are two different things; *das nen'ne ich fecht'en*, that I call to fight, or fighting; *das hei'ße ich grau'sam verfab'ren*, that I call to act cruelly, or acting cruelly.

3. After the verbs, *kö'n'nen*, to be able; *mö'gen*, to like; *las'sen*, to suffer, or cause; *dür'fen*, to be permitted; *sol'sen*, to be obliged; *wol'sen*, to will; *müs'sen*, to be forced; and *wer'den*, when it is the auxiliary to the future tense; as, *ich wer'de fra'gen*, I shall ask; and similar verbs.

4. After the verbs, *hei'sen*, to bid; *hel'sen*, to help; *leh'ren*, to teach; *ler'nen*, to learn; *hö'ren*, to hear; *se'hen*, to see; *füh'len*, to feel. For example: *ich hies ihn ge'hen*, I bid him go; *er hilfst mir schrei'ben*, he helps me to write, that is, he assists me in writing; *der Va'ter lehrt das Kind le'sen*, the father teaches the child to read; *wir ler'nen tan'zen*, we learn to dance; *ich hö're sie sing'en*, I hear them sing; *ich se'he ihn kom'men*, I see him come or coming; *er fühl'te sein Blut gäh'ren*, he felt his blood boil or boiling.—After some of these verbs, the English more commonly use the participle; but the Germans constantly employ the infinitive. *leh'ren* and *ler'nen* sometimes admit *zu* before the infinitive that follows them.

5. Some verbs are joined to an infinitive, without *zu*, in particular phrases. These are:

*Blei'ben*, to remain—with the infinitive, it signifies continuance of locality; as, *er bleibt lie'gen*, he continues lying; *er bleibt sit'zen*, he continues sitting, he keeps his seat, he does not move from his seat; *er bleibt ste'h'en*, he continues standing. It is used in the same manner with *ste'cken*, to stick fast; *hän'gen*, to hang; *kni'en*, to kneel; *kle'ben*, to adhere, to stick. *Fah'ren*, to go in a carriage, with *spazie'ren*; as, *ich fah're spazie'ren*, I drive out for exercise, for an airing.

*Fin'den*, to find, is occasionally followed by the infinitive, where the English put the participle. *Er fand sie schla'fen*, he found them sleeping or asleep; *ich fand das Buch auf dem Ti'sche lie'gen*, I found the book lying upon the table. The participle might here be used even in German.

*Ge'hen*, to go; as, *ich ge'he spazie'ren*, I take a walk; *er geht schla'fen*, he goes to bed, (literally, *he goes to sleep*); and with some other verbs.

*Ha'ben*, to have, in these and similar phrases; *er hat gut rei'sen*, he has good travelling; *sie ha'ben gut spre'chen*, you

may well say so; wir haben Geld auf Zinsen stehen, we have money out on interest.

Sich legen, to lay one's self down, with schlafen, to sleep; as, ich lege mich schlafen, I lay myself down to sleep.

Machen, when it signifies to cause, to occasion; as, er macht mich lachen, he makes me laugh; er macht mich weinen, he makes me cry.

Reiten, to ride on horseback, with spazieren; as, ich reite spazieren, I take a ride.

Thun, to do, with nichts, als, after it; as, die Frau thut nichts als zanken, the woman does nothing but quarrel; der Mann thut nichts als schelten, the man does nothing but scold.

#### b. With zu.

1. After substantives and adjectives, when in English either *to*, with the infinitive, or *of*, with the participle, is used: for example, after a substantive, lust zu spielen, an inclination to play; das Vergnügen sie zu sehen, the pleasure of seeing you; der Wunsch gelobt zu werden, the wish of being praised:—after an adjective, ich war froh meinen Freund wieder zu sehen, I was happy to see my friend again; müde zu stehen, tired of standing; neugierig zu wissen, curious to know; begierig zu erfahren, anxious to be informed.

2. After verbs, when purpose or design are intimated. Ich ging zu dem Manne, ihm die Sache vorzustellen und mit ihm darüber zu sprechen, I went to the man, to represent the thing to him, and to converse with him about it. And here the participle *um*, is frequently joined with *zu*, which expresses design still more distinctly; as, liebet die Arbeit, um glücklich zu sein, love labor (in order) to be happy.

3. After the following verbs and others of a similar signification: anfangen, to begin; aufhören, to cease; befehlen, to command; bitten, to beg; erwarten, to expect; hoffen, to hope; fürchten, to fear; drohen, to threaten; pflegen, to be wont; behaupten, to maintain; erkennen, to acknowledge, with the infinitive in the perfect tense; as, er erkennt, sich geirrt zu haben, he acknowledges himself to have been mistaken; bekennen, to confess, with the infinitive perfect; as, er bekennt das Geld erhalten zu haben, he confesses having received the money; scheinen, to appear, to seem; wünschen, to wish; verlangen, to desire; ermangeln, to fail; erlauben, to permit; gestatten, to allow; verdienen, to deserve; wagen, to

venture; *ha'ben*, to have; as, *ich ha'be Ih'nen et'was zu sa'gen*, I have something to tell you; *sein*, to be; as, *es ist zu fürch'ten*, it is to be feared; *wis'sen*, to know how; as, *er weis es zu ma'chen*, he knows how to do it; and these verbs; *hel'fen*, *nüt'zen*, *from'men*, when they signify to be of use, to answer a purpose.

4. The prepositions *oh'ne*, without, and *statt* or *anstatt'*, instead of, require *zu* before the infinitive. The English construe these with the participle; as, *oh'ne zu wis'sen*, without knowing, (Fr. *sans savoir*); *statt zu schla'fen*, instead of sleeping; *anstatt' zu schrei'ben*, instead of writing.

In English, the infinitive, with *to*, is put after some verbs, where the Germans prefer the conjunction *dass*; with the indicative, or subjunctive: for example, *I knew him to be the man*, *ich wuss'te, dass er der Mann war*; *they thought me to be mistaken*, *sie dach'ten, dass ich mich ir'rete*; *he believed it to be true*, *er glaub'te, dass es wahr wa're*.—The infinitive with *to*, is also employed by the English, after such words as, *when*, *where*, *how*, *which*, *what*, *whose*, *whom*, when certain verbs, such as, *to know*, *to tell*, *to be told*, and the like, precede. For example, *you know how to write it*; *I will tell you what to do*; *teach me what to say*. In German, the indicative or subjunctive of some helping verb, such as, *muß*, *soll*, *must*, *ought*, *shall*, is to be made use of; as, *Sie wis'sen, wie Sie es schrei'ben müssen*, you know how you must write it; *ich will Ih'nen sa'gen, was Sie thun müssen*, I will tell you what you must do; *leh'ren Sie mich, was ich sa'gen soll*, teach me what I shall say.

*The Infinitive*, with *zu*, is used, where the English employ the participle, with a preposition, such as *of*, *from*, and others. For example, *Das Vergnü'gen ei'nen Freund zu se'h'en*, the pleasure of seeing a friend; *Gele'genheit zu rei'sen*, opportunity of travelling. *Ich wu'r'de ab'gehalten zu schrei'ben*, I was prevented from writing.

*Observations*.—1. *The Infinitive* of the active voice, after certain verbs, seems to have a passive signification, while in fact this peculiarity arises from the omission of the immediate object of these verbs. *lass ihn ru'fen*, let him call, may also signify let him be called, in which case it stands for *lass je'manden ihn ru'fen*, let some one call him. The same remark applies to other similar expressions; as, *der Richt'er hies ihn bin'den*, the judge ordered him to bind, also to be

bound; wir sa'hen ihn schla'gen, we saw him beating, also beaten. In phrases like these, die'ser Um'stand ist zu erwä'gen, literally, this circumstance is to consider, for, to be considered, the infinitive is used as a noun; as, die'ser Um'stand ist zum (or zu dem) Erwä'gen, this circumstance is for considering, i. e. worth considering or to be considered. But in the use of this construction, care must be taken to avoid ambiguity.

2. The *Infinitive* of the verbs dür'sen, sol'len, kön'nen, mö'gen, las'sen, müs'sen, wol'len, hö'ren, se'hen, is substituted for the *Past Participle*, when an infinitive precedes. Ich ha'be es nicht thun dür'sen (for gedurft'), I was not allowed to do it; du hättest kom'men sol'len (for gesollt'), you ought to have come; wir hät'ten es se'hen kön'nen (for gekonnt'), we might have seen it; er hat ein Haus bau'en las'sen (for gelas'sen), he has caused a house to be built; ich ha'be ihn an'hören müs'sen (for gemusst'), I have been obliged to listen to him; hät'ten wir aus'gehen wol'len (for gewollt'), had we been inclined to go out; ich ha'be ihn re'den hö'ren (for gehört'), I have heard him speak; ich ha'be ihn rei'ten se'hen (for gese'hen), I have seen him ride.—leh'ren, to teach, and ler'nen, to learn, likewise allow the use of this infinitive; though the past participle is, at present, more frequently employed; as, er hat mich schrei'ben leh'ren, or gelehrt', he has taught me to write; ich ha'be bei ihm zeich'nen ler'nen, or gelernt', I have learnt of him to draw.

#### RULE III.

The *Past Participle* of certain verbs, is united with the verb kom'men, to come, in an active signification, to express the manner of coming; as, er kömmt gerit'ten, he comes riding on horseback; er kömmt gegangen, he comes walking, on foot; er kömmt gefah'ren, he comes riding in a carriage. Sometimes the past participle is substituted for the imperative mood; as, Ros'en auf den Weg gestreut', und des Harms verges'sen! strew roses on the path, and forget sorrow! die Stu'be auf'geräuml'! clear the room! in which examples gestreut', verges'sen, and auf'geräuml', are past participles.

#### Exercises.

I asked you if you had<sup>3</sup> been<sup>2</sup> there<sup>1</sup>.

They praised us that we might<sup>4</sup> return<sup>3</sup> the<sup>1</sup> compliment<sup>2</sup>.

I always<sup>2</sup> thought<sup>1</sup> that he would<sup>3</sup> please<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>.

Promise me that you will<sup>3</sup> follow<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup>, if he sets<sup>4</sup> you<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> example<sup>3</sup>.

If you had<sup>3</sup> known<sup>2</sup> him,<sup>1</sup> you could not<sup>4</sup> have<sup>6</sup> asked<sup>5</sup> such<sup>2</sup>  
a<sup>1</sup> question<sup>3</sup>.

Are you satisfied? then let us go.

May wisdom be<sup>3</sup> your<sup>1</sup> guide<sup>2</sup>.

Had I not<sup>3</sup> told<sup>4</sup> it<sup>1</sup> to<sup>2</sup> them,<sup>2</sup> they would have<sup>3</sup> no<sup>1</sup> guilt<sup>2</sup>.

To come, to see, and to conquer, were almost simultane-  
ous acts.

I saw him paint, and you heard him sing.

She does nothing but weep and lament.

It avails nothing to<sup>2</sup> say<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup>, if we (*do*) not venture to<sup>2</sup> do<sup>3</sup>  
it<sup>1</sup>, without waiting<sup>3</sup> any<sup>1</sup> longer<sup>2</sup>.

I know not how to tell her, without hurting<sup>3</sup> her<sup>1</sup> feelings<sup>2</sup>.

You have wished to<sup>3</sup> see<sup>4</sup> it<sup>1</sup> accomplished<sup>2</sup>; it is now no  
more to be altered.

I was willing to let him go on, but was not able to endure  
his increasing folly.

Rise up, and move<sup>3</sup> your<sup>2</sup> hands<sup>1</sup>!

to ask, *fra'gen*.

if, *ob*.

there, *da*.

to praise, *lo'ben*.

that, *damit*.

compliment, *Urtigkeit, f*.

to return, *erwie'dern*.

I may, *ich mag, ir*.

to think, *den'ken, ir*.

always, *im'mer*.

that, *dass*.

to please, *gefal'len*.

to promise, *verspre'chen, ir*.

(*dat.*)

to follow, *fol'gen*.

I will, *ich will, ir*.

example, *Bei'spiel, n. 3. b. b*.

to set, *ge'ben, ir*.

to know, *ken'nen, ir*.

I can, *ich kann, ir*.

such a (one), *ein sol'cher*.

to ask a question, *ei'ne Fra'ge*

*thun, ir*.

satisfied, *befrie'digt*.

to let, *las'sen*.

to go, *ge'hen*.

wisdom, *Weis'heit*.

guide, *Selei'terin, f*.

to tell, *sa'gen*.

no guilt, *kei'ne Schuld*.

to come, *kom'men*.

to see, *se'hen*.

to conquer, *sie'gen*.

almost, *beina'he*.

simultaneous, *gleich'zeitig*.

act, *Hand'lung, f. 1. d*.

to paint, *mal'len*.

to hear, *ho'ren*.

to sing, *sing'en*.

nothing, *nichts*.

but, *als*.

to weep, *wei'nen*.

to lament, *kla'gen*.

to avail, *from'men*.

to venture, *wa'gen*.

without, *oh'ne*.

any, *ir'gend*.

long, *lang*.

to wait, *war'ten*.

how, *wie*.

feelings, *Gefuhl'*.

to hurt, *verlet'zen*.

to wish, *wu'n'schen*.

to accomplish, *vollbring'en, ir*.

now, nun.  
more, mehr.  
to alter, än'dern.  
to rise up, aufstehen.

your, *def. art.*  
hand, \*Hand, *f. 1. b.*  
to move, re'gen.

#### § 4. The Auxiliaries.

When the same auxiliary belongs to more than one verb, it need be only once employed; as, *ich ha'be es gehört und gesehen*, I have heard and seen it; *wir ha'ben geschrieben, gelesen, und gesprochen*, we have written, read, and talked. It would encumber the sentence, to express the auxiliary more than once in these examples. The English language coincides in this with the German. But the latter has a peculiarity, which is not found in most other tongues; namely, that the auxiliaries *ha'ben* and *sein*, when placed at the end of a sentence, may be omitted. For example: *Mein Freund hat mir gesagt, dass er Ihren Brief gelesen*, my friend has told me, that he has read your letter. After *gelesen*, the auxiliary *ha'be*, or *hat*, is to be understood. It would be quite as well, if it were expressed, though sometimes the omission has a good effect, by preventing the monotonous repetition of the same auxiliary word.\* The auxiliary *wer'den*, though at the end of the sentence, can never be left out.

#### Exercises.

The trial is finished, and the sentence is passed.

He would have<sup>10</sup> been<sup>9</sup> taken<sup>3</sup> to<sup>1</sup> account<sup>2</sup> and<sup>4</sup> judged<sup>8</sup> by<sup>5</sup> our<sup>6</sup> law<sup>7</sup>, if he had<sup>9</sup> not<sup>2</sup> judged<sup>4</sup> him<sup>1</sup>self<sup>3</sup> and<sup>5</sup> abdicated<sup>8</sup> his<sup>6</sup> power<sup>7</sup>.

As soon as he had<sup>10</sup> arranged<sup>3</sup> his<sup>1</sup> affairs<sup>2</sup>, and<sup>4</sup> taken<sup>9</sup> leave<sup>8</sup> of<sup>5</sup> his<sup>6</sup> friends<sup>7</sup>, he<sup>12</sup> departed<sup>11</sup>.

trial, *Recht'streit, m.*

finished, *geen'det.*

sentence, *Ur'theil, n.*

passed, *gefällt'.*

to take to account, *zur Re=*  
*chenschaft zie'hen, ir.*

by, *nach. (dat.)*

law, *Gesetz', n. 3. b. b.*

to judge, *rich'ten.*

power, *Macht, f.*

to abdicate, *nie'derlegen.*

as soon as, *so bald als.*

affair, *An'gelegenheit, f. 1. b.*

to arrange, *berich'tigen.*

from, *von. (dat.)*

his friends, *die Sei'nigen.*

leave, *Ab'schied, m. 3. b. b.*

to take, *neh'men, ir.*

to depart, *ab'reisen.*

\* The Swedes use a similar freedom.

§ 5. *The Verb governing Cases.*

## RULE I.

*The Nominative case, as the object, is required,*

1. By the following verbs : *sein*, to be ; *wer'den*, to become ; *bleiben*, to remain ; *hei'sen*, to be called, to bear a name ; *schei'nen*, to seem. Examples : *Fried'rich war ein großer Feld'herr*, Frederic was a great general ; *mein Bruder ist Soldat' geworden*, my brother is become a soldier ; *er bleibt ein Thor, wie er immer war*, he remains a silly man, as he always was ; *dieser Mensch hei'st der O'berste*, this man is called the colonel ; *es scheint ein guter Plan*, it seems a good plan. The nouns, after the verbs, are here all in the nominative case.

2. By the passive voice of such verbs, as, in the active, govern a double accusative : for example, *nen'nen*, to call, to name—*er wird ein ehr'licher Mann genannt'*, he is called an honest man ; *hei'sen*, to call, to name ; *tau'fen*, to christen—*das Kind ist Hein'rich getauft' worden*, the child has been christened Henry. *Hein'rich*, is here the nominative case. *Sche'l'ten*, to abuse—*er wird ein Betrü'ger geschol'ten*, he is abused as a cheat ; *schim'pfen*, to insult by opprobrious appellations—*er ward eine Mem'me geschimpft'*, he was insulted as a coward. Some verbs occur, in English, with two accusatives in the active, and two nominatives (namely one as the subject before, and the other as the object after the verb) in the passive voice ; where, in German, the second accusative is construed with a preposition. Such are the verbs, *to appoint*, *to choose*, *to declare*, and the like : for example, *er ist zum Doc'tor gemacht' worden*, he has been made a doctor ; *er ist zum Rich'ter ernannt' worden*, he has been appointed judge ; *er wurde für einen Spig'buben erklärt'*, he was declared a thief. Here the prepositions *zu* and *für*, are required, while in English the nominative case is sufficient. Sometimes the verb *leh'ren*, to teach, is joined with a double accusative, in the active voice ; as, *jemanden Musik' leh'ren*, to teach a person music. The dative also is used with the verb *leh'ren*—*einem et'was leh'ren*, to teach something to a person.

3. The reflexive verbs are followed by a nominative, after *als*, or *wie*, *as* : for example, *er beträ'gt sich als ein rechtschaffener Mann*, he conducts himself *as* an honest man ;

er zeich'net sich als ein gu'ter Soldat' aus, he distinguishes himself as a good soldier. But it must be observed, that this nominative case is not governed by the reflective verb. The phrase is elliptical, and, at full length, would be, er beträgt' sich, als ein recht'schaffener Mann sich beträgt', he conducts himself, as an honest man conducts himself; er zeich'net sich aus, als ein gu'ter Sol'dat' sich aus'zeichnet, he distinguishes himself, as a good soldier distinguishes himself. The same takes place after verbs, which are not reflective; as, der Kna'be schreibt wie ein Mann, the boy writes as a man; for der Kna'be schreibt, wie ein Mann schreibt, the boy writes as a man writes. If the case be referred to the reflective verb, it must be the accusative: for example, er zeigt sich als ei'nen tüch'tigen Feld'herrn, he shows himself an able general.

### Exercises.

Although he seems<sup>7</sup> to<sup>5</sup> be<sup>6</sup> a<sup>1</sup> man<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> talent<sup>4</sup>, he<sup>9</sup> wills never become<sup>3</sup> an<sup>1</sup> artist<sup>2</sup>, but remain<sup>3</sup> a<sup>1</sup> bungler<sup>2</sup>.

He was at first called<sup>4</sup> a<sup>1</sup> great<sup>2</sup> man<sup>3</sup>, but afterward insulted<sup>3</sup> (as) a<sup>1</sup> villain<sup>2</sup>.

By the mark (which) they put<sup>4</sup> upon<sup>1</sup> this<sup>2</sup> pawn<sup>3</sup>, they<sup>6</sup> made<sup>5</sup> him a knight.

He first<sup>3</sup> conducted<sup>1</sup> himself<sup>2</sup> toward others as an unprincipled man, and then<sup>2</sup> treated<sup>1</sup> himself<sup>3</sup> as his bitterest enemy.

although, obgleich'.

talent, An'lage, f. c.

to seem, schei'nen.

never, nie'mals.

artist, Künst'ler, m.

to become, wer'den.

but, son'dern.

bungler, Stüm'per, m.

to remain, blei'ben.

at first, zuerst'.

great, groß.

to call, nen'nen.

afterward, nachher'.

villain, Verbre'cher, m.

to insult, schel'ten.

by, durch, (acc.)

mark, Merk'zei'chen, n. 3. a. a.

upon, an, (dat.)

pawn, Bau'er, m. 2. a.

to put, an'bringen, ir.

to make, ma'chen.

knight, Spring'er.

to conduct one's self, sich betra'gen, ir.

first, zuerst'.

toward, ge'gen. (acc.)

unprincipled, gewis'senlos.

then, dann.

to treat, behan'deln.

bitter, bit'ter.

enemy, Feind, m. 3. b. b.



## RULE II.

The Genitive case is governed,

1. By verbs; as, *an'klagen*, to accuse of; *bedürfen*, to be in need of, (sometimes construed with the accusative case); *beschul'digen*, to accuse of, to charge with; *beraub'en*, to rob; *überhe'ben*, to disburden, *wür'digen*, to deign, to think worthy of. The thing that we are accused of, in need of, charged with, robbed of, freed from, thought worthy of, is put in the genitive case: for example, *je'manden des Mor'des an'klagen*, to accuse a person of murder; *je'manden der Berrätherei' beschul'digen*, to charge a person with treachery; *je'manden sei'nes Vermö'gens beraub'en*, to rob a person of his fortune; *je'manden der Mü'he überheben*, to free a person from trouble; *je'manden gro'ser Eh're wür'digen*, to think a person worthy of great honor.

2. The following take the genitive case of the thing, and the accusative of the person; but they may also be placed in some other construction; *gewäh'ren*, to grant; *entblö'sen*, to strip; *entlass'en*, to dismiss; *entla'den*, to disburden; *entle'digen*, to free from, to acquit, to disencumber; *entset'zen*, to displace; *überfüh'ren* or *überweisen*, to convict; *überzeug'en*, to convince; *versich'ern*, to assure; *verweisen*, to banish. For example: *jemanden sei'nes Wunsch'es gewäh'ren*, to grant to a person his wish, that which he wishes; *einen Mann sei'nes Am'tes entset'zen*, to discharge a man from his office; *sich ei'ner last entle'digen*, to disencumber one's self of a burden; *den Schul'digen sei'nes Verbre'chens überfüh'ren*, to convict a guilty person of his crime; *ich versich'ere dich mei'ner Freundschaft*, I assure thee of my friendship. Those beginning with *ent* and *über*, may be construed with the preposition *von*, and the dative; as, *je'manden von sei'ner last entla'den*, to free a person from his burden; *je'manden von sei'nem Dien'ste entlass'en*, to dismiss a person from his office; *je'manden von sei'nem Irr'thume überzeug'en*, to convince a person of his error. *Gewäh'ren*, and *versich'ern*, are more frequently joined with the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing; as, *ich gewäh're dir dei'ne Bit'te*, I grant (to) you your request; *ich versich'ere es dir*, I assure (it to) you. *Versich'ern* is likewise combined with the preposition *von*; as, *ich bin von der Sa'che versichert*, I am assured of the thing.—*Beleh'ren*, has the genitive of the thing, in the expression, *je'manden ei'nes bes'sern beleh'ren*, to inform a per-

son of what is better, to set him right. But commonly *von* is made use of—*er hat mich von der Sa'che belehrt*.

3. Several reflective verbs are construed with the genitive case of the thing. Such are, *sich an'masen*, to claim; as, *sich ei'nes Titels an'masen*, to claim a title, (more frequently with the accusative, *sich ei'nen Titel an'masen*); *sich (ei'ner Sa'che) an'nehmen*, to interest one's self in a thing; *sich beden'ken*, to consider; *sich besin'nen*, to think upon; *sich bedie'nen*, to make use of; *sich bege'ben*, to resign, to give up; *sich bemäch'tigen*, *sich bemei'stern*, to make one's self master of a thing, to gain possession of it; *sich enthal'ten*, to abstain; *sich entschla'gen*, to get rid of a thing; *sich entsin'nen*, to recollect; *sich erbar'men*, to have mercy, to have compassion; *sich erin'nern*, to remember; *sich erweh'ren*, to resist; *sich freu'en*, to rejoice in, to enjoy; *sich getrü'sten*, to hope for with confidence; *sich rüh'men*, to boast of; *sich schä'men*, to be ashamed; *sich unterfang'en*, *unterwin'den*, to venture on, to undertake; *sich verse'h'en*, to be aware of; *sich weigern*, to refuse.\* Also some impersonals; as, *es reut* or *gereut' mich*, I repent; *mich jam'mert*, I pity, am sorry for; *es verlangt' mich*, I desire; *es verlohnt' sich (der Mühe)*, it is worth (the trouble). Many of these verbs also admit other cases and prepositions.

4. The verbs *sein*, to be, and *wer'den*, to become, have the genitive case after them, in some phrases; as, *der Mei'nung sein*, to be of opinion; *Will'ens sein*, to purpose; *San'dels ei'nig wer'den*, to agree upon a bargain.

5. The following govern either the genitive, or the accusative, the former being more usual with some of them, and the latter with others: *ach'ten*, to mind, to care about; *bedür'fen*, to want; *begeh'ren*, to desire; *entbeh'ren*, to want, to be without; *erwäh'nen*, to mention; *genie'sen*, to enjoy; *pfl'e'gen*, to foster, to take care of; *scho'nen*, to spare; *spot'ten*, to mock; *verge'ssen*, to forget; *war'ten*, to attend to, to take care of; as, *sei'nes Am'tes war'ten*, to attend to one's office.—*Seden'ken*, to remember, to think of, has the genitive after it, and sometimes the preposition *an* with the accusative.

---

\* The reflective, or reciprocal pronoun, in most of these verbs, is in the accusative case: *an'masen* has it in the dative; which appears, when it is put in the first person; as, *ich ma'ße mir dies an*, this I pretend to.

The combination of the genitive case with verbs was formerly more frequent, than it is at the present day. It is found in old writings after many verbs, which now take other cases, or are followed by prepositions. For instance, to express a part of a thing, the mere genitive was put, where a preposition is now more commonly employed; as, *iss des Bro'des*, eat of the bread; *trink'e des Wei'nes*, drink of the wine; *nimm des Getrei'des*, take of the corn. In modern language it would be, *iss von dem Bro'de*, *trink'e von dem Wei'ne*.

### Exercises.

He is charged<sup>2</sup> (*with*) ingratitude<sup>1</sup> and accused<sup>3</sup> of<sup>1</sup> slander<sup>1</sup>, and no one takes pity on him, to<sup>4</sup> free<sup>5</sup> him<sup>1</sup> (*from*) his<sup>2</sup> imprisonment<sup>3</sup>.

Deprived<sup>4</sup> of<sup>1</sup> his<sup>1</sup> former<sup>2</sup> friends<sup>3</sup>, he<sup>6</sup> finds<sup>5</sup> no lawyer who will<sup>4</sup> engage<sup>3</sup> in<sup>3</sup> his<sup>1</sup> cause<sup>2</sup>.

They deposed him from his office, and seized upon his person.

While I mention<sup>7</sup> his<sup>1</sup> good<sup>2</sup> deeds<sup>3</sup> in<sup>4</sup> which<sup>4</sup> we<sup>5</sup> rejoice<sup>6</sup>, I<sup>9</sup> am<sup>8</sup> not willing to<sup>7</sup> spare<sup>8</sup> his<sup>1</sup> errors<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> which<sup>4</sup> he<sup>4</sup> is<sup>6</sup> convicted<sup>5</sup>.

I (*do*) not<sup>2</sup> recollect<sup>1</sup> the circumstances which you mentioned.

Give up the power which you have<sup>2</sup> assumed<sup>1</sup>.

We (*do*) not<sup>4</sup> want<sup>1</sup> your<sup>2</sup> services<sup>3</sup>.

ingratitude, die Un'dankbar-  
keit, *f*.

to charge, beschul'digen.

slander, die Verläum'dung, *f*.

to accuse, an'klagen.

no one, nie'mand.

to take pity, sich erbar'men.

imprisonment, Haft, *f*.

to free, entle'digen.

former, eh'malig.

to deprive, beraub'en.

to find, fin'den.

cause, Sa'che, *f*.

to engage in, sich an'nehmen,  
*ir*.

while, wäh'rend.

deed, That, *f*. 1. d.

to rejoice, sich freu'en.

to mention, erwäh'nen.

to be willing, Will'ens sein.

error, Berir'ung, *f*. 1. d.

to be convicted, überwie'sen  
sein.

to spare, scho'nen.

to recollect, sich erin'nern.

circumstance, \*Um'stand *m*.

3. b. b.

to mention, gedenk'en, *ir*.

to give up, sich begeb'en, *ir*.

power, Gewalt', *f*.

to assume, sich an'massen.

to want, bedür'fen.

service, Dienst', *m*. 3. b. b.

## RULE III.

The *Dative case* is used.

1. After transitive verbs, which, at the same time, govern the accusative. The accusative is then called the case of the thing, and the dative the case of the person: for example, *geben Sie dem Man'ne das Buch*, give the book to the man. *Dem Man'ne* is the dative case of the person, and *das Buch*, the accusative of the thing.—The following transitives take the dative of the person: *geben*, to give; *nehmen*, to take from a person; *sagen*, to say, to tell; *erzählen*, to tell, to relate; *antworten*, to answer; *bringen*, to bring; *befehlen*, to command; *bezahlen*, to pay; *kosten*, to cost; *bie'ten*, to offer; *borgen*, to lend; *leihen*, to lend; *glauben*, to believe; *gönnen*, not to envy, not to grudge; *klagen*, to complain of, to state in the form of complaint; *liefern*, to furnish; *leisten*, to show, to render, as, *Dien'ste leisten*, to render services; *erlassen*, to remit; *erwidern*, to return, to give in turn, to reply; *gebieten*, to command; *geloben*, to vow; *erlauben*, to permit; *gestatten*, to allow; *widerrathen*, to dissuade from: also verbs compounded with *ab*; as *ab'bitten*, to beg pardon, *ei'nem ei'nen Feh'ler ab'bitten*, to beg pardon of a person for a fault; *ab'fordern*, to demand from; *ab'zwingen*, to force from; *ab'rathen*, to dissuade; *ab'schlagen*, to refuse; *ab'sprechen*, to give sentence against a person, to deny, *ei'nem et'was ab'sprechen*; *ab'kaufen*, to buy of: some verbs with *an*; as, *an'bie'ten*, to offer; *an'rathen*, to advise; *an'deuten*, to signify; *an'dichten*, to attribute falsely; *an'zeigen*, to announce; and others: some with *bei*; as, *bei'bringen*, to impart; *bei'legen*, to attribute; *bei'messen*, to impute: some with *ent*; *entreis'sen*, to snatch away; *entzie'hen*, to take away, &c.: some with *wider*; as, *widerrathen*, to dissuade. To these may be added the reflexive verbs, *sich an'masen*, to claim, to pretend to; *sich ein'bilden*, to fancy, to imagine: as, *ich ma'se mir den Ti'tel an*, I pretend to the title; *ich bil'de mir den Um'stand ein*, I imagine the circumstance. After *sich an'masen*, the genitive may be put, instead of the accusative.

2. After intransitive verbs; as, *an'hängen*, to adhere to; *an'liegen*, to apply to, to solicit; *gehören* and *an'gehören*, to belong to; *begegnen*, to meet, to happen to; *bekommen*, to agree with, said of things that refer to health and constitution, for instance, of eating and drinking; *bevor'stchen*, to impend;

bei'fallen, to agree with a person in opinion; bei'kommen, to come near, to get at; bei'pflichten, to coincide with in opinion; bei'stehen, to assist; dank'en, to thank; di'en'en, to serve; dro'hen, to threaten; entlie'hen, entge'hen, to escape; entspre'chen, to answer to, to correspond to; and other compounds with ent; ein'fallen, to occur to the thoughts, or the memory; ein'gehen, to enter the mind, to be understood; ein'kommen, to enter the thoughts, to enter the mind; ein'leuchten, to be clear, to be evident, to appear; fol'gen, to follow; fro'h'nen, to do service without pay; ge'bu'h'ren, to be due; gedei'hen, to succeed, to prosper; gehor'chen, to obey; gefal'len, to please; gera'then, geling'en, to succeed; glei'chen, to be like; gezie'men, to become, to besit; hel'fen, to help; nu'tzen, to be useful, to be of use; ob'liegen (ei'ner Sa'che), to apply one's self to a thing—also (as an impersonal) to be incumbent upon; unterlie'gen, to be overcome, to yield; scha'den, to hurt; schei'nen, to seem; schmei'cheln, to flatter; steu'ern, to check, to restrain; trot'zen, to bid defiance; weh'ren, to check; wei'chen, aus'weichen, to give way, to yield; sich wi'derse'tzen, to oppose, to resist; widerste'hen, to resist; wohlf'wollen, to wish well; zu'fallen, to fall to; zu'h'ören, to listen to, to hear; zu'geh'ören, to belong to; zu'kommen, to become, to be suitable, to belong to, to be due; zu'reden, to speak to, to exhort; and other compounds with zu: also these impersonals; es ah'net, or ahn'det, mir, I have a misgiving, I foresee; es beliebt', it pleases; es gebricht', it is wanting; es graut mir, I am fearful; es träumt mir, I dream; es schei'net mir, or es kömmt mir vor, it seems to me; es schwin'delt mir, I am giddy; es schau'dert mir, I shudder; es verschlägt' mir nichts, it makes no difference to me.

3. After some verbs which may also be properly used with the accusative: an'kommen, to come upon—mir, or mich, kömmt Furcht an, fear comes upon me; mir, or mich, dünkt, it seems to me (the accusative is more usual); mir, or mich, e'kelt, I loathe. Hei'ssen, to bid, to desire, occurs with the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing—Wer hat dir das gehei'ssen? who desired you to do that? but the person may also be put in the accusative, wer hat dich das gehei'ssen? The same may be said of leh'ren, to teach, which either is followed by two accusatives, one of the thing, and the other of the person; or by the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing.

*Observation.* The dative expresses advantage, or disadvantage, and answers to the English prepositions, *to* and *for*; as, *dir schein't die Son'ne*, for thee the sun shines; *dir la'chen die Fel'der*, to thee the fields smile; *dir heu'len die Win'de*, to thee (against thee) the winds howl.

### Exercises.

I did for him every thing (*which*) he commanded<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>.

I told him so. I advised him to<sup>3</sup> resist<sup>4</sup> their<sup>1</sup> flattery<sup>2</sup>, and dissuaded him from<sup>4</sup> lending<sup>5</sup> them<sup>1</sup> any<sup>2</sup> thing<sup>3</sup>.

(Do) not<sup>3</sup> refuse<sup>1</sup> them<sup>2</sup> what they demand<sup>2</sup> from<sup>1</sup> you<sup>1</sup>, if it belongs<sup>2</sup> to<sup>1</sup> them<sup>1</sup>.

You can<sup>1</sup> not<sup>3</sup> get<sup>5</sup> at<sup>4</sup> him<sup>2</sup>, as long as she defends<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup>.

You will meet (with) what you have<sup>2</sup> deserved<sup>1</sup>; it will do<sup>3</sup> you<sup>1</sup> good<sup>2</sup>.

I apply myself to this business, although it is not incumbent upon me.

It seemed to me as if all that he related<sup>2</sup> to<sup>1</sup> you<sup>1</sup>, was aimed at me.

I fancied it to myself, although I shuddered<sup>4</sup> at<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> thought<sup>3</sup>.

to do, lei'sten.

every thing, al'les.

to command, befeh'len, *ir.*

to tell, sa'gen.

so, das, (*dem. pron.*)

to advise, ra'then, *ir.*

flattery, Schmeichelei', *f. 1. d.*

to resist, widerste'hen.

to dissuade, ab'rathen.

any thing, ir'gend et'was.

to lend, lei'hen.

to refuse, verwei'gern.

to demand, ab'fordern.

if, wenn.

to belong, gehö'ren.

to get at, bei'kommen.

I can, ich kann, *ir.*

as long as, so lang als, or so lang'.

to defend, verthei'digen.

I meet, es begeg'net mir.

to deserve, verdi'e'n.

to do good, wohl bekom'men.

to apply one's self, ob'liegen.

business, Geschäft, *n. 3. b. b.*

although, wiewohl'.

to be incumbent, ob'liegen.

it seems, es schein't, *ir.*

as if, als ob.

to relate, erzäh'len.

to be aimed at, gel'ten.

to fancy, ein'bilden.

at, vor: (*dat.*)

thought, Gedank'e, *m. 3 c. e.*

I shudder, mir schau'dert.

## RULE IV.

The *Accusative* is governed by active verbs; as, *ich liebe mein Vaterland*, I love my country.

Neuter verbs also may be used actively, and govern an accusative; as, *einen guten Kampf kämpfen*, to fight a good fight; where *kämpfen*, is joined with the accusative, though it is generally used without any case.

There are verbs that take a double accusative; as, *heißen*, to call; *nennen*, to name; *schelten*, to abuse; *schimpfen*, to call by an opprobrious name. For example: *ich heiße (or nenne) ihn einen Helden*, I call him a hero; *er schalt, schimpfte, ihn einen Betrüger*, he called him a cheat. To which may be added *fragen*, to ask, as, *einen etwas fragen*, to ask a person something; but here it is as well to make use of a preposition; as, *einen um etwas fragen*, to ask a person about something. Of *lehren*, to teach, and *heißen*, to command, which sometimes have a double accusative, mention has already been made.

*Exercises.*

He lived a hero's life, and died a hero's death.

He calls himself a self-taught (man), but others denominate him a bold empiric.

to live, <i>leben</i> .	self-taught, <i>selbstgelehrt</i> .
hero's life, <i>Heldenleben</i> , <i>n. 3.</i>	but, <i>a'ber</i> .
a. a.	others, <i>an'dere</i> .
to die, <i>sterben</i> .	to denominate, <i>heißen</i> .
hero's death, <i>Heldentod</i> .	bold, <i>verwegen</i> .
to call, <i>nennen</i> .	empiric, <i>Empiriker</i> ; <i>m. 3. a. a.</i>

§ 6. *The Participle.*

The most essential points concerning the participle have been already stated.—Besides its connexion with the verb, the participle is, in syntax, liable to the rules of the adjective.—The past participle is combined in a particular way, with the verbs *wollen*, *haben*, and *wissen*; as, *ich woll'te Sie gefragt haben*, I would have you asked, *that is*, I should wish to ask you; *ich woll'te Sie geb'ten haben*, I would have you requested, *that is*, I would request you. *Dieses Verbrechen woll'en wir geahn'tet wissen*, we

would know this crime punished, *that is*, we wish to have it punished; er will nichts von der Sache gesagt wissen, he wishes not to know any thing said of the matter, *that is*, he does not wish to have any thing said about it.—With the past participle an accusative case absolute may be combined; as, Keinen ausgenommen, no one excepted.

There are some participles, which may be said to represent pronouns, having a demonstrative signification. Of this description are: gesagt, aforesaid; gedacht, erwähnt, aforementioned; genannt, aforenamed; folgend, the following.

*Cases Absolute.* The accusative case joined to past participles is taken absolutely. Examples: das Gesicht nach Osten gekehrt, his face being turned to the east; den Blick nach dem Vaterlande gewendet, his looks being turned towards his country; die Augen nach dem Himmel gerichtet, his eyes, being directed towards heaven; diesen Umstand vorausgesetzt, this circumstance being supposed; den Gewinn abgerechnet, the gain being deducted; dies ausgenommen, this being excepted.

## CHAPTER VI.

### ADVERBS.

Every adjective, in its simple form, may be used as an adverb.

The following adverbs seem to require some particular notice.

#### Wohl,

is often found, where the English can affix no distinct meaning to it. It is not, however, a mere expletive; but serves to give to a sentence a peculiar modification. Sometimes the expressions, *may be, perhaps, probably, about, nearly, indeed*, may correspond with it. It occurs in questions; as, haben Sie wohl gehört, was man davon re'det? have you by chance heard, what is said of it?—and accompanies verbs in an indeterminate and conditional construction; as, ich möchte wohl lesen, I should like to read (if I could). It not unfrequently resembles the Italian *ben, bene, pur, pure*, in its expletive capacity.—Instead of the adverb *wohl, well*, denoting, of a good



quality, in a good manner, not ill, but is frequently used; by which means the confusion, that might arise between this signification and the expletive, is obviated. For example: *ich weis nicht, wo man diese Sachen gut kaufen kann*, I know not, where one may buy these things *well*. In this instance, if *wohl* were used, it would, by the generality of readers, be understood as an expletive.

*Ger'ne* or *gern*, willingly: comparative, *lie'ber*, more willingly: superlative, *am lieb'sten*, most willingly.

By this adverb, the idea, *to like, to be fond of*, is expressed; as, *et'was ger'ne thun*, to do a thing willingly, to like to do it; *et'was gern essen*, to eat a thing willingly, that is, to like it; *et'was gern mö'gen*, to like a thing. *Et'was gern se'hen*, to see a thing willingly, to see it with approbation; hence, to like, to approve. *Er ißt Gemü'se lie'ber als Fleisch*, he likes vegetables better than meat; literally, he eats more willingly. *Sie se'hen es am lieb'sten*, they see it with most pleasure, that is, they like it best. The use of *lie'ber*, and *am lieb'sten*, will be readily understood from that of *gern*.

### Bin and Her.

See page 109.

### Da,

combined with prepositions, and followed by the conjunction *dass*, serves as a substitute for the English participle, united with a preposition. Examples: *By reading much he became learned*, *da'durch dass er viel las, wur'de er gelehrt*. *From talking too much, mischief often comes*, *dar'aus dass man zu viel schwagt, entsteht oft Un'heil*; *justice consists in giving every one his own*; *Gerech'tigkeit besteht da'rin, dass man je'derman das sei'ne gibt*.

### Doch,

put after an imperative, has the power of entreating and exhorting, and answers, in general, to the French *donc*, and, frequently, to the English *pray*. Examples: *Sa'gen Sie mir doch*, *Pray tell me*; *sein Sie doch so gut*, *pray, be so good*. *Was sag'te er doch?* *pray, what did he say?* *War das doch*

ein Lärm, what a noise that was! Occasionally, it may be rendered by *somehow*; as, *ich fand mich doch bald wie'der*, I somehow soon found my way here.—In common conversation, it is sometimes used for the affirmative *ja*, when a negative precedes.

### Ja,

besides its affirmative signification, *yes*, has an expletive use, in which it may often be translated by, *indeed, truly, certainly, see, I see, I wonder, forsooth*. Examples: *Sie kommen ja spät*, you certainly are come late, or, I wonder you come so late. *Sie sind ja recht groß geworden*, you, indeed, are grown very tall. *Er stellt sich ja sehr son'derbar an*, he, forsooth! behaves in a very singular manner.—*Ja wohl*, certainly, yes certainly.—*Ja*, combined with a negative, be it with the particle *nicht*, or *ein*, or the adjective *kein*, may be rendered by the same expletive terms, *pray, certainly, see, &c.* but frequently it strengthens the expression; as, *ja nicht*, on no account; *ja nie*, never, spoken emphatically. The negative particle commonly stands after the object; *ja*, immediately after the verb; as, *vergeffen Sie ja den Brief nicht*, on no account forget the letter.

### Mit'ten,

before the prepositions *in* and *unter*, signifies *in the midst of*; as, *mit'ten in sei'ner Rede*, in the midst of his discourse: *mit'ten un'ter den Fein'den*, in the midst of the enemies.

### Noch

signifies an addition, where the English use *more*. *Noch eins*, one thing more; *noch ein'mal*, once more; *noch im'mer*, still, by continuance, constantly. *Er bleibt noch im'mer in Lon'don*, he still continues in London.

### A Comparison

of things equal, is, in English, made by the repetition of *as*: for example, '*as brave as Leonidas*.' In German, the first particle is rendered by *so*, and the second by *als*, or *wie*: *so tap'fer als Leo'nidas*. The word *than*, after the comparative

*more*, is expressed by *als*. Sometimes, the English put *but* after a comparative degree, instead of *than*: for example, 'There was nothing farther to be done, *but* to fight.' The German *als*, must here be retained. *Wie* is occasionally substituted for *als*, and then the *so* may be omitted; as, *tapfer wie Leo'nidas*.

### The Negative

*nicht* is often used by the Germans, where the English would deem it superfluous; as, *es ist über einen Monat, seitdem ich Sie nicht gesehen habe*, it is above a month, since I have [*not*] seen you.

In interrogative exclamations, the *negative* gives emphasis. *Wie viele Menschen sind nicht in diesem Kriege umgekommen*, how many men have [*not*] perished in this war! *Wie stolz schien er nicht*, how proud did he [*not*] appear! (The French also make use of the negative. *Quel bruit ces hommes n'auroient-ils pas fait, s'ils n'avoient attrapé d'un tel banquet!*)

*Not a, not any*, are, in German, commonly expressed by *kein*, none; as, *not a single line*, *keine einzige Zeile*.

*Two Negatives*, in the same sentence, are in general improper; although they sometimes occur not only in the language of common life, but also in the best writers; as, *Der Kaiser und die L'gue standen gewaffnet und siegreich in Deutschland, und nirgends keine Macht, die ihnen Widerstand leisten konnte*,\* The Emperor and the league now stood armed, and victorious, in Germany, and there was *no power no where* to resist them. Sometimes, indeed, there may appear to be energy in the repetition of the negative; but, on the whole it should be rather considered as a species of negligence in composition.

### About, nearly.

This idea, accompanying numbers, is differently expressed. 1. By certain adverbs, viz. *beinahe*, *etwa*, *fast*, *ungefähr*, *wohl*, *bis*. *Es sind wohl drei Jahre*, it is about three years; *ungefähr zehn Pfund*, about ten pounds; *zwei bis drei Wochen*, from two to three weeks. 2. By the use of the prepositions, *an*, *bei*, *gegen*. *An die zwanzig*, nearly twenty; *bei* (or *gegen*) *vierzig*, nearly forty.

---

\* Schiller.

## CHAPTER VII.

## PREPOSITIONS.

When the same preposition belongs to more than one noun, it need only be once expressed; as, *von meinem Vater, meinem Bruder und meiner Schwester*, from my father, my brother, and my sister.

See Book I. Part II. Chapter 8.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

*The Conjunction so*

is employed to connect a sentence, when the prior member of it begins with a consecutive, causal, or conditional conjunction. *Da er sich der Stadt näherte, so fand er die Wälle von den Feinden besetzt*, when he approached the town, he found the ramparts occupied by the enemy. *Wenn man sich in den Wissenschaften auszeichnen will, so muss man ununterbrochenen Fleiß besitzen*, if a person would distinguish himself in the sciences, he must possess unceasing industry.—*So* is not always required, after the consecutive, and causal conjunctions, such as *da*, when; *als*, as; *wie*, as; *weil*, because: but it is rarely left out after the conditional conjunctions, such as *wenn*, if; *ob schon*, *ob gleich*, *wenn schon*, *wenn gleich*, although. When the conditional is not given in the prior member, but understood, it is common to make use of *so* in the subsequent member; as, *hätte ich das gewusst, so wäre ich nicht gekommen*, had I known that, I should not have come; which stands for, *wenn ich das gewusst hätte*, if I had known that—therefore *so* must be inserted, in the following member. It is to be recommended after consecutive and causal conjunctions, when the antecedent member is of some length, or consists of several parts. *So* is also found after the verb in the imperative mood, but no conjunction; as, *vertraue Gott, so wird er dir helfen*, trust in God, and he will help thee.

**So** is used when *obgleich*, *obſchon*, or a similar word, meaning, *though, although*, precedes; *doch*, yet, or a synonymous conjunction, generally follows. *Ob er gleich jung iſt, ſo hat er doch viele Erfahrung*, although he is young, he has nevertheless great experience.

**Son'dern**, *but*,

has a disjunctive sense, and is exclusively and solely used after a negative; as, *Es friert nicht, ſon'dern es thaut*, it does not freeze, but it thaws.

## CHAPTER IX.

### INTERJECTIONS.

The interjection stands quite by itself: it neither governs nor is governed by any other part of speech. Therefore, the nominative and vocative, being independent cases, that is, such as are not governed by a preceding word, are most proper after interjections. *Ach! ich unglücklicher Menſch*, ah me! unhappy mortal! *Ei! der Schalk*, ah! the rogue! *O! was für ein Scheuſal!* O! what a horrible object! *Ach! lieber Freund!* ah! beloved friend! *O! theuerſter Vater*, O! dearest Father!

The genitive case is found after interjections: for example, *Ach! des Elendes*, ah! the misery! *O! der Freude*, oh! what joy! *Ach! des Un dankbaren*, ah! the ungrateful wretch! *Pſui! des ſcham'loſen Menſchen*, fie! what a shameless man!

The dative of advantage, or disadvantage, occurs after certain terms, that may be called interjections, though they are not strictly of that description! as, *Wohl ihm!* Happy him!—*Wohl dem Menſchen*, Happy the man!—*Weh mir!* Woe is me!

## PART II.

## ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

## CHAPTER I.

## POSITION OF THE ARTICLE.

The article must be put immediately before the noun to which it belongs, if the noun is not preceded by other words which qualify it; as, *ein Mann*, a man; *die Frau*, the woman. If the noun is preceded by other qualifying words, the article must be put before them. Thus, if the noun be preceded by an adjective, the article must be placed before the adjective; as, *der gute Mann*; and if the adjective is qualified by an adverb or a participial construction, the article precedes this; as, *eine sehr gute Frau*, a very good woman; *die alles überwiegende Liebe zum Ruhm*, the all surpassing love of glory. If the adjective, for the sake of emphasis, is put after the noun in the way of apposition, the article immediately precedes the adjective, or the adverb, or participial construction, by which it is qualified; as, *Natur*, die heilige, sacred nature; *unser Freund*, der schmerzlich vermisste, our deeply regretted friend; *Krieg*, der länd' der verheerende, war which desolates countries.

*Exercises.*

A town. Of the celebrated painter. An ill fed horse. The sea<sup>3</sup>, connecting<sup>2</sup> (the) nations<sup>1</sup>. The<sup>2</sup> most<sup>3</sup> hearty<sup>3</sup> joy<sup>1</sup>. Forbearance, (the) never tiring. Led on by the love of fashion, (the) corrupting<sup>2</sup> (the) taste<sup>1</sup>.

town, *Stadt*, *f*.  
celebrated, *berühmt*.  
painter, *Mal'ler*, *m*. 3. *a*. *a*.  
ill, *schlecht*.

fed, *gesüt'tert*.  
horse, *Pferd*, *n*. 3. *a*. *a*.  
nation, *\*Volk*, *n*. 3. *b*. *e*.  
to connect, *verbinden*.

sea, See, *f.*joy, Freu'de, *f.*

hearty, herz'lich.

forbearance, lang'muth, *f.*

never, nie.

to tire, ermü'den.

led on, geleit'et.

love of fashion, Mo'desucht, *f.*taste, Geschmack, *m.* 3. b.

to corrupt, verder'ben.

## CHAPTER II.

## POSITION OF THE NOUN.

## RULE I.

The Noun, in the nominative case, being the *subject* of a sentence, is generally placed before the verb.

*Note.*—The *subject* is to be distinguished from the *object*: the former governs the verb, and the latter is governed by the verb: for instance, Der Väter liebt sei'nen Sohn, the father loves his son. Here, der Väter is the *subject*, which governs the verb, that is to say, the verb must agree with it, in number and person; sei'nen Sohn is the *object*, which is governed by the verb, because it must, in compliance with the nature of the verb, stand in a particular case.

*Exceptions to the first Rule.*

The Subject is put after the verb,

1. In a direct question; as, Schreibt der Mann? does the man write? Schreibt, the verb—der Mann, the subject. It is the same, when the question begins with an interrogative pronoun, or interrogative adverb; as, was sagt der Vater? what says the father? welches Buch liest der Schüler? which book does the pupil read? warum lacht der Knabe? why does the boy laugh? weswegen weint die Schwester? what does the sister weep for?

2. When, for the purpose of emphasis, the object is placed at the head of a sentence. For instance: Dieses Glück genießt der Tugendhafte, this happiness the virtuous man enjoys. Der Tugendhafte, is the subject, which follows after the verb genießt; because the object, dieses Glück, begins the sentence.

3. When the dative, or accusative case of the person stands first; as, *Dem Menschen ist das Leben theuer*, *to man* life is dear; *dieſen Knaaben hat mein Freund die Französische Sprache gelehrt*, *to this boy* my friend taught the French language. The sentences here begin with a case of person, and the subject is found after the verb. This, and the preceding exception, may perhaps be together comprehended in these words, viz. When any oblique case of declension begins a sentence, the subject must come after the verb.

4. When an adjective, or pronoun, belonging to the subject or object, begins the sentence. *Gut ist der Wein zwar*, *aber auch theuer*, the wine indeed is *good*, but also dear. The adjective *gut*, in this instance, belongs to the subject, and beginning the sentence displaces the subject, *der Wein*. *Gut ſindet mein Vater den Wein*, &c. my father finds the wine *good*: here *gut* belongs to the object, *den Wein*, and has the same influence upon the subject. The same is also to be observed of the pronoun, when it belongs to the subject or object; as, *Mein ist das Haus*, *mine* is the house; *mein* belongs to *das Haus*, which is the subject, and is put after the verb.

5. When the pronoun *es* begins the sentence: for example, *Es kömmt der Sprecher*, the speaker is coming; *es entſtand ein Lärm*, there arose a tumult.

6. When an infinitive is put at the beginning, either as a member of the sentence, or for the sake of emphasis: for example, *Um Ruhe zu genießen, müſſen die Geſetze erfüllt werden*, in order to enjoy peace, *must the laws* be fulfilled; *gehören wolſen die Leute nicht*, *obey will the people* not—for, the laws must, the people will not.

7. The participles, with an adverbial power, to express the manner of acting, being, or suffering, and participles generally, when placed at the beginning of a sentence, cause the subject to follow the verb. For instance: *Weinend sprach der Vater*, *weeping* the father spoke; *trauernd gingen die Gefährten zu dem Grabmahle*, *mourning* the companions went to the sepulchre. Thus with the past participle; *Geliebt und an'gebetet verlies der Held ſeine Mitbürger und eilte in das Schlachtfeld, neue Lorbeeren zu erringen*, *beloved*



and adored, the hero left his fellow citizens, and hastened into the field of battle to obtain new laurels.

8. The subject must come after the verb, when an adverb or certain cases of nouns used in an adverbial signification, or absolute cases, commence the sentence. *Bald kömmt der Winter*, soon winter comes; *schnell geht die Zeit dahin*, quickly time passes. *Un'glücklicher Weise* traf das Loos seinen Bru'der, *unfortunately* the lot fell upon his brother.

9. When a preposition, with its case, takes the lead, *Mit freu'diger Miene* gingen die Ein'wohner ih'rem Befrei'er entgegen, *with a joyful countenance* the inhabitants went to meet their deliverer. When, however, the preposition, with its case, forms an exclamation, it is considered as an interjection, and does not move the subject from its place; as, *Bei meiner Eh're*, der Mensch ist unschuldig, upon my honor, the man is innocent.

10. The following conjunctions have the same effect, in transposing the subject, when they commence the sentence; but they may themselves be placed after the verb. *Also*, signifying so, thus; *daher*, thence, therefore; *dann*, then, (the same as *denn*); *darauf*, thereupon, then; *darum*, for that reason; *demnach*, consequently; *dann, denn*, then; *des'halb*, *des'halben*, for that reason; *des'wegen*, on that account; *des'gleichen*, likewise; *doch*, yet, still, (it does not always affect the situation of the subject); *fer'ner*, moreover; *fol'glich*, consequently; *gleich'wohl*, nevertheless; *indessen*, in the meanwhile; *jetzt*, now; *kaum*, scarcely; *mithin*, consequently; *noch*, yet, nor; *nun*, now; *theils*, partly; *so*, either meaning so, or beginning the subsequent member of a sentence; *ü'berdies*, besides; *ü'brigens*, in other respects; *da*, then (which must always precede the verb).—When the conjunctions, *auch*, also; *entwe'der*, either; *zwar*, indeed, are in the beginning of the sentence, the subject may be put after the verb, by which means a stress falls either upon the subject, or the verb; as, *Auch rief das Volk*, The people even exclaimed; *entwe'der liest der Knabe, o'der er schreibt*, the boy either reads or writes; *zwar schei'net die Sonne, a'ber, &c.* the sun indeed shines, but, &c. When the emphasis is on the subject, it should remain before the verb; as, *auch das Volk rief*, even the people cried out.—In old and

formal language, the subject is sometimes placed after the verb, when *und*, and, precedes. *Und hat Beklagter erwiesen*, and the defendant has proved. Here *Beklagter*, the subject is after the verb.

11. In quoting, the subject is put after *sagen*, or any similar verb, when part of the quotation goes before; as, *Das Glück, sagt der Weise, ist verrätherisch*, Fortune, says the wise man, is treacherous.

12 The subject always follows the verb, in the subsequent member of a sentence.

*Note.*—The *subsequent member* of a sentence is that, which comes after one beginning with a relative pronoun (such as *was*, what), or a relative adverb (such as *wo*, where), or a conditional, causal, or consecutive conjunction (such as *wenn*, if; *weil*, because; *da*, when). Examples: *Was der Vater sagt, thut der Sohn*, what the father says, the son does. The first member of this sentence begins with the relative pronoun, *was*; in the second, or subsequent member, therefore, the subject, *der Sohn*, stands after the verb, *thut*. *Wo das Aas ist, versammeln sich die Adler*, where the carrion is, the eagles are collected. Here, the first member commences with the relative adverb *wo*; and the subject, in the following member, is after the verb.\* *Wenn das Wetter günstig bleibt, so kommt mein Freund in wenigen Tagen*, if the weather continues favorable, my friend comes (or will come) in a few days. This sentence also consists of two members: the first, if the weather continues favorable; the second, my friend comes, or will come: in the latter, which is the *subsequent member*, the subject is placed

---

\* Strictly speaking, we ought, in the second, here called the subsequent, member, to supply some demonstrative word, corresponding to the relative, in the first; namely *das*, in reference to the preceding *was*; and *da*, in correspondence with *wo*. The subsequent member may, perhaps, in every instance, be said to depend upon connecting words, which are understood.

after the verb. So likewise, *Weil die Zeit schnell verstreicht*, so *benützt* der *Weise* *jeden Augenblick*, because time passes quickly, the wise man turns every moment to account. Here are again two members, *the antecedent*, because time passes; and *the subsequent*, the wise man turns every moment to account. The subject in the latter, of course, stands after the verb. *Da Cäsar sich näherte*, *entwischen die Feinde*, when Cæsar approached (*antecedent*), the enemy withdrew (*subsequent*).—The subsequent member, after an antecedent, with a conjunction of the description alluded to, frequently begins with the particle *so*, concerning which it is proper to refer to Book I. Part II. Ch. 9. This particle serves as a connecting link, between the antecedent and subsequent members.\* It is not always made use of, when the prior member begins with a consecutive or causal conjunction; but is rarely omitted after a conditional, such as *wenn*, if; *obschon*, *obgleich*, *wennschon*, *wenngleich*, though, although. The conjunction *wenn*, if, is sometimes understood, in the antecedent; and in this case, the subsequent member, generally, takes *so*, and the subject comes after the verb. For example: *Wäre der Fluss schiffbar*, so *würde der Handel blühen*, if the river were navigable, trade would flourish. The antecedent member should properly be thus expressed: *Wenn der Fluss schiffbar wäre*.—The conjunction *desto*, and also *je*, when equivalent to *desto*, constitutes a subsequent member.—A subsequent member is likewise produced, when an infinitive begins the sentence, expressing purpose and design. *Um reich zu werden*, *unterzieht sich der Mensch oft den größten Mühseligkeiten*, in order to grow rich, man often undergoes the greatest hardships. “*Man undergoes*,” &c. is the subsequent member, in which the subject must be put after the verb.

13. The last instance, in which the verb precedes the subject, is where the conjunction *wenn*, if, is to be supplied; as, *Wäre mein Vater hier gewesen*, so *wäre das Unglück nicht geschehen*, had my father been here, the misfortune would

---

\* Such a link between the antecedent and subsequent members, may always be supposed; and if not expressed, it is understood.

not have happened. *Wä're mein Väter hier gewe'sen*, stands for, *wenn mein Väter hier gewe'sen wä're*, if my father had been here; and the subject, as appears, is after the verb.

*Exercises.*

The enemy approached the suburbs.

(Do) you<sup>2</sup> see<sup>1</sup> this temple? Why did<sup>1</sup> our<sup>2</sup> teacher<sup>2</sup> change<sup>1</sup> his plan?

This measure nobody<sup>2</sup> can<sup>1</sup> excuse.

The courageous, God<sup>2</sup> assists<sup>1</sup>.

Short was his life, but eternal are his deeds.

The command was given.

They never saw him weep.

The Spartan died composed and smiling.

Man commonly believes.

Without altercation they divided the prize.

We therefore determined to stay.

The papers indeed mention it, but I do not believe it.

Not every thing which glistens, is gold, says the proverb.

Because he saw it in others he imitated it.

If you had not walked so slowly, you would have overtaken us.

enemy, Feind, *m.*

to approach, na'hen (*dat.*)

suburb, \*Vor'stadt, *f.* 1. *b.*

to see, se'hen.

temple, Tem'pel, *m.* 3. *a.* *a.*

why, warum'.

to change, än'dern.

teacher, Leh'rer.

plan, Plan, 3. *b.* *b.*

measure, Mas'regel, *f.*

nobody, nie'mand.

I can, ich kann, *ir.*

to excuse, entschul'digen.

courageous, mu'thig.

to assist, hel'fen. (*dat.*)

God, Gott.

short, kurz.

life, le'ben.

but, a'ber.

eternal, ewig.

deed, That, *f.* 1. *d.*

command, Befehl, *m.*

to be given, erge'hen, *ir.*

to weep, wei'nen.

they, man.

never, nie.

composed, gefasst'.

smiling, lä'chelnd.

to die, ster'ben.

the Spartan, der Sparta'ner.

commonly, gewöhn'lich.

to believe, glau'ben.

man, der Mensch.

without, oh'ne.

altercation, Strei'tigkeit, *f.*

to divide, thei'len.

prize, Preis, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.*

therefore, daher'.

to determine, beschlie'sen, ir.	gold, Gold.
to stay, blei'ben.	to say, sa'gen.
paper, Zei'tung, f. 1. d.	proverb, Sprich'wort, n.
to mention, erwäh'nen.	because, weil.
indeed, zwar.	in, von.
but, a'ber.	others, an'dere.
to believe, glau'ben.	to imitate, nach'machen.
not, nicht.	slowly, lang'sam.
every thing, al'les.	to walk, ge'hen, ir. (with sein).
to glisten, glän'zen.	to overtake, ein'holen.

## RULE II.

The Substantive, being *the object*, is generally put after the verb: for example, *Ich lie'be mei'nen Va'ter*, I love my father; *mei'nen Va'ter* is the object.

*Exceptions :*

1. When a stress is laid upon the object, it may be placed at the beginning of the sentence; as, *Den Homer' le'se ich mit Vergnü'gen und Bewun'derung*, *Homer* I read with pleasure and admiration.

2. In certain cases the verb is removed to the end of the sentence; \* then the object naturally comes before it.

## RULE III.

The Substantive in the *Genitive* case, not being the object,† generally stands after the word by which it is governed; as, *der So'h'n mei'nes Freun'des*, the son of my friend.

But it is found

1. Before the substantive that governs it, when it bears an emphasis. *Des Va'ters Ge'gen bau'et den Kin'dern Häu'ser*,

\* See Book II. Part II. Ch. 5.

† The genitive may be the object, viz. when it is governed by the verb. See Book II. Part I. Ch. 5. Rule II.

á'ber der Mut'ter Fluch reis'set sie nie'der, a father's blessing builds houses for the children, but a mother's curse pulls them down.

2. Before adjectives ; as, *des Verbr'e'chens schul'dig*, guilty of the crime ; *des lo'bes wu'r'dig*, worthy of the praise ; *der Sor'ge un'werth*, undeserving of the care.

3. Before some prepositions.\*

#### RULE IV.

The *Dative* has its place commonly after the verb, and if there be an accusative case besides, before this accusative. *Er gibt dem Man'ne das Buch*, he gives the book to the man. The dative, *dem Man'ne*, here stands between the verb and the object.

When it is to be marked with an emphasis, it should be moved from its place, and stand either before the verb, or after the object. The first mode is the most emphatic ; as, *Dem Man'ne gibt er das Buch* ; the second does not so much alter the force of the sentence, *er gibt das Buch dem Man'ne*. —If the object be a monosyllable, or a short word, and the dative case consist of more syllables, the former should be put first, because a long word commonly finishes the sentence better than a short one ; for example, *Er sag'te es dem Va'ter*, he told it to the father—*es* is the object, and comes before the dative. It is remarkable, that the object, being a case of a personal or reciprocal pronoun, is generally put before the dative, though the latter should be of no greater length, and likewise a pronoun. For example : *Ich ha'be es i' h'm gesagt*, I have told it to him ; *er hat ihn mi'r gezeigt*, he has pointed him out to me ; *wir empfeh'len uns dir*, we recommend ourselves to thee. The words which are here printed with spaces between the letters, are dative cases, and those immediately before them the objects in the accusative.†

---

\* See Book I. Part II. Ch. 8. § 1.—1 & 4.

† Compare Book II. Part II. Ch. 4.

## RULE V.

Two accusatives are sometimes used after the same verb, one expressing a person, and the other a thing. The former is then placed in the same manner as the dative, according to the preceding rule. Examples: *Ich nen'ne den Mann Freund*, I call the man friend; *ich hei'ße einen sol'chen Mann einen Hel'den*, I call such a man a hero; *er lehrt den Sempronius die Re'chenkunst*, he teaches Sempronius arithmetic.

When the subject, the object, and the case of person meet together, either before or after the verb, they commonly follow in this order: subject, case of person, object. For example, before the verb: *Da der Feld'herr dem Fein'de den Frieden an'geboten hat*, since the general has offered peace to the enemy. After the verb: *Auf diese Wei'se verschaffte Cä'sar sei'nen Freun'den Genug'thuung und benahm sei'nen Fein'den alle Hoffn'g zur Ra'che*, in this manner Cæsar procured satisfaction for his friends, and deprived his enemies of all hope of revenge.

## RULE VI.

The *Dative* and *Accusative* cases stand before the adjectives,\* by which they are governed.†

## RULE VII.

The *Vocative* case may be put either before or after the verb, at the option of the speaker.

*Exercises.*

Give me the book. Such men I like. The fruits of the earth. Love's labor is in vain. He is tired of life.

Give to every one his own. He mentioned it to me afterward, but to her he entrusted it first.

\* See Book II. Part I. Ch. 3. Rule III.—2 & 3.

† Compare Book II. Part II. Ch. 3. Rule IV.

When they had told me every thing, I<sup>2</sup> appointed<sup>1</sup> them a time of meeting.

to give, *geben*.  
 book, *Buch*, *n.* 3. b. a.  
 such, *solche*.  
 man; *\*Mann*, *3.* b. e.  
 to like, *lieben*.  
 fruit, *\*Frucht*, *f.* 1. b.  
 earth, *Erde*, *f.*  
 love, *liebe*, *f.*  
 labor, *Mühe*, *f.*  
 in vain, *umsonst*.  
 life, *leben*, *n.* 3. a.  
 tired, *überdrüssig*. (*gen.*)  
 every one, *jeder*.

his own, *das Seine*.  
 to mention, *erwähnen*.  
 afterwards, *späterhin*.  
 but, *a'ber*.  
 to entrust, *vertrauen*.  
 first, *zuerst*.  
 when, *nachdem*.  
 every thing, *alles*.  
 to tell, *sa'gen*.  
 to appoint, *bestimmen*.  
 time, *Zeit*, *f.* 1. d.  
 meeting, *Zusammenkunft*, *f.* 1.

### CHAPTER III.

#### POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

##### RULE I.

The Adjective precedes the substantive with which it is joined; as, *guter Wein*, good wine; *das schöne Kind*, the pretty child.

Sometimes, it is placed after the substantive, by way of apposition, serving as a relative sentence: as, *Der Minister, nicht weniger gerecht, als Staats'flug*, that *al'es*, *um die'sem Ereignis'se vorzubeugen*, the minister, not less just than politic, did every thing to obviate this event. Here the adjectives, being put after the substantive, occupy the place of a relative sentence: *welcher nicht weniger gerecht als Staats'flug war*, who was not less just than politic.

##### RULE II.

When the adjective is not united with a substantive, it is put after the verb; as, *Der Mann ist gut*; or before it, with an emphasis, *gut ist der Mann*.



## RULE III.

The Numerals are placed before other adjectives, preceding a substantive; as, *Drei gute, ehrliche Menschen*, three good, honest men.

When cardinal and ordinal numbers meet before a substantive, it depends on the emphasis, which of them is to be put first: whether, for instance it be, *die drei ersten*, the three first; or, *die ersten drei*, the first three. This applies also to the words, *die andern*, the others, *die letzten*, the last, and generally to adjectives in the superlative degree, which may be put either before or after the cardinals. Examples, *die drei letzten*, or, *die letzten drei*, the three last; *die vier andern*, or, *die andern vier*, the other four; *die sechs besten*, or, *die besten sechs*, the six best; *die zehn schönsten*, or, *die schönsten zehn*, the ten finest. It is to be noticed, that the emphasis, in these instances, falls upon the word, which is put last.—The words *alle*, all; *manche*, several; *vieler*, many; *jeder*, each, stand before both the numerals and the adjectives.

## RULE IV.

Adjectives usually follow the cases they govern; as, *dieſer Ehre würdig*, worthy of this honor; *des Verbrechens ſchuldig*, guilty of the crime; *dem Vater ähnlich*, like the father; *zehn Ellen lang*, ten yards long; *drei Fuß breit*, three feet broad; *ſechs Pfund ſchwer*, weighing six pounds. They are likewise frequently put after, when they are connected with nouns that are governed by prepositions; as, *es iſt zur Unterhaltung ſehr nützlich*, it is very uſeful for entertainment; *Selbſtzufriedenheit iſt zur Glücklichſigkeit unentbehrlich*, ſelf-content is indispensably neceſſary to happineſs.

*Exercises.*

An old man, as vigorous and active as a youth.

Their attacks were violent, but calm was his reply.

Six beautiful, spirited horses.

The three most dangerous.

Many honest men.

Tired of the confusion. Recollecting his menaces.

old, alt.	reply, Antwort, f.
as, ebenso.	beautiful, schön.
vigorous, kräf'tig.	spirited, feur'ig.
active, thätig.	horse, Ross, n. 3. b. b.
as, als.	dangerous, gefähr'lich.
youth, Jüng'ling, m.	honest, ehr'lich.
attack, An'griff, m. 3. b. b.	confusion, Verwir'ung, f.
violent, heft'ig.	tired, ü'berdrüss'ig.
but, a'ber.	menace, Dro'hung, f. 1. d.
calm, gelass'en.	recollecting, ein'gedenk't.

## CHAPTER IV.

## POSITION OF THE PRONOUN.

The *Pronoun* either stands in the room of a substantive, or is connected with it in the character of an adjective: and has accordingly either the position of the one or the other.

Therefore, when used substantively, it may serve as the subject, or as the object, in a sentence, and is placed accordingly. The personal pronouns never occur otherwise than as substantives; and the demonstrative pronouns occasionally assume this character. When the latter are employed as adjectives, they occupy the place of the article, and go before any other word, that may be joined with the substantive; as, *die'se drei gu'ten Leu'te*, these three good people; *jene vier er'sten tap'fern Män'ner*, those four first brave men. The word *all*, however, may precede them.

The personal pronoun, in the accusative case, is commonly put before the dative; as, *er gibt es mir*, he gives it to me—*es*, the accusative case, before the dative *mir*. *Schic'ke sie ihm*, send them to him—*sie*, them, preceding *ihm*, to him.\* The dative is found before the object; as, *gib mir es*; but not so frequently as after it: and then it is often contracted in familiar language; as, *mir es*, into *mir's*, *dir es*, into *dir's*.

---

\* Book II. Part II. Ch. 2. Rule iv.

Farther, the personal pronoun, in the dative, or accusative, is sometimes placed before the subject, when the verb is at the end of the sentence. Wenn mir das Glück gütig ist, if fortune is propitious to me; weil dich dein Vater liebt, because thy father loves thee.

The relative pronoun has its place, naturally, at the beginning of that part of the sentence, to which it belongs. The word *all* may sometimes stand before it.

### Exercises.

Those last free Romans.

They refused it to him. Grant him his request.

As long as misfortune persecuted him.

the last, der letzte.

free, frei.

Roman, Römer, m. 3. a. a.

to refuse, weigern.

to grant, gewähren.

request, Gesuch, n. 3. b. b.

as long as, so lange als.

misfortune, das Unglück.

to persecute, verfolgen.

## CHAPTER V.

### POSITION OF THE VERB.

#### RULE I.

The *Indicative Mood* generally stands after the subject, and before the object.

*Except:*

1. Those instances, mentioned in Book II. Part II. Ch. 2. Rules 1. & II.

2. When the verb must be at the end, that is to say, not only after the subject, but also after the object, and all words connected with it. This is necessary,

(1) When the member of the sentence, to which the verb belongs, commences with a relative pronoun, as, *der, welcher, wer, was*; or a relative adverb, as, *daher*, from whence; *da'rum*, for what; *wa'rum, wes'halb* or *weshalb'en, weswe'gen*, for which reason, for which, wherefore; \* *von wa'n'en*, from whence; *wo*, where; and the compounds of *wo*, as, *wovon, woher, womit, woraus*, &c. Examples: *Der Schriftsteller ist zu schät'zen, welcher die Beför'derung der Wahr'heit zum Zwecke hat*, that writer is to be esteemed, who has the promotion of truth for his object. *Ich ken'ne ei'nen Mann, der sich mit Recht mei'nen Freund nennt*, I know a man who justly calls himself my friend. *Wer dem Last'er und dess'en Reiz'en folgt, bereit'et sich ei'ne schmerzliche Reue*, he who follows vice and its charms, prepares for himself a painful repentance. The verb, in the foregoing examples, is at the end of that member of the sentence, to which the relative pronouns, *wel'cher, der, wer*, belong. It is thus with the adverbs alluded to: for instance, *Der Ort, wo ich heu'te mei'nen Freund sah*, the place where to-day I saw my friend. *Wohin' man das Au'ge nur wen'det, erblickt man nichts als El'end*, wherever one turns one's eye, one perceives nothing but misery. The verbs *sah*, and *wen'det*, are put last, in consequence of *wo*, and *wohin*.

(2) The verb is put at the end, after interrogatives (whether pronouns, adverbs, or conjunctions), when they form indirect questions. Examples: *Er frägt mich, wer die'sen Mor'gen bei Ih'nen war*, he asks me, who was with you this morning? *wis'sen Sie, wel'ches Buch er heu'te in dem Gar'ten las?* do you know what book he read to-day in the garden? *sä'gen Sie mir, was für ei'nen Grund er ü'ber sein Aus'bleiben an'gibt*, tell me, what ground he alleges for his staying out. *Wer, wel'cher, was für ein*, interrogative pro-

---

\* The signification of these words as relatives, must be distinguished from the other meanings which they bear, either as adverbs or conjunctions. *Daher*, thence, therefore; *da'rum*, for that reason, therefore; *warum*, *weswe'gen*, why, for what reason, cause, the subject to be placed after the verb.

nouns, serve here to form indirect questions,\* and the verb stands last. Ich kann nicht sa'gen, wie es sich zu'getragen hat, I cannot tell how it has happened; ich möchte wi'ssen, ob vie'le Leu'te bei jet'ziger hei'sser Wi'terung auf dem Fel'de sein wer'den, I should like to know, whether, during the present hot weather, many people will be in the field. Wie, and ob, constitute indirect questions, and the verb is at the end.

(3) After conditional, causal, and consecutive conjunctions. These are: als, da, bevor', e'he',<sup>1</sup> bis, da'sern', damit' (in order that); dass, auf dass (in order that); falls, im Fal'le (in case that); gleichwie', indem', (since, because); nachdem', nun (when it signifies, since, after—nun es ein'mal gesche'hen ist, since it once has been done); ob, ob'schon', ob'gleich', ob'wohl', seit, and seitdem'; sin'temal (since, whereas); so (when it means, if); so bald, or so bald als; so lang'e, or so lang'e als; so weit, or so weit als; wäh'rend, wäh'rend dass; weil; wenn, wengleich', wenn'schon'; wie, wiewohl', wo'fern', wo nicht. To these is to be added the comparative conjunction je, which, beginning the prior member, removes the verb to the end. Example: Als er den Aufruhr in der Stadt bemerk'te, when he perceived the tumult in the city; bevor' ich den Wald erreicht' hat'te, before I had reached the wood; bis die Son'ne die erstarr'ten Fel'der auflösen wird, till the sun shall loosen the congealed fields; da der Gesand'te in Lou'don ank'am, when the ambassador arrived in London; je läng'er der Künst'ler die'se Ge'genstände betrachtete, des'to mehr bewunderte er sie, the more the artist contemplated these objects, the more he admired them.

By the force of the aforesaid conjunctions, the verb is put at the end of the member of the sentence to which it belongs, and sometimes even after a subordinate member, connected with it. For example: Da ich den Mann, wel'cher so e'del gedacht', eh're, und lie'be, since I honor and love the

---

\* It is probably understood by the reader, what is meant by *indirect* questions: but there will remain no doubt, if we change some of the foregoing into *direct* questions, to show the difference, viz. Wer war bei Ih'nem? who was with you? wel'ches Buch las er? what book did he read?

man, who has thought so nobly. In this, the principal member is, *da ich den Mann eh're und lie'be*, with which is connected a subordinate or secondary member, *wel'cher so e'del gedacht'*, and the verb of the former is placed after this. It need not necessarily be so; for the sentence might also run thus: *Da ich den Mann eh're und lie'be, wel'cher so e'del gedacht'*. It depends upon euphony and perspicuity, whether the one or the other is to be preferred. This likewise applies to the infinitive, with the preposition *zu*. The verb, influenced by the above conjunctions, may be put after the infinitive; as, *Weil ich mich nicht zu zank'en wünsch'e*, because I do not like to quarrel; or before it, *weil ich nicht wünsch'e, mich zu zank'en*. When the infinitive, with *zu*, has other words belonging to it, for instance, cases of declension which it governs, it is preferable, on account of the extent which it then assumes, to place it with its dependent words after the verb, lest the sentence should become heavy and intricate. Being without the preposition *zu*, it is immediately governed by the verb, as much as a case of declension; and the verb, under these circumstances, must stand after it; as, *Wenn er das Buch le'sen will*, if he will read that book; where it would be less natural to let the infinitive follow after the verb, as, *wenn er will das Buch le'sen*.

### *Exercises.*

Whoever has a good conscience. He who understands it.

The color with which the wall is covered.

Do you know what is meant by it?

Nobody knows whom he aims at.

As soon as we had recovered ourselves.

Unless all this be a delusion.

The more he saw of the country, so much the more he disliked the thought of returning.

He is safe if he will follow my advice.

whoever, *wer nur*.

good, *gut*.

conscience, *Gewiss'en, n. 3. a.*

he, *der'jenige*.

to understand, *verst'e'hen*.

color, *Far'be, f.*

with which, *womit'*.

wall, *Wand, f.*

to cover, *überzie'hen, ir.*

to know, *wis'sen*.

by it, *damit'*.

to mean, *mei'nen*.

nobody, *nie'mand*.

at, *auf. (acc.)*.

to aim, *ab'zielen*.

as soon as, *so bald als*.

to recover one's self, sich er- ho'len.	so much the more, des'to mehr.
unless, wofern' nicht.	I dislike, mir misfällt', ir.
delusion, Täufchung, f.	thought, Gedank'e, m. 3. c. c.
the more, je mehr.	to return, zurück'kehren.
of, von. (dat.)	safe, si'cher.
country, Land, n. 3. b. e.	advice, Rath, m. 3. b.
to see, se'hen, ir.	to follow, folgen. (dat.)

## RULE II.

The *Subjunctive Mood*, as to position, is subject to the same rules, as the indicative. When it denotes a wish, or surprise, it often begins the sentence; as, *Ge'be es der Him'mel!* may Heaven grant it! *möch'te die Son'ne doch schei'nen!* oh, that the sun would shine! *Hät'te ichs doch nicht geglaubt!* I should not have thought it! This is always the case when the conditional conjunction, *wenn*, if, is omitted: *Wä're ich hier gewe'sen*, had I been here; for, *wenn ich hier gewe'sen wä're*, if I had been here.

## RULE III.

The *Imperative* precedes the personal pronoun, which is the subject. *lo'be du*, praise thou; *lo'be er*, let him praise; *lo'ben sie*, let them praise.

## RULE IV.

The *Infinitive* comes after the object, and the other words of a sentence, except the indicative, and subjunctive, when these, for reasons assigned before, are put last. Examples: *Er wünscht die lateinische Sprache gründlich zu ler'nen*, he wishes to learn the Latin language accurately; *dieser Mann kann Eng'lish, Franzö'sisch, Deutsch, und verschiedene andere Sprachen von Euro'pa re'den*, this man can speak English, French, German, and several other tongues of Europe. *ler'nen* and *re'den* are infinitives.

This rule affects the future tense, because it is composed of an infinitive and the third auxiliary. The infinitive, here, is placed in the same manner, as in the examples above stated, that is to say, after the object and other words; as, *Ich wer'de mor'gen die Ge'gend bes'e'hen*, I shall

to-morrow take a view of the country. *Besehen* is the infinitive, belonging to the auxiliary *werde*, with which it constitutes the future tense; but this connexion does not alter its position in the sentence.—When the future in the indicative or subjunctive mood must be placed at the end, on account of some preceding word, which requires that collocation, the infinitive that is used in forming the future must be put before the auxiliary; as, *Man glaubt, dass der Kaiser mit den Franzosen Frieden machen werde*, it is thought that the Emperor will make peace with the French. Here the infinitive *machen*, is before the auxiliary *werde*. When the future tense of the passive voice stands in this predicament, the auxiliary verb, in the indicative or subjunctive, is often put before the infinitive, which is done to prevent, by means of the intervening participle, the immediate repetition of *werden*: for example, *Ich erwarte, dass verschiedene Sachen nach unserm Hause werden gebracht werden*, I expect, that several things will be brought to our house.

Sometimes two infinitives stand together, one of which governs the other; then the governing one should be put after that which is governed; as, *Er wollte sie nicht herein kommen lassen*, he would not let them come in. Here *lassen*, the governing infinitive is preceded by the other, *herein kommen*, which is governed. But this rule is not always observed, as the following example proves: *Er hat ihn schon mehr als zehn mal müssen hören*, he has been obliged more than ten times to hear him—instead of *hören müssen*, which is also used.

The infinitive is found, now and then, at the very beginning of a sentence, and in that position bears a strong emphasis; as, *Kommen will ich zwar*, come, indeed, I will; *aber schreiben darf ich nicht*, but write I must not.

The infinitive may be employed, in a substantive capacity,\* as the subject or object: and is then placed accordingly.

#### RULE V.

*Separable compound verbs* have the particle separated from the verb, when this is not at the end of the sentence; and require it to be placed after the object and other

---

\* See page 167. Book I. Part II. Ch. 11. § 1. A. 1.



words, including even a relative or intermediate member of the sentence. *Ich neh'me Ihr Geschenk' mit Dank'barkeit an*, I receive your present with gratitude; verb *an'nehmen*, to receive—the particle *an*, at the end. *Sie ka'men in Un'se-hung die'ser Sa'che bald überein'*, they soon agreed with respect to this matter; verb *überein'kommen*. *Neh'men Sie das Buch mit*, take the book with you; verb *mitneh'men*. When the verb, in consequence of a pronoun, or a conjunction, is brought to the end of the sentence, the particle is not separated from it; as, *Da ich Ihr Geschenk' mit Dank'barkeit an'neh-me*, as I receive your present with gratitude. The verb *an'nehme* stands last, on account of the conjunction *da*, and remains, for this reason, united with the particle.—The infinitive mood, and the past participle have their place after the object, and at or near the end of the sentence; therefore, the particle is not separated, except by *zu*, in the infinitive, and by *ge*, in the past participle; as, *mit zu nehmen*, *mit'genommen*. *Zu*, however, does not always accompany the infinitive. From what has been said, it appears, that the separation principally occurs in the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods.

### Exercises.

May it serve to your advantage.

Praise him!

He tries to find the philosopher's stone.

I shall now go to rest.

They hope that the war will be prolonged.

He predicts that one after the other will be arrested.

Why should we not<sup>2</sup> bid<sup>4</sup> him<sup>1</sup> go<sup>3</sup>.

He<sup>3</sup> indeed<sup>4</sup> can<sup>2</sup>not<sup>5</sup> flatter<sup>1</sup>, but he wishes to console.

Give up this plan! Could I foreknow this? They have sent off the girl. He continued to urge him eagerly.

to, *zu*. (*dat.*)

advantage, *Vor'theil*, *m.* 3.

b. b.

to serve, *die'nen*.

to praise, *lo'ben*.

to try, *sich bemü'h'en*.

the philosopher's stone, *der Stein der Wei'sen*.

to find, *fin'den*.

to rest, *zur Ru'he*.

to go, *sich bege'ben*.

to hope, *hoff'en*.

that, *dass*.

war, *Krieg*.

to be prolonged, *sich in die Länge zie'h'en*.

to predict, voraus'sagen.  
 after, nach. (*dat.*)  
 to arrest, verhaften.  
 why, warum'.  
 I shall, ich soll.  
 not, nicht.  
 to go, gehen.  
 to bid, heißen.  
 to flatter, schmeicheln.  
 I can, ich kann.  
 indeed, freilich.

but, aber.  
 to wish, wünschen.  
 to console, trösten.  
 to give up, aufgeben.  
 plan, Plan.  
 to foreknow, vorauswissen.  
 to send off, fortschicken.  
 girl, Mäd'chen, n. 3. a. a.  
 to continue, fortfahren.  
 eagerly, heftig.  
 to urge, zusehen. (*dat.*)

## CHAPTER VI.

## POSITION OF THE PARTICIPLE.

## RULE I.

When the participle, either present or past, is used as an adjective, it has its position accordingly. It precedes the noun, and follows the case it governs; as, *die alles belebende Sonne*, the all-animating sun; *der vom Blitz getroffene Baum*, the tree struck by lightning.

## RULE II.

The participle, when it stands in apposition, is put after the words with which it is connected; as, *das Buch, von dem Vater geschrieben*, the book written by the father; *der alte Feldherr, welcher drohend noch schmeichelnd, sondern ruhig befehlend, stillte den Aufruhr*, the old general, neither threatening nor flattering, but calmly commanding, quelled the sedition.

## RULE III.

When combined with the auxiliary verbs, the past participle has its place after the object and other words; and is, there-

fore, generally found towards the end of the sentence. *Er ist in 'lon'don gewēsen*, he has been in London—*ist gewēsen*, the participle *gewēsen* at the end. *Ich ha'be heutē das Buch ge'le'sen*, I have read the book to-day—*ha'be ge'le'sen*. *Er wird mit Recht ein gro'ser Mann genant'*, he is justly called a great man. If the auxiliary, by the power of some pronoun or conjunction, be removed to the end, the past participle stands before it; as, *Die Thaten, welche von dem Dich'ter ge'schil'dert wer'den*, the deeds that are depicted by the poet: the auxiliary, *wer'den*, at the end, because of the pronoun *welche*; the participle, *ge'schil'dert*, before it. *Ich weis es, weil ich den Mann selbst gese'hen ha'be*, I know it, because I have seen the man myself: the conjunction *weil*, removes the verb *ha'be* to the end, and the participle *gese'hen*, precedes it. —When the past participle and the infinitive of an auxiliary verb come together, the participle is placed before the infinitive; as, *ge'le'sen ha'ben*, to have read; *geliebt' wer'den*, to be loved. Should it so happen, that the participle, the infinitive, and the verb definite, that is to say, either the indicative or subjunctive, meet together at the end of a sentence, the arrangement may either be thus, participle, infinitive, indicative or subjunctive, *Nachdem' ich das Buch ge'le'sen ha'ben wer'de*, After I shall have read the book; or the verb definite, may be put before the participle and infinitive, *nachdem' ich das Buch wer'de ge'le'sen ha'ben*.

### Exercises.

The lame courier. A much-promising commencement. Three roasted apples. Let us all, hoping for the best, and prepared for the worst, persevere in our undertaking. They have accomplished their task. The plant which is described by Linnæus, is not the same. Before the clock shall have ceased striking.

to be lame, *hink'en*.  
 courier, *Bo'te*.  
 much, *viel*.  
 to promise, *verspre'chen*.  
 commencement, *An'fang, m*.  
 to roast, *rö'sten*.

apple, *\*Ap'fel, m. 3. a. a*.  
 let us, *la'sset uns*.  
 the best, *das Bes'te*.  
 to hope, *hoff'en*.  
 for, *auf. (acc.)*  
 the worst, *das Schlimm'ste*.

to prepare, *faſſ'en.*in, in. (*dat.*)undertaking, *Unterneh'men, n.*

3. a.

to persevere, *behar'ren.*task, *Aufgabe, f.*to accomplish, *vollen'den.*plant, *Pflan'ze, f.*by, *von.*to describe, *beschrei'ben, ir.*the same, (*der, die, das*) *näm'-**liche.*before, *e'he.*clock, *Gloc'ke, f.*to cease striking, *aus'schla-**gen, ir.*

## CHAPTER VII.

## POSITION OF THE ADVERB.

## RULE I.

An adverb joined to an adjective, must always stand before it; as, *sehr gut*, very good; *nicht schlecht*, not bad.

## RULE II.

When the adverb belongs to the verb whose action it defines and modifies, it is put after the verb, and, in general, also after the object. *Er behan'delt den Gegenstand vortrefflich*, he treats the subject excellently; *vortrefflich* is the adverb. Such adverbs, however, as denote time, (for example, *oft*, often; *häu'fig*, frequently; *heu'te*, to-day; *ges'tern*, yesterday, and the like,) are best placed immediately after the verb, and before the object.

When the verb is at the end of the sentence, the adverb, as well as the other words, naturally stands before it. Nor can the adverb, with propriety, be placed after the infinitive, or past participle. Moreover, unless the verb be at the end, the adverb cannot be stand between the subject and the verb.

## RULE III.

The adverb, when removed from its place towards the beginning of the sentence, generally receives an emphasis; as, *Ich ha'be heu'te das Buch geles'en*, I have to-day read the

book ; which make the notion of *heu'te*, to-day, more perceptible than, *Ich ha'be das Buch heu'te gele'sen*. This seems to be the reason why adverbs implying time, are, as has just been observed, commonly placed before the object : namely, they are thus rendered more distinct. But to make the emphasis so evident that it cannot be mistaken, the adverb should be put at the beginning : *Heu'te ha'be ich das Nas'-horn gese'hen*, to-day I have seen the rhinoceros. In this remark are not included the interrogative adverbs, such as, *wie*, how ; *wenn*, when ; *warum*, why ; *weswe'gen*, wherefore ; *wo*, where ; which, as they can be placed nowhere but in the beginning, derive no particular distinction from that position.

There are adverbs that in no place seem to be susceptible of an emphasis, viz. those which express chance, probability, and similar vague and undefined ideas—*vielleicht*, perhaps ; *vermuth'lich*, probably ; *wahr'scheinlich*, very likely ; and others. As no difference arises, in the purport of the sentence, from their situation, they may be put any where, even between the subject and the verb, where no other adverb is permitted to stand. *Dieser Mann vielleicht wird es wissen*, this man perhaps will know it ; *sein Bruder vermuth'lich hat ihm das geschrie'ben*, his brother probably has written that to him. If they have any effect, when thus transposed, it may be, that they rather give force to the subject.

The negative, *nicht*, not, has its station commonly after the object ; as, *Der Mann thut sei'ne Pflicht nicht*, the man does not do his duty. Here the action of the verb is accompanied by the negative. If it is to be particularly referred to the subject, or object, or any other word, it must be put before such word. *Nicht Reich'thum, son'dern Zufrie'denheit macht die Men'schen gluck'lich*, not wealth, but contentment makes men happy. In this instance, the negative is applied to the subject, and stands before it. *Lasst uns nicht den Verlust' des Schiff'es, son'dern den Tod so vie'ler trefflicher See'-leute beklagen*, do not let us lament the loss of the ship, but the death of so many fine seamen. The negative before the object.

### Exercises.

A very just comparison. He experienced quite a different treatment. She sang this air beautifully. They wore their

best dresses yesterday. It is by no means decided. In<sup>1</sup> order<sup>1</sup> to<sup>11</sup> ex<sup>10</sup>tricate<sup>12</sup> himself<sup>2</sup> as<sup>3</sup> soon<sup>4</sup> as<sup>5</sup> possible<sup>6</sup> from<sup>7</sup> his<sup>8</sup> embarrassment<sup>9</sup>. He will depart to-morrow. They will probably resort to this measure. He has not received your letter. Do not trouble yourselves about the past, but think of the future.

very, sehr.  
just, rich'tig.  
comparison, Vergleich', m.  
b. b.  
to experience, erfah'ren, ir.  
quite, ganz.  
different, verschie'den.  
treatment, Behand'lung.  
to sing, sing'en, ir.  
air, U'rie.  
beautifully, schön.  
to wear, tra'gen, ir.  
yesterday, gest'ern.  
dress, Kleid, n. 3. b. c.  
by no means, kei'neswegs.  
to decide, entschei'den, ir.  
in order, um.  
as soon as, so bald als.  
possible, mög'lich.

from, aus. (dat.)  
embarrassment. Verle'genheit.  
f.  
to extricate, heraus'ziehen.  
to-morrow, mor'gen.  
to depart, ab'reisen.  
probably, wahr'scheinlich.  
to, zu. (dat.)  
measure, Mas'regel, f.  
to resort, grei'fen.  
letter, Brief, m. 3. b. b.  
to receive, erhal'ten, ir.  
to trouble one's self, sich be-  
kümmern.  
about, um. (acc.)  
the past, das Vergang'ene.  
but, a'ber.  
to think of, bedenk'en. (acc.)  
the future, das Zukünftige.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### POSITION OF THE PREPOSITION.

#### RULE I.

The preposition always continues with its case, and is usually prefixed to it.

Hal'ben, hal'ber, entge'gen, zuwi'der, are constantly put after their cases. Durch, nach, gegenü'ber, un'geachtet, we'gen, zu, zuse'hen, zuwi'der, sometimes before, and sometimes after. See Book I. Part II. Ch. 8.

## RULE II.

The preposition together with its case, may be looked upon, in the position of words, as an adverb: accordingly, its place is after the object. *Ich ha'be ein'en Brief aus Deutsch'land erhal'ten*, I have received a letter from Germany. *Ich ha'be ein'en Brief erhal'ten aus Deutsch'land*.

## RULE III.

The preposition with its case may be put before the object, for the purpose of emphasis: *Ich ha'be aus Deutsch'land ein'en Brief erhal'ten*—here the words, *aus Deutsch'land*, acquire energy from their position. But the stress is most forcible, when the preposition is placed at the beginning of the sentence: *Aus Deutsch'land ha'be ich ein'en Brief erhal'ten*, from Germany I have received a letter.

## RULE IV.

It cannot be inserted between the subject and the verb, unless it belongs exclusively to the former; as, *Der Mann mit dem blau'en Roc'ke hat es gethan'*, the man with a blue coat (that is, wearing a blue coat) has done it. *Jener mit dem De'gen hat die That begang'en*, that one with the sword (that is, he who has the sword) has committed the deed. It is not said, that the first has done it with the blue coat, or that the second has committed the deed with the sword: this would be a false construction. But, from the collocation of the words, it is to be understood, that the one, who wears a blue coat, is charged with a certain deed, and the other, who has a sword, has committed the deed. Therefore, if the preposition, with its case, is not exclusively referred to the subject, it cannot be put, where we see it in the examples adduced.

## RULE V.

If an adverb and preposition meet in the same member of a sentence, the adverb should come before the preposition, especially, when the former consists only of one, or two syllables; for example, *Er schreibt gut mit die'ser Fe'der*,

he writes well with this pen; wir ge'hen heu'te auf die Jagd, we go a hunting to-day; sie rei'seten ei'lig durch Lon'don, they passed hastily through London; er wird mor'gen zu mir kom'men, he will come to me to-morrow. The adverbs gut, heu'te, ei'lig, mor'gen, here stand before the preposition.

### *Exercises.*

Since this event. Contrary to my wishes. Opposite our garden. I have searched after this circumstance in all (*the*) records. That gentleman with the solemn air has made the remark. They were soon put to flight.

since, seit. ( <i>dat.</i> )	to search after, nach'forschen.
event, Ereig'niss, <i>n.</i> 3. b. b.	gentleman, Herr.
wish, *Wunsch, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	solemn air, Amts'miene, <i>f.</i>
contrary, zuwi'der.	remark, Bemerkung, <i>f.</i>
opposite, gegenü'ber.	to make, ma'chen.
garden, *Gar'ten, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.	soon, bald.
circumstance, *Um'stand, <i>m.</i>	to put to flight, in die Flucht
3. b. b.	schla'gen, <i>ir.</i>
record, Ur'kunde, <i>f.</i>	

## CHAPTER IX.

### POSITION OF THE CONJUNCTION.

#### RULE I.

The conjunction is, in general, placed at the beginning of the sentence, and before the subject.

#### RULE II.

Some conjunctions require the verb to be placed at the end of the sentence, as has been stated Book I. Part II. Ch. 9. 2.\* These are: als, bevor', bis, da, dafern', damit', auf dass, ehe, falls, gleichwie', indem', im Fal'le, je, nachdem', nun, ob, ob'schon', obgleich', obwohl', seit, seitdem', sin'temal, so, so bald, so bald als,

\* See page 161.



so lang'e, so lang'e als, so weit, so weit als, wäh'rend, weil, wenn, wenn gleich, wenn schon, wie, wiefern', in wiefern', wiewohl', wofern', wonicht'.

### RULE III.

Others when at the beginning, cause the subject to be placed after the verb. They are : *da*, then ; *daher'*, therefore ; *dann*, *darauf'*, *darum'*, for that reason ; *dennach'*, *den'noch*, *jedoch'*, *jetzt*, *folg'lich*, *hingegen*, *indess'en*, *ungleichen*, *kaum*, *mithin'*, *noch*, *nun*, *so*, *überdies'*, *übrigens*. *Da kam der Mann*, then came the man ; *mith'in irrt sich dein Bruder*, consequently your brother mistakes. Excepting *da*, all of them may likewise be put after the verb ; as, *Der Mann glaubt daher'*, the man thinks therefore ; *ich zweifle jedoch'*, I doubt however. *Ferner*, *folg'lich*, *hingegen*, *indess'en*, *ungleichen*, *überdies'*, *übrigens*, may even stand between the subject and the verb : *Der Verfasser fer'ner behauptet*, the author, moreover, maintains. Also, *doch*, *entweder*, *weder*, *zwar*, are to be added to the foregoing : for when they begin a sentence, they may, like these, bring the subject after the verb, though it is not necessary. It is right to say, *Also der Bruder hat geschrieben*, the brother then has written ; and, *also hat der Bruder geschrieben*. Likewise thus : *Der Bruder hat also geschrieben*, and, *der Bruder also hat geschrieben*. By this transposition, the force of the sentence may be varied, which is no small advantage in composition. The word *nämlich*, namely, which should be considered as a conjunction, may be included among those last mentioned : but, when at the beginning of a sentence, it never causes the subject to be put after the verb.

### RULE IV.

The conjunctions, *a'ber*, but, and *auch*, also, may stand anywhere in the sentence.\* At the beginning, *Über mein Bruder weigert sich*, but my brother declines it. After another conjunction, *Da a'ber mein Bruder sich weigert*. After an

---

\* Auch is mentioned on page 161.

adverb, *Nun a'ber befehl't es die Klug'heit*, but now prudence commands it; or after a preposition with its case, *Mit die'sen Leu'ten a'ber kann ich nichts an'fange'n*, but with these people I can do nothing. And it makes no alteration in the influence of other words, upon the constitution of the sentence. Those, for instance, which bring the subject after the verb, retain the same power, though a'ber be inserted after them; as appears from the preceding examples. It may also be placed after the subject, *Die Franzo'sen a'ber ha'ben den Eng'la'ndern den Krieg erkl'art*. After the object, *Die Franzo'sen ha'ben den Eng'la'ndern den Krieg a'ber erkl'art*. When not in the beginning of the sentence, it commonly gives energy to the word that precedes it. The personal pronouns are, generally, put before it, when the verb has quitted its original place; as, *Da er a'ber nicht kömmt*, but since he does not come; *das wünsch'en wir a'ber nicht*, but this we do not wish; *das Geld verlang'e ich a'ber*, but the money I demand.—What has been remarked of a'ber, may, almost entirely, be applied to auch; though perhaps, if we would speak cautiously, we should say, that auch has nearly, but not quite the same license of position. It has, moreover, the power, when placed at the beginning of a sentence, of bringing the subject after the verb, which power a'ber has not.

### *Exercises.*

If you do not go immediately. Then we rejoiced. She nevertheless forgave him. Consequently his assertion rests on a wrong conclusion. Namely, the question arises, whether we shall remain or not. But the Tyrolese were not discouraged. This supposition also may easily be refuted.

if, wenn.  
immediately, sogleich'.  
to go, ge'hen.  
then, da.  
to rejoice, sich freu'en.  
nevertheless, den'noch.  
to forgive, verge'ben, ir.  
consequently, demnach'.  
to rest, beru'hen.  
assertion, Behaup'tung, f.

upon, auf. (dat.).  
wrong, falsch.  
conclusion, Schluss. m. 3. b. b.  
namely, nämlich,  
question, Fra'ge, f.  
to arise, entste'hen.  
whether, ob.  
to remain, blei'ben.  
or, o'der.  
but, a'ber.

Tyrolese, Tyro'ler, m. 3. a. a.	may be, läßt sich (literally,
discouraged, entmu'thigt.	suffers itself.)
supposition, Vermu'thung.	easily, leicht.
also, auch.	to refute, widerse'gen.

## CHAPTER X.

### POSITION OF THE INTERJECTION.

The position of the interjection is arbitrary ; it may be placed wherever it presents itself, according to the emotion of the speaker or writer.

## BOOK III.

### PROSODY.\*

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.†

“IN the German language the division of words into syllables is not founded upon *derivation*, but on *pronunciation*; we therefore follow the principle, Divide as you speak.” †

1. The letters *ch* and *sch*, when they form simple consonants, can never be disconnected on account of any alteration of the word in which they occur; as, *Luch*, cloth, *Luch*-es (not *Luc*-hes); *Tausch*, exchange, *tau*-sch-en, to exchange, (not *tauf*-chen.)

2. The consonant *n* before *g*, or *k*, is not to be pronounced separately although a vowel should follow the *g* or *k*; because the combination of *n* with *g* or *k*, affects the pronunciation of both letters, by giving them a nasal sound. Thus the true sound of the verbs *sing*-en, to sing, and *dan*k-en, to

---

\* Prosody, containing the principles of syllabic division, quantity, accent, and verse, may be considered as the *syntax* of phonology, i. e. the doctrine of the sounds of the language, the elements of which form the first part of this grammar. See page 3, Book I. Part I. Ch. 3.

† The mode of dividing words into syllables would not have been ranked among the parts of prosody, if this division were not founded altogether on principles of elocution.

‡ Heinsius's German Grammar.

thank, would be spoiled by separating them in this manner, fin-gen, dan-fen.

3. A long vowel, or a diphthong, followed by a simple or double consonant, is pronounced with this consonant, if it terminates the word; as, grün, green; meist, most: but if a vowel with or without other letters is added to its end, the consonant which before terminated the word, becomes the initial of the additional syllable; as, grün-er, greener; Mei-ster, master.

4. A short vowel, followed by a simple consonant with another vowel after it, is commonly pronounced by itself, so that the consonant between the two vowels is joined with the subsequent vowel; as Wo-che, week, Bü-sche, bushes, (the *ch* and *sch* being considered as two simple consonants.)\*

5. If a short vowel is followed by a double consonant, the two consonants of which the double one consists, are commonly separated in pronunciation and spelling, the first of them being joined with the preceding vowel, and the second with the subsequent vowel; as, Schif-fe, vessels; ras-ten, to rest; des Flach-ses, of the flax.

*Observation.* Many German authors divide the words into syllables according to *derivation*, without regarding their pronunciation; and others divide partly according to the former and partly according to the latter. But the only advantage to be obtained in syllabic division seems to consist in its agreement with pronunciation, which is not founded on etymology, by which derivative and compound words are analyzed into their component parts. Etymology cannot be promoted by dividing the words according to the principle of derivation; for this kind of division is itself the result of etymology. Accordingly we have in this grammar endeavoured to divide every word conformably to its true pronunciation—taking together for each syllable so many letters as are necessary to produce each of the component sounds of the word.

---

\* It is difficult, on account of the accent, to determine in regard to such words as Woche and Büsche, whether the intermediate consonant belongs to the first or the second syllable. Yet if other syllables which displace the accent without altering the length of the preceding vowel, be added to the beginning of the word, we perceive that the intermediate consonant belongs to the subsequent rather than the preceding vowel; as, Char-woche, the week before easter; Helm-büsch: where we ought to divide thus, Char'-wo-che; Helm'-bü-sche.

## CHAPTER II.

## QUANTITY.

The quantity of a syllable consists in the duration of its sound. The principal difference between the ancient Greek and Latin languages and the German as well as other modern languages, in respect to quantity, consists in two things. First, there are in the ancient languages but two different times of duration by which the quantity of syllables is determined. They are either long or short; and there is but one kind of length and of shortness, the time of two short syllables being equal to one long syllable.\* In German there is a great variety of longer or shorter syllables: thus in the word *Wohnungen*, habitations, the syllable *Woh* is longer than *nung*, which surpasses in length the final syllable *en*.

The German also differs from the ancient languages in its not recognising the principle of *position*, that is, the effect of the meeting of two consonants, by which in the ancient languages the preceding syllable is rendered long. For although the concurrence of consonants has some influence upon quantity in German, yet this influence consists in nothing else than the natural effect of several consonants upon pronunciation. They lengthen a syllable by obstructing its utterance. Thus *ein* (indef. art.) is shorter than *eins*, one thing, and this is shorter than *einst*, once.

To facilitate the comprehension of quantity in German, three different times of duration have been adopted by prosodists, the long, the short, and the middle time, which are signified by these three signs, —, v, and u.† One long syllable is accounted equal to two short ones: while those of middle length are in themselves shorter than the former, and longer than the latter; but may sometimes be used as long, and sometimes as short syllables.

\* Although there were syllables which were sometimes pronounced long and sometimes short (*ancipites*), yet they did not form a medium between long and short, but were pronounced either long or short.

† This sign (v) is here used to signify the *middle* time, as well as the *doubtful*, i. e. either short or long.

1. The following syllables are long : all monosyllabic nouns, adjectives, and verbs (if they are not used as auxiliaries) ; moreover, the radical syllable of every word, and those syllables which have the accent ;\* as, *Wort*, word ; *gut*, good ; *sein* (*seyn*), to exist ; *Ersterlichers*, something more pleasant ; *antoworten*, to answer.

2. The following syllables are short : the inseparable particles belonging to compound verbs, as, *be*, *ent*, *emp*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, (pages 110—112) ; the unaccented ending of words, as, *e*, *de*, *te*, *el*, *em*, *en*, *er*, *es*, *et* ; the definite article, and some adjective and adverbial endings, as, *en*, *ig*, *lich*, and *isch*. Examples, *bereiten*, to prepare ; *Tiefe*, depth ; (*er*) *liebet*, (he) loves ; *irden*, earthen ; *wahrlich*, truly ; *weibisch*, effeminate.

3. The following syllables are of middle length : monosyllabic pronouns, numerals, prepositions, conjunctions, some adverbs, interjections, auxiliaries in their monosyllabic inflections, the substantive endings, *end*, *ung*, *lein*, *niss* (*niss*), *schaft*, *heit*, *keit*, (see page 16, 1. b. and 1. d.), and the adjective, adverbial, and participial endings, *elt*, *ern*, *icht*, *sam*, *bar*, *ischt*, *end*, *elt*, *ert*, *erst* ; as, *ich*, I ; *drei*, three ; *fur*, for ; *wenn*, if ; *nun*, now ; *o ! O !* ; (*er*) *hat* (*geliebt*), (he) has (loved) ; *Baumlein*, little tree ; *geharnischt*, clad in armour ; *zuvorderst*, first.

*Observation.* It should be remembered, that this classification of syllables according to their length is only an approximation to a correct representation of their quantity, which in many cases depends on other circumstances besides those before mentioned ; such as the sense of the words, the meeting of certain letters, and other things, which cannot be taught by rules, but must be acquired by induction, as one becomes familiar with the nature of the language.

---

\* The nature of this case will be explained in the next chapter.

## CHAPTER III.

## ACCENT.

The accent consists in laying upon a particular syllable of a word, or upon a certain part of a sentence, a greater stress than upon the rest. Accordingly there are two kinds of accent, that which is laid upon a particular syllable, and that which belongs to a certain part of a sentence. In this sentence, *Die Griechen wa'ren sieg'reich*, the Greeks were victorious, the accent is to be placed on *die Griechen*, *the Greeks*, if the intention of the writer is to exclude the idea that the enemies of the Greeks were victorious; but it must be laid upon *sieg'reich*, *victorious*, if he meant to assert that the Greeks were not defeated, but gained the victory.\* This rule applies, of course, as well to words of one, as of several syllables.

In order to determine which of several *syllables* of a word has the accent, we must, according to the above principle, examine which of them is the most important. The relative importance of each syllable, on which the place of the accent depends, is determined by the following rule. The greatest stress, and consequently the accent, lies generally on the *radical* syllable of the word, unless it be compounded with another word which implies a negation or limitation of the radical word. In this case, the word which is joined as a limitation takes the *principal* accent; and the radical syllable of the main word retains only a *secondary* accent. Thus the words *ge'ben*, to give, *Gesell'schaft*, company, and most other words, have only one accent, viz. on the radical syllable of each of them (*geb*, *sell*). But in the words *auf'ge ben*, to give up, *Rei'segefell'schaft*, company for travelling, the original words are essentially modified by the additions *auf*, *Rei'se*; these therefore take the principal accent, while only a secondary stress remains on the radical words.

---

\* Accordingly the question, which of several words in a sentence is to have the accent, cannot be determined by the part of speech to which each of these words belongs, but only by the degree of importance which the meaning of the sentence assigns to each of them.



In speaking, the principal accent is generally expressed by a rising, and the secondary accent by a falling of the voice; in writing, the former is marked by the sign (´), and the latter by the sign (˘), after the last letter of the accented syllable.\*

It is to be observed that the accent is not moved from the radical syllable of a word on account of the addition of a syllable which either has no meaning by itself, or, at least, by being joined to another word, takes entirely the nature of those particles which have no meaning except in connexion with other words. This inseparable connexion makes them to be considered as parts of the radical word rather than as limitations of its original meaning. Thus, with respect to compound verbs, the inseparable particles, *be, ge, ent, &c.* (pages 110—112), do not alter the place of the accent; while all the separable particles, *as, an, on, ab, off, aus, out,* produce that effect. Examples: *setzen*, to place; *versetzen*, to displace; *absetzen*, to depose; *gehen*, to go; *übergehen* (inseparable), to pass over without noticing; *übergehen* (separable), to go over to a different party. Those words, however, which are compounded with *un*, form exceptions; because this negative particle does not occur by itself, and nevertheless produces so great an alteration of the sense that it generally takes the principal accent; as, *freundlich*, friendly, *unfreundlich*, unfriendly, *Fall*, case; *Unfall*, accident. The verb *antworten*, to answer, composed of the ancient verb *worten*, to represent in words, and the inseparable *ant*, forms a similar exception. In some instances the sense of the sentence and euphony alone can decide which of two syllables ought to have the principal, and which the secondary accent; whether, for example, we ought to pronounce *vollkommen*, or *vollkommen*, perfect; *unentbehrlich*, or *unentbehrlich*, indispensable. Sometimes even an unaccented syllable may be marked by a particular oratorical accent; as in this phrase, *Viele haben um diese Ehre sich beworben, aber Keiner hat sie erworben*, many have aspired to this honor, but no one has obtained it.

Foreign words which are Germanized by omitting the endings *es, os, us, ius, o, a, &c.*, have the accent commonly

---

\* It is scarcely necessary to observe that in this grammar only the principal accent has been marked. In German books, in general, no accent is marked.

on the final syllable; as, *Uchill'* (Achilles); *Olymp'* (Olympus); *Consulat'* (consulatus); *Birgil'* (Virgilius); *Upoll'* (Apollo); *Diplom'* (diploma).

*Observation.* Accent must not be confounded with quantity. The latter consists in the duration of the sound of a syllable; while the accent marks the degree of emphasis employed in pronouncing certain syllables or words. If the accent is on a long syllable, it has no influence upon its quantity. But when it happens to fall on a short syllable, the accent does not actually make the syllable a long one, yet it produces a similar effect on its pronunciation: that is, the rapid and emphatic manner in which the accented syllable is uttered, is followed by a pause preceding the pronunciation of the unaccented syllables; and this pause together with the accented syllable equals the time of a long syllable, according to the above principles of quantity. Examples, *Mu'ter*, mother; *Wa'sser*, water.

## CHAPTER IV.

### GERMAN VERSE.

The German verse rests on a double foundation, Rhythm, or harmonious measure; and Consonance, or agreement of sounds, which is exemplified principally in *rhyme*. In the ancient Greek and Latin poetry, rhythm alone constituted the verse. For although we find rhyme sometimes employed (intentionally, as it seems), it must be considered as an incidental play upon certain sounds rather than as an element of versification. In German, as in other modern languages, the principle still prevails that there may be verses without rhyme, but none without rhythm. Nevertheless it is certain, that in some verses the rhythm, and in others the rhyme (or some other kind of consonance), determines the character of the verse.

#### § 1. *Of Rhythm.*

The German language is capable of imitating all the ancient Greek and Roman metres; accordingly all the classical poetry of the ancients, even the choruses of the dramatic

poets, have been translated into German verses of the same kind.—But, in indigenous German versification, a freer use has been, and may be made of the rhythmical powers of the language, for adapting the measure entirely to the meaning of the words, without confining the poet to other rules than that measurement of time to which the composer of music is likewise subjected.

1. *The Ancient Metres.* In using the ancient metres for German poetry, the above principles of quantity ought to be observed. The accent has no *direct* influence in this kind of versification; except so far as it coincides with the principles of quantity, and preserves euphony in general.

Each foot of the ancient metres may be rendered in German either by one or by more words. It will be sufficient to give here examples of all the feet of two and of three syllables.

a. Feet of two syllables.

Spondee,	- -	Kunst'werk, work of art.
Pyrrhich'ius,	o o	Gyba-rit', * Sybarite.
Trochee,	- o	al'le, all.
Iambus,	o -	Gewalt', force.

b. Feet of three syllables.

Molossus	- - -	Feldhaupt'mann, commander.
Trib'rachys,	o o o	gebene-deit', * blessed.
Antibacchi'us,	- - o	Ein'wohner, inhabitant.
Bacchi'us,	o - -	Gewalt'that, violence.
Amphim'acer,	- o -	U'bergang, transaction.
Amphib'rachys,	o - o	Gefüh'le, feelings.
Dac'tylus,	- o o	Wan'derer, traveller.
An'apæst,	o o -	Diamant', diamond.

---

\* As every word of more than one syllable has one of these long, the Pyrrhichius and Tribrachys can be formed only by monosyllables, or by the initial or final syllables of words of more than one syllable. Thus in the above examples the two first syllables of Gybarit' form the Pyrrhichius, and the three first syllables of gebenedeit' form the Tribrachys.

The following specimens will be sufficient to illustrate the use of ancient metres in German.

*Hexameter and Pentameter.*

- ˘ ˘ | - ˘ ˘ | -, ˘ ˘ | - ˘ ˘ | - ˘ ˘ | - ˘  
 - ˘ ˘ | - ˘ ˘ | - | - ˘ ˘ | - ˘ ˘ | -

Plötz'lich erscholl' Schlacht'ruf; wild schmet'terten al'le Trom-  
 pet'en,  
 Rasch wie der Klang in der Luft, stürm'ten die Fein'de wir  
 an.

Suddenly sounded the battle-cry; wildly clanged all the  
 trumpets,  
 Quick as the clangor in the air, we rushed against the enemy.

*The Sapphic Stanza.\**

- ˘ | - - | - ˘ ˘ | - ˘ | - ˘  
 - ˘ | - - | - ˘ ˘ | - ˘ | - ˘  
 - ˘ | - - | - ˘ ˘ | - ˘ | - ˘  
                   | - ˘ ˘ | - ˘

Un'ser Tag'werk en'det der stil'le Sab'bat,  
 Wie des Mit'tags Glut die ersehn'te Mond'nacht:  
 Bis aus Schein und Schat'ten des ew'gen Sonn'tags  
 Mor'gen empor'steigt.

Our daily labor the still sabbath terminates, as the desired  
 moonlight night (*terminates*) the heat of midday: until out of  
 light and shade the morning of the eternal sunday rises.

---

\* The Sapphic stanza is here divided according to the simple mode of the old grammarians; because we think it preferable to that of Ausonius. We also think, that the *uniform* cæsure after the first syllable of the third foot, as we find it in the odes of Horace, cannot be considered as an improvement on the original metrical construction which prevails in the poetical remains of Sappho.

2. *The German Rhythm.* The metres which are not borrowed from the Greeks, but originally German, are on the whole founded upon the same principles of quantity, and may generally be analyzed into feet, like the ancient metres. But these principles of quantity and metrical division are modified by accent, euphony, and the sentiment that is to be expressed: so that frequently the character of the verse cannot be determined by each of its parts, but only by the whole of a poetical composition. Accordingly in native German poetry we find many deviations from the above stated common rules of quantity which ought strictly to be adhered to in imitating the ancient metres. Thus, a short syllable may be used for a long one, particularly when it ends in a vowel, or in a liquid consonant; as in the Iambic measure of Bürger's *Lenore*,—

Wie don'ner'ten die Brück'en !

How the bridges thundered !

On the other hand, long syllables may be used for short, particularly when, from the sense they express, they are comparatively of little importance in the sentence in which they occur. Thus in Schiller's *Maria Stuart*, Mary says,—

Dort legt ein Fi'scher den Na'chen an ;  
Dieses e'lende Fahr'zeug könn'te mich ret'ten !

There a fisher fastens his boat to the shore ;  
This miserable vessel might rescue me.

Here the first as well as the second syllable of *die'ses* is used as short, so that this word together with the first syllable of *e'lende* forms an anapæst, and all the emphasis falls on *e'lende* (even such a *miserable* skiff as this, &c.)

But in most cases of this kind it cannot be said strictly, that short syllables are used as long ones, or long syllables as short ones. A good reader will take care, that the measure which would be disturbed by pronouncing a certain syllable according to its natural quantity, be restored by an appropriate pause, or by protracting or shortening the subsequent or

preceding words, so as to restore the general character of the verse.

The most common measure is the *Iambic*, frequently interspersed with the spondee or anapæst, or a pyrrichius used as an iambus. The spondee and anapæst occur among the iambses not only in the odd places, as in the Greek trimeter, but in every place. Examples,

O Dank, Dank die'sen freund'lich grü'nen Bäu'men !  
(Schiller.)

O thanks, thanks to these friendly green trees !

Ja, in der Fer'ne fñhlt sich die Macht  
Wenn zwei sich red'lich lie'ben. (Göthe.)

Yes, at a great distance the power is felt, when two love each other truly.

Sometimes the iambic measure is interrupted by a trochee, for the sake of greater emphasis.

Kann ich doch für mich selbst nicht spre'chen, oh'ne euch  
Schwer zu verflä'gen. (Schiller.)

I indeed cannot speak for myself without accusing you grievously.

Next to the iambic, the *trochaic* measure is most frequent; oftentimes mixed with spondees and dactyles ;

Die weit lie'ber ein frem'des Lied  
Als ihr eig'nes hö'ren. (Göthe.)

Who like to hear the song of another rather than their own.

The *amphibrachys* also not unfrequently constitutes the character of the verse.

Es don'nern die Hö'hen, es zit'tert der Steg,  
Nicht grau'et dem Schüt'zen auf schwind'lichem Weg.

The heights thunder, the bridge trembles, the hunter is not afraid on the dizzy path.

Other verses derive their character from the dactyle, the anapæst, or other measures. Besides there is a great number of mixed verses; in some of them a regular change of certain feet is observed, while others, like the hymns of Pindar and the choruses of the Greek drama, vary according to the sentiment of the poet.

Most of the *regular verses* and stanzas, are the same in German and in English; particularly in modern German poetry, since the bold and high wrought versification of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries has given way to simpler measures. Peculiar to the German is the old heroic stanza, in which the great national epopee, *Das Lied der Nibelungen*,\* *The Poem of the Nibelung* (a northern German people), is written. As this ancient poetry lies beyond the limits of this grammar, we will present only one stanza, with no other changes than the antiquated inflections of the original seem to require. It may serve as a specimen of the simple iambic metre of this epic stanza. In this simple form it has been imitated by modern poets, without those rich variations by intervening anapæsts, dactyles, and trochees, in which the original abounds. The stanza describes the first meeting of Chriemhilt and Siegfried, the heroine and hero of the poem.

Nun ging die Min'nigliche, gleichwie' der Mor'gen roth  
Hervor' aus trüben Wol'ken; da schied von gro'ser Noth  
Er, der sie trägt im Her'zen—und trug so lang'e Zeit—  
Er sieht die Min'nigliche in ih'rer Herr'lichkeit.

Now the lovely one went, like the red morning, forth  
from dark clouds; then he who bears, and had borne her so  
long time in his heart, was released from great distress: he  
sees the lovely one before him in her splendor.

This stanza consists of iambuses, with a cæsura after the third foot, so that the last syllable of *Min'nigliche* (in the first verse) together with the pause after it, fills up one foot.

---

\* A good translation of the substance of this epopee has been published at Edinburgh, under the title of *Illustrations of Northern Antiquities*, &c. Edinburgh, 1814.

The same circumstance sometimes occurs after the seventh iambus (counting the cæsura as one foot), when there is a supernumerary syllable; as in these verses,—

Wollt ihr den Her'ren fin'den, das mag gar leicht gesche'hen :  
In je'nem wei'ten Saa'le da hab'ich ihn gese'hen.

If you wish to find the Lord, that may very easily be done; in that wide hall there I have seen him.

In some verses the regular pause is filled up by an additional syllable, so that the verse appears a tetrameter (octonarius). Sometimes the cæsura occurs in the third or seventh foot.\*

Besides the rhyme at the end of each of the two pairs of verses of which this stanza consists, a rhyme or assonance is frequently found at the cæsura of the verses; as,

Man soll auch un'sre Schil'de mit nich'ten von uns tra'gen ;  
Wo ich den Kõ'nig fin'de das sol'let ihr mir sa'gen.

They shall also by no means carry our shields from us; where I may find the king, you shall tell me.

Schilde and finde form an assonance. †

We will add a specimen of poetry, the rhythm of which is not determined by any certain measure, but by the sense of the words alone. It is taken from Schiller's *Maria Stuart*. When the queen, after a long and close imprisonment had obtained permission to walk in the park near the castle, she says to lady Kennedy, her nurse, who vainly endeavoured to follow the quick steps of the queen,—

\* Those who have thought the German epic verse nothing else than a corrupted Alexandrine trimeter (that lamest of all measures), seem either not to have studied these two kinds of verse, or to have no ear for versification.

† See page 273. Book III. Ch. 4. § 2. 2.



laß mich der neu'en Frei'heit genieß'en,  
 laß mich ein Kind sein, sei es mit !  
 Und auf dem grü'nen Tép'ich der Wießen  
 Prü'fen den leich'ten, geflü'gelten Schritt.  
 Bin ich dem fin'stern Gefäng'niss entstie'gen,  
 Hält sie mich nicht mehr, die trau'rige Gruft ?  
 laß mich in vol'len, in dur'stigen Zü'gen  
 Trin'ken die frei'e, die himm'lische Luft.  
 O Dank, Dank die'sen freund'lich grü'nen Bäu'men,  
 Die mei'nes Ker'kers Mau'ern mir verstek'en !  
 Ich will mich frei und glü'cklich träu'men,  
 Warum' aus mei'nem süßen Bahn mich we'ken ?  
 Umfängt' mich nicht der wei'te Him'mels'schoos ?  
 Die Blic'ke, frei und fes'sellos,  
 Erg'e'hen sich in un'gemessnen Räu'men.  
 Dort, wo die grau'en Nebelberge rä'gen,  
 Fängt mei'nes Rei'ches Grän'ze an ;  
 Und die'se Wol'ken, die nach Mit'tag ja'gen,  
 Sie sü'chen Frank'reichs fer'nen O'cean.

- Eilende Wol'ken ! Seg'ler der Lü'fte !  
 Wer mit euch wan'derte, mit euch schiff'te !  
 Grü'ßet mir freund'lich mein Ju'gendland !  
 Ich bin gefangen, ich bin in Ban'den,  
 Ach, ich hab' kei'nem an'dern Gesand'ten !  
 Frei in Lü'ften ist eu're Bahn,  
 Ihr seid nicht dieser Kö'nigin un'terthan.

Let me enjoy the new freedom,  
 Let me be a child, be one with me !  
 And on the green carpet of the meadows  
 (Let me) try the light, winged step.  
 Am I arisen from the dark prison,  
 Does the sad vault no longer restrain me ?  
 Let me in full and thirsty draughts  
 Drink in the free, the heavenly air.  
 O thanks, thanks to these friendly green trees,  
 Which conceal from me the walls of my dungeon !  
 I will dream myself free and happy ;  
 Why awake me from my sweet delusion ?  
 Does not the wide canopy of heaven surround me ?  
 My looks, free and unconfined,

Wander over immense spaces.  
 There, where the grey, misty mountains rise,  
 The boundary of my kingdom commences ;  
 And these clouds which hasten towards the south,  
 Seek the distant ocean of France.

Hastening clouds, sailers of the air,  
 Would that I could wander and sail with you !  
 Salute for me friendly the land of my youth !  
 I am imprisoned, I am in fetters,  
 Alas, I have no other messenger !  
 Free in the air is your path,  
 You are not subject to this queen.

The first three lines consist of alternate dactyles and trochees. From the fourth line the emphasis rises, as Mary contrasts her present freedom with her late imprisonment ; and the metre hastens on in dactyles, to the eighth verse. In the ninth verse the feeling of gratitude changes the measure into the iambic, which continues to the nineteenth. From the twentieth verse her desire of deliverance from captivity in England, awakened by the sight of the distant mountains of Scotland, and the clouds flying toward France, changes the metre again into that of the first three lines, which described her delight in her deliverance from her dungeon. The alternate dactyles and trochees terminate with the twenty-seventh verse, which consists of three anapæsts and one iambus.

*Observation.* It is an important principle in ancient as well as modern metres, that the natural division of every verse into words, should correspond in some measure with its division into feet, and the general character of the verse. Thus, a too frequent repetition of the amphibrachys spoils the character of the hexameter ; as,

lieb'lich ertön'ten die Flö'ten, es schweb'ten die Tän'zer im  
 Krei'se.

Sweetly sounded the flutes, the dancers moved in a circle.

This verse might be mended in this manner ;

Dort tönt Flö'tenmusik, dort schwing'en sich Tän'zer im Krei'se.

There sounds the music of flutes, there the dancers move in a circle.

## § 2. Of Consonance.

Under the word *consonance* we comprehend three principal resemblances between successive sounds of the language, viz. *rhyme*, *assonance*, and *alliteration*.

1. *Rhyme* consists in the identity of certain vowels and consonants. This resemblance may exist between one, or two or three syllables occurring in different words; as, *Schild*, shield, and *Bild*, image; *le'ben*, life, and *ge'ben*, to give; *min'niglich*, lovely, and *in'niglich*, intimately.

In a rhyme of more than one syllable the last may sometimes consist of a monosyllabic word; as,

Sei'nen Mei'ster  
liebt and preist er.

He loves and praises his master.

The rhyming syllables ought to be of the same quantity; and in rhymes of several syllables the principal emphasis should be on the first. Therefore we cannot make *sterb'lich*, mortal, rhyme with *erblich*, imperfect of *erblei'chen*, to grow pale; but we may make it rhyme with *erb'lich*, hereditary.

The rhyme is commonly found at the end, but sometimes (particularly in ancient German poetry) also in the course of the verse; as,

Aus Nacht erwacht'  
Der Son'ne Pracht.

Out of the night awakes the splendor of the sun.

In a monosyllabic rhyme the beginning of the rhyming syllables should not be the same, unless the two words express quite a different meaning. In rhymes of more than one syllable this remark applies to the first of those syllables.

—Thus we cannot make *meh'ren*, to augment, rhyme with *vermeh'ren*, to augment ; but it is allowable to say,

Jeder ed'le Mensch vereh're  
Diesen Märtyrer der Pflicht und Eh're !

Let every noble man revere this martyr of duty and honor.

We must notice here two kinds of impure rhymes which occur even in the works of the best poets. They consist in making to rhyme together vowels or consonants of a similar but not the same sound. With respect to vowels we remark as being made to rhyme together, *e, ä* and *ö* ; *i* and *ü* ; *ei* and *eu* ; as, *Ge'gen*, blessing, and *wa'gen*, to weigh ; *Feind*, enemy, and *Freund*, friend. In regard to consonants the sounds of *b* and *t* are particularly liable to be thus confounded ; as, *Men'te*, rent, and *En'de*, end.

2. *Assonance* consists in the rhyming of the vowels alone, and consequently differs from the full rhyme by the discrepancy between the consonants ; as, *mild*, *mild*, and *Kind*, child ; *lie'be*, love, and *Friede*, peace.

Since assonance does not so evidently combine several verses as rhyme, it is commonly oftentimes repeated, so that frequently the same assonance connects a whole poem. —Assonance is not so frequently used as rhyme.

3. *Alliteration* consists in the repetition of certain consonants at the beginning of words. It is most common that the same consonant which begins the first verse, is repeated in the course of the same, and then at the beginning of the next verse. Example,

Wohl in des Wal'des  
Wil'dester Ein'samkeit  
Hört' ich den Har'fenklang,  
Hört' ich den Held'ruf.

Indeed in the wildest solitude of the forest I heard the sound of the harps, I heard the call of the heroes.

Alliteration, which was common in the old Scandinavian poetry, is now rarer than the two other kinds of consonance.

## APPENDIX.

### I.

As an exercise in reading and translating for beginners, we add here a passage of the New Testament, from the German version of Leander Van Esz.

#### ACTS IX, 1—28.

1. Sau'lus schnaub'te noch Wuth und Mord wi'der die Jüng'er des Herrn, ging zu dem O'berpriester,

2. Und lies sich von ihm Voll'machtsbriefe nach Damas'kus an die Synago'gen ge'ben, kraft wel'cher er Män'ner und Frau'en, die er als An'hänger die'ser leh're fän'de, gebun'den nach Jeru'salem füh'ren könn'te.

3. Auf die'ser Rei'se, schon na'he bei Damas'kus, umstrahl'te ihn plötz'lich ein Licht vom Him'mel.

4. Er fiel auf die Er'de, und hör'te ei'ne Stim'me, die zu ihm sprach: Saul, Saul, warum verfolgst' du mich?

5. Er sprach: Herr! wer bist du? Der Herr sag'te: Ich bin Je'sus, den du verfol'gest. Es wird dir schwer wer'den, wi'der den Sta'chel aus'zuschlagen.

6. Zit'ternd und angst'voll sprach er: Herr, was willst du, daß ich thun soll?

7. Der Herr antwortete ihm: Ste'he auf, und ge'he in die Stadt, da wird dir gesagt wer'den, was du thun sollst. Be'stürzt stan'den sei'ne Rei'segefährten da; denn sie hör'ten zwar die Stim'me, sa'h'en a'ber Nie'mand.

8. Sau'lus stand von der Er'de auf, könn'te a'ber, da er die Augen öffnete, Nie'mand se'hen. Da nah'men sie ihn an der Hand, und leiteten ihn nach Damas'kus.

9. Drei Ta'ge lang sah er nicht, und nahm we'der Spei'se noch Trank zu sich.

10. Nun war zu Damas'kus ein Jüng'er, Na'mens] Anani'as; zu dem sprach der Herr in ei'ner Erschei'nung: Anani'as! Er sprach: Herr, hier bin ich.

11. Da sagte der Herr zu ihm: Geh' unverzüglich in die sogenannte gera'de Straße und erkun'dige dich in Ju'das Hause nach ei'nem Saulus von Tar'sus; denn e'ben jetzt be'tet die'ser Mann,

12. Und hat in ei'ner Erscheinung ei'nen Mann, Na'mens Anani'as zu sich herein'kommen gesehen, der ihm die Hän'de auflegt, . n ihn wie'der se'hend zu ma'chen.

13. Anani'as erwie'derte Ihm: Herr, es ha'ben mir Vie'le von die'sem Man'ne erzählt, wie viel Bö'ses er dei'nen Hei'ligen zu Jern'salem zu'gefügt;

14. Und auch hier hat er von den O'berpriestern Voll'macht, Al'le in Ban'de zu le'gen, die dei'nen Na'men an'rufen.

15. Der Herr sprach zu ihm: Ge'he nur hin; e'ben die'ser ist mir ein aus'erlesenes Werk'zeug, mich unter Hei'den, vor Kö'nigen und den Kin'dern Is'raels bekannt' zu ma'chen.

16. Denn ich wer'de ihm zei'gen, wieviel' er für mei'nen Na'men lei'den soll.

17. Anani'as ging also hin, kam in das Haus, leg'te ihm die Hän'de auf und sag'te: Bru'der Saul! der Herr, (Jesús, der dir auf dem We'ge, den du ka'mest, erschien') hat mich gesandt', damit du wie'der se'hend und voll des hei'ligen Gei'stes wer'dest.

18. Sogleich' war's, wie wenn Schup'pen von sei'nen Augen sie'len; er konn'te wie'der se'hen, stand auf und lies sich tau'fen.

19. Dann as er, und stärk'te sich wie'der. Noch ei'nige Ta'ge blieb er bei den Jüng'ern zu Damas'kus;

20. Und sogleich' pre'digte er Jesum in den Synago'gen, daß er der So hn Go'ttes sei.

21. Al'le, die ihn hör'ten, erstaun'ten und spra'chen: Ist es nicht, der zu Jeru'salem vertil'gen woll'te die, wel'che je'nen Na'men an'rufen? Ja gera'de da'rum ist er hieher' gekom'men, um sie in Verhaft' zu neh'men, und an die O'berpriester zu überlie'fern.

22. Saulus gewann' indes'sen im'mer mehr an Kraft, so daß er die Ju'den, die zu Damas'kus wohnten, ganz in Verwirrung se'tzte, indem er stand'haft behauptete: die'ser ist Christus.

23. Ei'ne gerau'me Zeit nachher' hiel'ten die Ju'den Rath zusam'men, ihn umzubringen.

24. U'ber ih're Nach'stellungen wur'den dem Saulus bekannt'. Inzwi'schen hielt man Tag und Nacht die Tho're besetzt, um ihn zu töd'ten.

25. Da nah'men ihn die Jüng'er des Nachts und lie'sen ihn in ei'nem Kor'be an der Mau'er hinab'.

26. Da er hierauf nach Jeru'salem kam, such'te er sich an die Jüng'er an'zuschließen; a'ber al'le fürch'teten ihn, glanb'ten nicht, daß er ein Jüng'er sei.

27. Da nahm sich Bar'nabas sei'ner an, führ'te ihn zu den Apo'steln und erzähl'te ih'nen, wie er auf sei'ner Rei'se den Herrn gese'hen und daß die'ser zu ihm gere'det, und wie frei'müthig er zu Damas'kus für den Namen Je'su sich erklärt ha'be.

28. Von der Zeit an stand er zu Jeru'salem in vertrautem Umgange mit ih'nen und verkündigte frei'müthig den Na'men Je'su, des Herrn.

## II.

### FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

#### Er'stes Gespräch.

#### First Dialogue.

Gü'ten Mor'gen, mein Herr, or  
Herr N. (i. e. the family  
name), Frau N, or *Madame*,  
mein Fräulein, or Jung'-  
fer N. or *Mademoiselle*.

Good morning, Sir, or Mr. N,  
Madam or Mrs. N. Miss N.

Gü'ten Tag, mein Herr, &c.

Good day, Sir, &c.

Gü'ten Abend.

Good evening.

Gü'te Nacht.

Good night.

Wie befin'den Sie sich?

How do you do.

Sehr wohl, ich dank'e Ih'nen.

Very well, I thank you.

Es ist mir lieb Sie zu se'hen.

I am very glad to see you.

Ich hoffe Sie sind wohl.

I hope you are well.

Nicht sehr wohl.

Not very well.

Ich ha'be Sie lan'ge nicht ge-  
se'hen.

I have not seen you for a long  
time.

Wo sind Sie gewesen?

Where have you been?

Ich bin in Paris' gewesen. I have been in Paris.  
 Wie befin'det sich Ihr Herr Bruder? How does your brother do?  
 Er ist ziemlich wohl, He is tolerably well.  
 Ich glaube er befin'det sich wohl. I believe he is well.  
 Er befand' sich gestern Abends wohl. He was well last night.  
 Wie befin'den sich Ihr Herr Vater und Ihre Frau Mutter? How are your father and mother.  
 Mei'ne Mutter befin'det sich nicht wohl. My mother is not well.  
 Sie befand' sich gestern früh nicht wohl. She was ill yesterday morning.  
 Das thut mir leid. I am sorry for it.

## Zweites Gespräch.

## Second Dialogue.

Wie viel Uhr ist es? } What o'clock is it?  
 Was ist die Uhr? } It is one o'clock.  
 Es ist ein Uhr. } It is twelve o'clock.  
 Es ist zwölf Uhr. } It is a quarter past twelve.  
 Es ist ein Bier'tel nach zwölf. } It is half past twelve.  
 Es ist ein Bier'tel auf eins. } It wants a quarter of one.  
 Es ist halb ein Uhr. } It is a quarter past two.  
 Es ist halb eins. } It is twenty minutes past two.  
 Es ist drei Bier'tel auf eins. } It is twenty minutes past two.  
 Es ist ein Bier'tel auf drei. } It is twenty minutes to eight.  
 Es ist zwanzig Minuten nach zwei. } It is twenty minutes to eight.  
 Es ist zwanzig Minuten vor acht. } How much does it want of ten?  
 Wie viel ist es auf zehn? } It wants ten minutes of ten.  
 Es fehlt zehn Minuten zu zehn. } It wants ten minutes of ten.  
 Es ist fünfzig Minuten auf zehn. } It wants ten minutes of ten.  
 Es ist zehn Minuten vor zehn. } It wants ten minutes of ten.  
 Wann sind Sie gekommen? When did you come?



Ich kam ungefähr um vier I came about four o'clock.  
Uhr.

Es schlug eben sieben Uhr. It just struck seven o'clock.

Hat es schon geschlagen? Has it already struck?

Es wird bald acht schlagen. It will soon strike eight.

Wie viel schlägt es jetzt? What does it strike now?

Es muß auf den Schlag neun sein. It must be striking nine.

Das ist Ihre Zeit zu früh- That is your time for break-  
stücken, nicht wahr? fasting, is it not?

### Drittes Gespräch.

### Third Dialogue.

Sprechen Sie Deutsch, mein Herr? Do you speak German, Sir?

Ich spreche es ein wenig. I speak it a little.

Ich verstehe es besser als ich es sprechen kann. I understand it better than I can speak it.

Sprechen Sie mit mir. Speak with me.

Verstehen Sie mich? Do you understand me?

Sprechen Sie mit ihm, (ihr.) Speak with him, (her).

Habe ich richtig ausgesprochen? Did I pronounce right?

Sie sprechen sehr gut Deutsch. You speak German very well.

Sind Sie in Deutschland gewesen? Have you been in Germany?

Nein, niemals. No, never.

Wie lange haben Sie gelernt? How long have you been learning?

Fünf Monate. Five months.

Das ist nur eine kurze Zeit, ich wundere mich, daß Sie schon so gut sprechen. That is but a short time; I wonder you speak so well already.

Verstehen Sie was Sie lesen? Do you understand what you read?

Ich verstehe mehr als ich reden kann. I understand more than I can speak.

Wie nennen Sie das auf Deutsch? What do you call that in German?

Lassen Sie uns Deutsch sprechen. Let us speak German.

Das ist ein gutes Mittel es zu ler'nen.	That is a good way to learn it.
Mit wem spre'chen Sie?	With whom do you speak?
Was sa'gen Sie?	What do you say?
Wovon' spre'chen Sie?	Of what do you speak?
Spre'chen Sie zu mir?	Do you speak to me?
Spre'chen Sie ein we'nig lauter.	Speak a little louder.

## Vier'tes Gespräch'.

*Fourth Dialogue.*

Was ist es für Wet'ter?	What kind of weather is it?
Es ist schön (schö'nes) Wet'ter,	It is fine weather.
Scheint die Son'ne?	Does the sun shine?
Ja, mein Herr, und es ist sehr warm.	Yes, Sir, and it is very warm.
Das Wet'ter ist den gan'zen Tag schön gewesen.	The weather has been fine the whole day.
Wie ist das Wet'ter?	How is the weather?
Es ist nicht zu warm und nicht zu kalt.	It is neither too warm nor too cold.
Das Wet'ter hat sich geän'dert.	The weather has changed.
Es ist sehr windig.	It is very windy.
Die Wol'ken sind sehr dick.	The clouds are very thick.
Ich fürch'te wir wer'den Re'gen bekom'men.	I fear we shall have rain.
Es ries'elt, es wird reg'nen.	It drizzles, it will rain.
Es wird bald reg'nen.	It will soon rain.
Es fängt an zu reg'nen, schnei'en.	It begins to rain, to snow.
Es ist schlech'tes (schlecht) Wet'ter.	It is bad weather.
Es ist schmut'zig.	It is dirty (weather).
Es ist troc'ken, naß, reg'nicht, stür'misch, win'dig, verän'derliches Wet'ter.	It is dry, wet, rainy, stormy, windy, changeable weather.
Das Wet'ter klärt sich auf.	The weather clears up.
Dieser Re'gen wird bald vorüber sein.	This rain will soon be over.
Wir wer'den Don'ner ha'ben.	We shall have some thunder.
Der Don'ner rollt.	The thunder roars.

## Fünftes Gespräch.

## Fifth Dialogue.

Wo gehen Sie hin?

Where are you going?

Ich gehe nach London.

I am going to London.

Er geht nach Deutsch'land.

He is going to Germany.

Wo wohnt er jetzt?

Where does he live now?

Er wohnt in der Stadt Han-  
no'ver.He lives in the town of Han-  
over.Er geht durch (ü'ber) Frank-  
reich nach der Schweiz.He is going through (by the  
way of) France to Switz-  
erland.Er ist in (zu) Nea'pel, Rom,  
Wien gewesen.He has been in (at) Naples,  
Rome, Vienna.Mei'ne Schwester ist in (zu)  
Rom gewesen.

My sister has been at Rome.

Mein Bruder war in Amster-  
dam gewesen.My brother had been in Am-  
sterdam.

Ich gehe auf das Land.

I am going to the country.

Wo kommen Sie her?

Where do you come from?

Ich komme von dem Lande.

I come from the country.

Ich komme von (aus) der  
Stadt.

I come from (out of) the city.

Ich komme aus (von) der  
Straße.I come out of (from) the  
street.

Wir kommen von der Börse.

We come from 'Change.

Ich gehe nach Hause.

I am going home.

Ich komme aus (von) der  
Kirche.

I come from church.

Sie geht in die Kirche.

She is going to church.

Er geht nach Hause.

He is going home.

Ich komme aus dem Zimmer.

I come out of the room.

Sie kommt aus der Stube.

She comes out of the parlour.

Ich gehe in die Kam'mer, in  
die Küche, in den Kel'ler,  
zc.I am going into the chamber,  
into the kitchen, into the  
cellar, &c.Sie sind in der Kam'mer, in  
der Küche, in dem Kel'ler, in  
dem Hofe, zc.They are in the chamber, in  
the kitchen, in the cellar,  
in the yard, &c.

### III.

#### GERMAN ABBREVIATIONS.



A. C.	Anno Christi,	in the year of our Lord.
Antw.	Antwort,	answer.
A. T.	Altes Testament,	Old Testament.
Ausg.	Ausgabe,	edition.
ausg.	ausgenommen,	except.
B.	Buch, Band,	book, volume.
C. Cap., or Kap.	Capitel, or Kapitel,	chapter.
D.	Doctor,	Doctor.
d. h.	das heist,	that means.
d. i.	das ist,	i. e., viz.
dergl.	dergleichen,	of this kind.
Ev.	Evangelium,	Gospel.
Ew.	Euer,	your.
f. or folg.	folgend, (sing.)	} the following.
f.	folgende, (plu.)	
Fr.	Frau,	Lady, wife.
geb.	geboren,	born.
gest.	gestorben,	died.
Gr.	Groschen,	a coin in Germany.
h. S.	heilige Schrift,	Holy Scriptures.
Hr. Hrn.	Herr, Herrn,	Mr., Sir, Sirs, Messrs.
J. C.	Jesus Christus,	Jesus Christ.
l.	lies,	read.
M. or Maj.	Majestät,	Majesty.
Mscr.	Manuscript,	Manuscript.
N. S.	Nachschrift,	Postscript.
N. T.	Neues Testament,	New Testament.
od.	oder,	or.

Rec.	Recensent,	reviewer, critic.
Rthlr.	Reichs Thaler,	rixdollar.
S.	Seite,	page (of a book).
S. or f.	siehe,	see, vide.
Se. Maj.	Seine Majestät,	His Majesty.
St.	Sanct,	Saint.
Thlr.	Thaler,	dollar.
u. a. m.	und andere mehr,	&c., farther.
u. d. g.	und dergleichen,	and the like.
u. f. f.	und so fort or ferner,	} &c.
u. f. m.	und so mehr,	
u. f. w.	und so weiter,	
V.	Vers,	verse.
v.	von,	of, from.
Z.	Zeile,	line.
z. B.	zum Beispiel,	} for example.
z. E.	zum Exempel,	

---

ric

od,







THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

FEB 9 1934

DEC 26 1935

SEP 7 1936

DEC 22 1939

JUL 8 1945

YB 01324

5258

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

